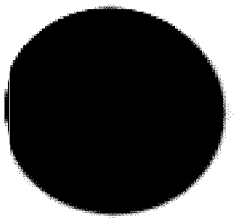
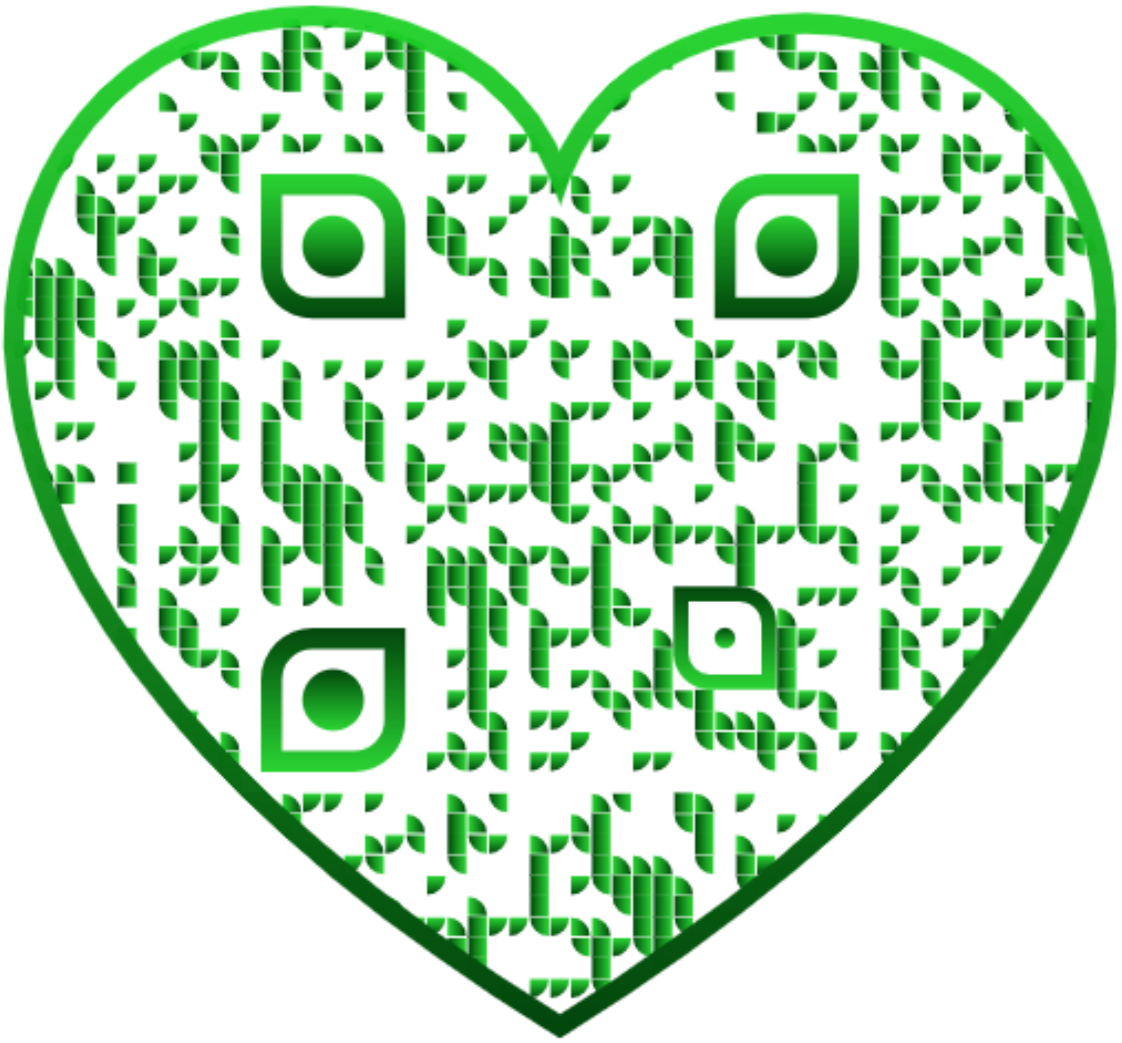


FOOD, MEDICINE AND HEALTH CARE ADMINISTRATION AND CONTROL AUTHORITY OF ETHIOPIA

STANDARD TREATMENT GUIDELINES FOR HEALTH CENTER

THIRD EDITION, 2014



CONTENTS

ACRONYMS xi
PREFACE xv
INTRODUCTION xvi
CHAPTER I: GOOD PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING PRACTICES 18
CHAPTER II: CARDIOVASCULAR DISORDERS 39
1. Acute Cardiogenic Pulmonary Edema 39
2. Heart Failure 40
3. Hypertension 42
4. Ischemic Heart Disease 47
5. Rheumatic Fever 48
CHAPTER III: ENDOCRINE DISORDERS 51
1. Diabetes Mellitus 51
2. Gout 57
CHAPTER IV: GASTROINTESTINAL TRACT AND LIVER DISORDERS 60
1. Constipation 60
2. Dyspepsia and Peptic Ulcer Disease 61
3. Hemorrhoids 63
4. Hepatitis 65
5. Liver Cirrhosis 65
CHAPTER V: HEMATOLOGIC DISORDERS 67
1. Anemia 67
2. Venous Thromboembolic Disease 69
CHAPTER VI: INFECTIOUS DISEASES 71
1. Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome (AIDS) 71
2. Amebiasis 81
3. Amebic Liver Abscess 83
4. Anthrax 83
5. Bacillary Dysentry 84
6. Brucellosis 86
7. Candidiasis 87
8. Cholera 91
9. Cryptococcal Infections 93
10. Giardiasis 94
11. Intestinal Parasitic Infestations 95
12. Filariasis, Lymphatic (Elephantiasis) 97
13. Leishmaniasis 100
14. Leprosy (Hansen's disease) 102
15. Malaria 115
16. Onchocerciasis 126
17. Rabies 127
18. Rerelapsing Fever 131
19. Schistosomiasis 132
20. Tetanus 134
21. Toxoplasmosis (CNS) 135

22. Tuberculosis 136
23. Typhoid Fever 156
24. Typhus 158
25. Varicella (Chicken Pox) 159
CHAPTER VII: KIDNEY AND GENITOURINARY TRACT DISORDERS 162
1. Acute Kidney Injury 162
2. Urinary Tract Infection 163
CHAPTER VIII: MUSCULOSKELETAL DISORDERS 166
1. Osteoarthritis 166
2. Pyogenic Osteomyelitis 168
3. Rheumatoid Arthritis (RA) 168
4. Septic Arthritis 169
1. Meningitis 171
2. Migraine 172
3. Seizure and Epilepsy 174
CHAPTER X: ONCOLOGY 178
1. Breast Cancer 178
2. Colorectal Cancer 179
3. Head and Neck Cancer 179
4. Ovarian Cancer 180
CHAPTER XI: PSYCHIATRIC DISORDERS 181
1. Mood Disorders 181
2. Schizophrenia 182
3. Suicide /Self-Harm 183
CHAPTER XII: RESPIRATORY SYSTEM DISORDERS 186
1. Acute Bronchitis 186
2. Bronchial Asthma 189
3. Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease (COPD) 194
4. Pneumocystis Carinni (P. Jiroveci) Pneumonia 195
5. Pneumonia 196
CHAPTER XIII: EMMERGENCY CONDITIONS 200
1. Anaphylaxis 200
2. Animal Bites 201
3. Burn 207
4. Hypoglycemia 210
5. Near Drowning 212
6. Poisoning and Overdose 214
7. Shock 218
8. Stroke (Cerebrovascular Accident) 219
9. Sudden Cardiac Arrest 219
10. Upper Gastrointestinal Bleeding (Acute) 222
CHAPTER XIV: PEDIATRIC DISORDERS 223
1. Acute Post Streptococcal Glomerulonephritis 223
2. Acute Rheumatic Fever 224
3. Bronchial Asthma 224
4. Croup (Acute Laryngo-Tracheo-Bronchitis) 226

5. Diarrheal Disease (Acute) ... 228
6. Foreign Body Aspiration ... 233
7. Heart Failure in Children ... 235
8. HIV/ AIDS in Children ... 236
9. Jaundice in Neonates ... 239
10. Malnutrition (Severe) ... 240
11. Meningitis ... 252
12. Nephrotic Syndrome ... 253
13. Oral Trush ... 254
14. Osteomyelitis ... 255
15. Pertusis (Whooping Cough) ... 256
16. Pneumonia in Children ... 257
17. Rickets ... 259
18. Seizures (Neonatal) ... 261
19. Sepsis (Neonatal) ... 261
20. Tuberculosis in Children ... 263
CHAPTER XV: DERMATOLOGICAL DISORDERS ... 265
1. Acne Vulgaris ... 265
2. Bacterial Folliculitis ... 267
3. Candidiasis (Candidiasis, Moniliasis, Thrush) ... 268
a. Balanoposthitis ... 269
b. Candidal Intertrigo ... 269
c. Candidal paronychia ... 270
d. Genital Candidiasis (Vulvovaginitis) ... 271
e. Oral candidiasis (thrush) ... 271
4. Carbuncle ... 271
5. Cellulitis ... 272
6. Dermatophytoses ... 273
7. Eczema ... 276
a. Atopic Dermatitis (AD) ... 276
b. Contact dermatitis ... 279
i. Allergic contact dermatitis (ACD) ... 279
ii. Irritant Contact Dermatitis (ICD) ... 280
8. Erysipelas ... 282
9. Erythema Multiforme, Stevens Johnson Syndrome, Toxic Epidermal Necrolysis ... 283
a. Erythema multiforme (EM) ... 283
b. Stevens Johnson Syndrome (SJS) & Toxic Epidermal Necrolysis (TEN) ... 283
10. Furuncle ... 284
11. Herpes Simplex (HS) ... 285
12. Impetigo ... 286
13. Molluscum Contagiosum ... 288
14. Pediculosis Corporis and Capitis ... 289
15. Pityriasis Versicolor (PV) ... 290
16. Psoriasis ... 292
17. Scabies ... 292
18. Urticaria ... 294

19. Verruca Vulgaris (Common Warts) ... 296
CHAPTER XVI: SEXUALLY TRANSMITTED INFECTIONS (STI) ... 298
SYNDROMIC MANAGEMENT OF STI ... 298
1. Urethral Discharge ... 300
2. Persistent/Recurent Urethral Discharge ... 302
3. Genital Ulcer Diseases (GUD) ... 304
4. Vaginal Discharge ... 307
5. Lower Abdominal Pain ... 310
6. Scrotal Swelling ... 313
7. Inguinal Bubo ... 314
CHAPTER XVII: OPHTHALMOLOGICAL DISORDERS ... 316
1. Acute Dacryocystitis ... 316
2. Acute Infectious Dacryoadenitis ... 317
A. Bacterial or infectious (but unidentified) etiology ... 318
B. Viral (mumps, infectious mononucleosis) ... 318
3. Allergic Conjunctivitis ... 319
i. Atopic Keratoconjunctivitis ... 319
ii. Hey Fever and Perennial Allergic Conjunctivitis ... 322
iii. Vernal Keratoconjunctivitis ... 322
4. Bacterial Conjunctivitis ... 323
i. Conjunctivitis in Children and Adults ... 323
ii. Neonatal Conjunctivitis ... 324
5. Blepharitis ... 326
a. Seborrhoeic blepharitis ... 326
b. Staphylococcal blepharitis (ulcerative blepharitis) ... 327
6. Cataract ... 328
7. Chemical Burns ... 329
8. Glaucoma ... 330
i. Chronic glaucoma ... 331
ii. Acute closed-angle glaucoma ... 331
9. Hordeolum (External) or Stye ... 332
10. Internal Hordeolum ... 333
11. Meibomian cyst (Chalazion) ... 333
12. Molluscum contagiosum ... 334
13. Ophthalmic Zoster (Herpes Zoster Ophthalmicus=HZO) ... 335
14. Orbital cellulitis ... 337
15. Preseptal cellulitis ... 337
16. Trachoma ... 339
17. Vitamin A Deficiency (Xerophthalmia) ... 341
CHAPTER XVIII: EAR, NOSE AND THROAT ... 344
I. EAR ... 344
1. Acute Otitis Media ... 344
2. Bacterial and Viral Diffuse Otitis Externa ... 346
3. Chronic Otitis Media ... 348
4. Foreign Bodies in the Ear ... 350
5. Idiopathic Facial Paralysis (Bells Palsy) ... 351

6. Nonspecific Inflamation of the External Ear ... 352
7. Herpes Zoster Oticus (Specific Forms) ... 354
II. NOSE AND NASAL SINUSES ... 355
1. Acute Rhinitis ... 355
2. Acute RhinoSinusitis ... 356
3. Allergic Rhinitis ... 358
4. Atrophic Rhinitis and Ozeana ... 359
5. Chronic Rhinosinusitis ... 360
6. Epistaxis ... 361
7. Nasal Furuncle ... 363
8. Foreign Bodies in the Nose ... 365
III. MOUTH and PHARYNX ... 366
1. Acute Tonsillitis ... 366
IV. SALIVARY GLANDS ... 367
1. Mumps (Epidemic Parotitis) ... 367
CHAPTER XIX: OBSTETRICS and GYNACOLOGY DISORDERS ... 369
I. COMMON OBSTETRIC DISORDERS ... 369
1. Hypertensive Disorders in Pregnancy ... 369
2. Hyperemesis Gravidarum ... 373
3. Pain during Labour and Delivery ... 375
4. Post-Partum Haemorrhage (PPH) ... 377
5. Premature Rupture of Membranes (PROM) ... 381
6. Preterm Labour ... 384
7. Prolonged Pregnancy and Prolonged Labour ... 386
II. COMMON MEDICAL DISORDERS IN PREGNANCY ... 388
1. Anemia in Pregnancy ... 388
2. Cardiac Diseases in Pregnancy ... 389
3. Diabetes Mellitus Complicating Pregnancy ... 391
4. HIV/AIDS in Pregnancy ... 395
5. Malaria in Pregnancy ... 401
6. Urinary Tract Infection in Pregnancy ... 404
7. Syphilis in Pregnancy ... 407
III. GYNECOLOGIC DISORDERS ... 408
1. Pelvic Inflammatory Diseases (PID) ... 408
2. Puerperal Mastitis ... 411
3. Vaginal Discharge Syndromes ... 412
4. Abortion ... 419
IV. HORMONAL CONTRACEPTIVES ... 423
V. SEXUAL ASSAULT ... 426
ANNEXES ... 429

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The Ethiopian Food, Medicine and Healthcare Administration and Control Authority (EFMHACA) would like to extend its sincere appreciation to USAID/SIAPS for its technical and financial assistance for the revision of these standard treatment guidelines. The Authority would like also to thank the consulting firm, Bethel teaching hospital, for its commitment to complete this important task. Inaddition, the Authority woul like to thanks JSI/L10K for financing the printing of these guidelines.

We would also like to give special acknowledgement to the STG Core group, FMHACA task force and the expert group members for their unreserved effort to bring this document to reality.

Last but not least, the Authority would also like to recognize and acknowledge the contribution of all participants of the consultative workshops and all editors for their invaluable contributions in scrutinizing and finalizing this document.

Contributors and editors of the 3rd edition of the STG

i. **Food, Medicine and Health Care Administration and Control Authority (FMHACA)**

ii. **Consultant**

Bethel Teaching Hospital

iii. **STG Core Team**

Prof. Eyasu Makonnen	Pharmacologist (Chairperson)
Dr. Kassahun Kiros	Gynacologist
Dr. Yilikal Adamu	Ophthalmologist
Dr. Yewondwossen Tadesse	Internist
Dr. Alemayehu Keno	Pharmacologist (Secretary)

iv. **Experts**

Dr. Addisu Melkie	Internist
Dr. Endale Teferra	Pediatrician
Dr. Mathewos Assefa	Oncologist
Dr. Eshetu Kebede	Public Health Specialist

Dr. Seble FikreMariam	Pediatrician
Dr. Admassu Tenna	Infectious Disease Specialist
Dr. Girma Tesema	ENT Specialist
Dr. Solomon Worku	Dermatologist

v. Task Force Members(Coordinators)

Mr. Mengsteab Wolde Aregay	Deputy Director General, FMHACA
Mr. Kidanemariam GebreMichael	Task Force Chair Person, FMHACA
Mr. Ajema Bekele	Pharmacist, Task Force Secretery, FMHACA
Mrs. Seble Shambel	Pharmacologist, FMHACA
Mr. Hailu Tadeg	Deputy Chief of Party, USAID/SIAPS
Mr. Edmealem Ejigu	Senior Technical Advisor, USAID/SIAPS

vi. Editors

Mr. Edmealem Ejigu

Mr. Ajema Bekele

Mrs. Seble Shambel

Mr. Kidanemariam G/Michael

Miss Raey Yohannes (Pharmacologist)

vii. Workshop participants

Full Name	Profession	Organization
Halima Abate Hallalo	MD	Ethiopian Health Insuranc Agency
Ayanaw Takele Guadie	Health Officer	Amhara Health Bureau
Samater Ahmed Nur	Drug misuse	Esfm HACA
Galagay Zewdie Workineh	MD	FHRH (B/Dar)
Mulugeta Tarekegn Angamo	Clinical Pharmacist	Jimma University
Hiwot Adamu Mengesha	Pharmacist	Diredawa HB
Muluken Tadele Wondimagegn	Pharmacist	GH&HPQPFFRA
Mengistu Mekuria Gebre	Health Officer	Bole 17 Health Ceneter
Yewondwossen Tadesse Mengsite	MD	Tikur Anbessa H
Eskinder Kebede Weldetinsaye	MD.OB&GYN	ESOG
Yilkal Adamu Bizuneh	MD	AAU, SOM
Yisihak Girma Tolla	Pharmacist	AAFMHACA
Eyasu Mekonnen	Pharmacology	AAU SOM
Mengestab W/Aregay Teferi	Pharmacist	FMHACA
Seble Shambel Eniyew	Pharmacologist	FMHACA
Addisu Melkie Eijgu	MD Internist	AAU.SOM
Rahel Girma Demisse	Pharmacist	URHB
Zenahebezu Abay Alemayehu	Intenist	University of Gondar
Admasu Tenna Mamuye	Infectious Disease Specialist	AAU SOM
Tigist Tekle Boba	HO	Butajira H/Center
Haftay Berhane Mezgebe	Clinical Pharmacist	MU,SOP
Getahun Gurmessa Dadi	Pharmacist	ICAP Ethiopia
Seble Fikremariam Pondit	Pediatrician	Bethel Teaching General Hospital
Asefa Ayehu Desta	Expert	FMHACA
Azusa Sato	MD, Technical Advisor	FMOH/EHIA
Wolde Wochamo Ludego	C/Officer	SNNPRHB
Asefa Miherete Tefera	H.O	Tigray /South east Eedrta
Esayas Kebede Gudina	Internist	Jimma University
Tatek Getachew W/Michael	H.O	Adea Woreda HIdi H/C
Addisalem Ketema Tadesse	H.O.	Oromia RHB
Zinaye Feleke Fikadu	MUEA	I-Tech Ethiopia
Girum Abebe Tesema	Cardiologist	Addis Cardiac
Debrishwork Bezabhi W/yohannes	H.O	B/Dare /Abay H/C
Teshale Seboxa	MD MSre	SHS,SM.AAU.BLC

Full Name	Profession	Organization
Girma Tessema Defersha	ENT Specialist.	ENT Society
Yohannes Jorge Lagebo	Pharmacist	EPHA.AA
Mahlet Dejene Desalegn	Expert	FMHACA-AA
Wubshet Hailu Tesfaye	Lecturer	Gonder UN
Esayas Mesele Tsegaye	FMOH	FMOH
Rahima Ibrahim Yimam	Radiography	FMHACA
Haimanot Brihane Alema	Pharmacologist	TRHB
Girma Tefera Worku	Pharmacist	PRLO
Zelalem Aseffa Gobeza	Surgeon	SSE
Mikiyas Cherinet Kifetew	MD	Meariya Hospital
Kassahun Kiros Gessu	Gynacologist	AAU
Asnake Limenhe Awoke	Psyhicatist	AAU CHS, Addis Ababa
Nega Gossa	OR	
Tamrat Tesfaye Tofie	Pharmacist	FMHACA
Dr. Alemayehu Mekonnen	Pediatric Health Advisor	JHU Tsehay
Yared Hailu W/Mariam	Nurse	DDRHB
Dagmawi Abebe Ayele	HO	D.D(SUC)
Jiksa Debessa Muleta	Physician	Adare Hospital
TadesseTekeste Girma	Environmental Health officer	A.R.H.B.
Mathewos Assefa W/Giorgis	MD	AAU SOM
Endale Tefera Dejene	Pediatric Cardiologist	AAU SOM
Yenus Mohammed Agihalie	M&E	Afar R.H/B.
Negusse Tegegne Gulelat	Dermatologist	AAU, SOM
Kassa Tammiru	Intenist	Adama G.HOsp
Gebremedhin B/Mariam G/Tekle	Pharmacist	EPA
Mamo Engdayehu Belay	Pharmacist	FMHACA
Ajema Bekele Yadeta	Pharmacist	EFMHACA
Solomon Worku Mengesha	Dermatologist	AAU
Djemal Suleiman Mohammed	Radiology Technologist	Bettle T.G.Hospital
Tefsaye Bediru Jafar	CEO	Ethio.Nursess Asso.
Gizachew Taddesse Akalu	Clinical microbiologist	Eth.Medical Assoc.
Ejegayehu Yeshitela Megria	Pharmacist	EFMHACA
Yenenesh Kassaye Tefera	Pharmacist	EFMHACA
Hanchacha Kumo Buna	HO	SNN.H.B
Hailu Tadeg	Pharmacist, Deputy Director	USAID/SIAPS
Edmealem Ejigu	Pharmacist, Technical Advisor	USAID/SIAPS
Mengestab W/Aregay Teferi	Pharmacist, Deputy Director	FMHACA

ACRONYMS

ACD	Allergic contact dermatitis
ACEIs	Angiotensin converting enzyme inhibitors
ACS	Acute Coronary Syndrome
ADL	Acute adenolymphangitis
ADRs	Adverse Drug Reactions
AFB	Acid fast Bacilli
AIVR	Accelerated Idioventricular Rhythm
AKI	Acute kidney Injury
ALF	Acute liver failure
ARBs	Angiotensin receptor blockers
ART	anti-retroviral therapy
AV	Atrio ventricular
BID	Twice a day
BMI	body mass index
C/Is	Contraindications
CBC	Complete blood count
CDAD	Clostridium Difficille Associated Disease
CKD	Chronic kidney Injury
CL	Cutaneous leishmaniasis
CLL	Chronic lymphocytic leukemia
CML	Chronic Myelogenous Leukemia
CNS	Central nervous system
COPD	Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease
CPR	Cardiopulmonary resuscitation
CRP	C-reactive protein
CSF	Cerebrospinal fluid
D/Is	Drug interactions
D/S	Dextrose in Saline solution
D/W	Dextrose in water solution
DBS	Dry Blood Spot
DEC	Diethylcarbamazine citrate

DKA	Diabetic Ketoacidosis
DLA	Dermatolymphangioadenitis
DMARD	Disease-modifying anti-rheumatic drugs
DST	Drug Susceptibility Testing
DVT	deep vein thrombosis,
ECG	electrocardiogram
ENL	Erythema Nodosum Leprosum
ENT	Ear, Nose and Throat
ESR	erythrocyte sedimentation rate
ESRD	End Stage Renal Disease
FH	Fulminant hepatitis
FMHACA	Food, Medicine and Health Care Administration and Control Authority
FPG	Fasting plasma glucose
G	Gram
GDM	Gestational Diabetes Mellitus
GERD	Gastro Esophageal Reflux Disease
GFR	Glomerular Filtration rate
GI	Gastrointestinal
GTD	Gestational Trophblastic diseases
GTN	Gestational Trophoblastic Neoplasia
HDL	high-density lipoprotein cholesterol
HHS	Hyperglycemic Hyperosmolar State
Hrs	Hours
ICD	Irritant Contact Dermatitis
IDU	Intravenous Drug Use
IHCP	Intra-hepatic cholestasis pregnancy
IM	Intramuascular
IOP	Intra-ocular pressure
IRIS	Immune Reconstitution Immune Syndrome
ITP	Immune Thrombocytopenic Purpura
IU	International Unit
IUGR	Intrauterine growth restriction
IV	Intravenous

IVDA	intravenous drug abuse endocarditic
LDL	low-density lipoprotein cholesterol
MAT	Multifocal Atrial Tachycardia
MDR	Multi Drug Resistance
MDT	Multi-drug therapy
Ml	Milliliter
MNT	Medical Nutrition Therapy
MOH	Ministry of Health
MSH	Management Sciences for Health
N/S	Normal saline solution
NNRTI	Nucleoside Reverse Transcriptase Inhibitors
NRTIs	Nucleoside Reverse Transcriptase Inhibitors
NSVT	Non sustained ventricular tachycardia
NVE	native valve endocarditic
OGTT	Oral Glucose Tolerance Test
P.O	Per Os (mouth)
P/Cs	Precautions
PCP	Pneumocystis Carinni Pneumonia
PEP	Post-exposure prophylaxis
PI	Protease Inhibitors
PKDL	Post kala-azar Dermal Leishmaniasis
PMTCT	Prevention of mother-to-child transmission
PPH	Post-Partum Haemorrhage
PRN	As required
PROM	Premature Rupture Of Membranes
PSVT	Paroxysmal supra-ventricular tachycardia
PTE	Pulmonary thrombo-embolism
PTT	Placental trophoblastic tumour
PVE	Prosthetic Valve Endocarditits
QD	Once a day
QID	Four times a day
RA	Rheumatoid Arthritis
RBC	Reduction in red blood cell

RDT	Rapid Diagnostic Tests
RUTF	Ready to use therapeutic feeding
SBGM	Self-blood glucose monitoring
SBP	Prophylaxis for spontaneous bacterial peritonitis
SSIs	Surgical site infections
STG	Standard Treatment Guideline
STI	Sexually transmitted infections
TID	Three times a day
VT	Ventricular Tachycardia
VTE	Venous thromboembolism
WBC	White blood cell count
WPW	Wolff-Parkinson-White

PREFACE

In a healthcare system where multiple treatment optionsare available, the development and implementation of standard treatment guidelines (STGs) is a crucial strategy for ensuring effective and safe use of medicines, containing health care costs, and preventing antimicrobial resistance.

STGs promote therapeutically effective and economic use of medicinesat different levels of health facilities, as they give clear guidance and recommendations about the treatment and management of each clinical condition. When properly developed and implemented, treatment guidelines enhance rational medicine use and improve the quality of care. These guidelines provide up-to-date informationrelevant to theprevention, diagnosis and treatment of common diseases in Ethiopia which helps to achieve provision of quality care to patients.

These STGs provide greater consistency and standards of care, improve diagnostic accuracy, and promote effective and safe use of medicines, and serves as a basis for improvingtreatment outcomes. It is also important to supply chain managers in improving the predictability of demand, and provide a standardized basis for forecasting, ordering, and purchasing of medicines. Health policy makers, health insurance agencies and planners will benefit from these STGs as it serves as an effective way to contain the cost of treatment for both patients and the health sector.

This3rd editionincludesa package of evidence based information on diseases conditions, clinical features, methods of investigations, treatment options and referral to the next level of care.Special emphasis is giventoprimary healthcare so as to addressimportantpublic health needs in the country.EFMHACA has officially approved this treatment guidelines to be used as a guide for prescribers, dispensers and other health care providers operatingat the level of health center. Accordingly, health care providers shall comply with these guidelines unless there is aproven and specific treatment need for a patient that is supported by adequate evidence.

Finally, I would like to take this opportunity to acknowledge FMHACA regulatory standard team, USAID/SIAPS, Bethel Teaching General Hospital and participants of the consultative workshop for their technical and financial contributionsin the revision of these important guidelines.

Yehulu Denekew,
Director General, EFMHACA,
January 2014

INTRODUCTION

Irrational use of drugs has been one of the major problems in the Ethiopian health care system for a long time. Among the strategies devised to improve the situation, Medicine, Food and Healthcare Administration and Control Authority (FMHACA) of Ethiopia, was involved in the preparation and distribution of Standard Treatment Guidelines (STGs) for the different levels of health institutions in the country.

The 1st edition of the STGs was published in January 2004 after wide consultation withrelevant stakeholders. There has been continuous demand since then for copies of the STGs, calling for several reprints and revisions. The 2nd edition of the guidelines was published in 2010. The demand fort hese guidelines are increasing, perhaps because STGs are also being used as an alternative to fillthe gap in reference materials. Following the changes made to the national list of drugs and an increasing demand for incorporating new developments in diagnosis and treatment, it wasfound important to revise the 2nd edition of STGs.Accordingly, the 2nd edition of STGs was thoroughly revised by a panel of experts through contracting out to Bethel Teaching General Hospitalwith technical and financial support from USAID/SIAPS.

This third edition addresses common health problems in Ethiopia and it includes several new diseases as well as brief description of the diseases condition, clinical features, methods of investigation and non-pharmacologic and pharmacologic treatment options.Information on dosing, dosage forms, course of treatment, adverse reactions, contraindications and drug interactions are given for the first line and alternative drugs whenever applicable. Diseases have been classified into cardiovascular disorders, endocrine disorders, gastrointestinal tract and liver disorders, hematologic disorders, infectious diseases, kidney and genitourinary tract disorders, musculoskeletal disorders, neurological disorders, oncology, psychiatric disorders, respiratory disorders, emergency conditions, pediatric disorders, gynecology and obstetrics, dermatological disorders, sexually transmitted infections, ophthalmological disorders and ear, nose and throat disorders.

EFMHACA believes that utmost care has been made by the panel of experts to ensure that the recommendations given are evidence-based. In addition, the draft STGs documentswere reviewed in a national consultative workshop where relevant experts are involved. Above all, this document will

undergo continuous improvement through the inputs of users including prescribers, dispensers, academia and researchers, supply chain managers, policy makers and other relevant stakeholders. Users are, therefore, encouraged to send their feedbacks, supporting it with scientific evidences, to the following address:

The Food, Medicine and Health Care Administration and Control Authority (FMHACA) of Ethiopia

Telephone: 011-5-524122

Fax: 251-115-521392

Free call line: 8482

P.O.Box 5681

Addis Ababa, Ethiopia

E-mail: regulatory@fmhaca.gov.et

Website: www.fmhaca.gov.et

CHAPTER I: GOOD PRESCRIBING AND DISPENSING PRACTICES

General

The prescription is the link between the prescriber, the pharmacist (or dispenser) and the patient so it is important for the successful management of the presenting medical condition. Fill the diagnosis or ICD code for proper communication with the dispenser and choice of the medicine among the available generic options. Readers are kindly requested to read "Ethiopian Medicines Good Prescribing Practices (GPP)" and Medicines Good Dispensing Practice guideline/manual.

Rational use of medicines is a mechanism through which safe, effective and economic medication is provided. It is promoted through the collaborative efforts of prescribers, dispensers, patient and policymakers. Rational prescribing ensures adherence to treatment and protects medicine consumers from unnecessary adverse medicine reactions. The prescriber could be a physician, a nurse or health officer Or any health professional authorized to prescribe . Rational dispensing, on the other hand, promotes the safe, effective and economic use of medicines. The dispenser could be a pharmacist, Medicinegist and pharmacy technician. Prior to prescribing or dispensing any Medicines, the prescriber or dispenser should make sure that it is within his/her scope of practice.

Medicines should only be prescribed when necessary, and the benefit-risk ratio of administering the medicine should always be considered prior to prescribing. Irrational prescribing leads to ineffective, unsafe and uneconomical treatment. Thus it is very important that steps are taken to promote rational medicine use in order to effectively promote the health of the public especially given limited resources. One way of promoting rational medicine use is throught the development and use of standard treatment guidelines.

Rational approaches to therapeutics require careful evaluation of health problems and selecting appropriate therapeutic strategies. Making the right diagnosis is the cornerstone for choosing the right kinds of therapy. Based on the diagnosis, health workers may select more than one treatment and the patient should agree with the selected treatment. The treatment could be non-

pharmacologic or pharmacologic. It is important to consider the total cost of treatment in the selection process. The process should also consider efficacy, safety and suitability. Medicine treatment should be individualized to the needs of each patient as much as possible. The concept of good clinical practice has to be incorporated within rational prescribing

Prescription writing

A prescription is a written therapeutic transaction between the prescriber and dispenser. It is a written order by the prescriber to the dispenser on how the drug should be dispensed. It serves as a means of communication among the prescriber, dispenser and medicine consumer pertaining to treatment or prophylaxis.

A prescription should be written on a standard prescription blank legibly and clearly in ink and in generic names of the medicine(s).

A prescription should contain

- Name, address, age body weight of the medicine consumer and Date of the prescription;
- Diagnosis; Generic name, dosage form and strength and directions for use of the medcines. The pharmaceutical form (for example ‘tablet’, ‘oral solution’, ‘eye ointment’) should also be stated.
- The strength of the drug should be stated in standard units using abbreviations that are consistent with the Systéme Internationale (SI). ‘Microgram’ and ‘nanogram’ should not, however, be abbreviated. Also, ‘units’ should not be abbreviated. Avoid decimals whenever possible. If unavoidable, a zero should be written infront of the decimal point.
- Prescriber’s name, signature and address.
- **See Annex 17 for Standard Prescription form**

Good Dispesing Practice

Good dispensing practices ensure that the correct medicine is delivered to the right patient, in the required dosage and quantities, with clear information, and in package that maintains an

acceptable potency and quality of the medicine. Dispensing includes all the activities that occur between the times the prescription or oral request of the patient or care provider is presented and the medicine is issued. This process may take place in health institutions and community drug retail outlets. It is often carried out by pharmacy professionals. No matter where dispensing takes place or who does it, any error or failure in the dispensing process can seriously affect the care of the patient mainly with health and economic consequences. Therefore, the dispenser plays a crucial role in the therapeutic process. The quality of dispensing may be determined by the training and supervision the dispenser has received. During medcines dispensing and counseling the information mentioned under prescribing above, the"Medicines Good Dispensing Practices" manual 2012 edition and also medicines dispensing and counseling guides are good resources to use. Finally, an application of the professional code of ethics by pharmacy professionals is an important issue that needs due consideration particularly with respect to confidentiality of patient data, withholding therapeutic interventions and varying cost of medicines.

Patient adherence

Patient compliance is the extent to which the patient follows the prescribed drug regime, while adherence is participation of patients in their care plan resulting in understanding, consent and partnership with the provider. There are different factors which contribute to patients' non-adherence. These factors include:

- nature of treatment, which in turn depends on the
  - complexity of the regime (more frequency of administration and more number of drugs prescribed)
  - adverse effects
- characteristics of the patient such as
  - forgetfulness about taking the medication
  - unable to finish because of feeling better
  - lack of understanding of the prescription
  - fear of dependence
  - social or physical problems to go to pharmacy
  - unable to pay prescription charges

    - inconvenience of taking medicines everyday
- type of illness like schizophrenia
- health care system (long waiting times, uncaring staff, uncomfortable environment, exhausted drug supply, inaccessibility of the health institution)
- behavior of prescribers and dispensors
    - not winning confidence of patients
    - irrational prescribing and dispensing
    - giving inadequate information on the treatment
    - poor attitude to patients
    - negligence
    - poor perception to team work

Patient adherence can be improved by

- supervising medicine administration
- simplifying therapeutic regime
- educating patients on the importance of adhering to the prescribed medication
- improving the attitudesa of prescribers and dispensors

Adverse drug/Medicines reactions

Adverse drug/medicine reactions (ADRs) are noxious unwanted effects that occur at therapeutic doses. They could be mild (where no intervention is required), moderate (where switch to another drug is necessary), severe (where antidote should be employed to alleviate the situation), or lethal. They could also be predicted (extensions of pharmacological effects) or unpredicted (bizarre reactions which are not expected in all patients taking the drug, such as hypersensitivity and idiosyncratic reaction). ADRs are different from toxic reactions for the later occur at doses higher than therapeutics. They are also different from side effects as the latter have broad concept, i.e., include both beneficial and all unwanted effects which may not necessarily be noxious. The two extreme age groups, i.e., pediatric and geriatric patients are more susceptible to ADRs due to physiological and pathological factors. Special precaution should be taken for coexisting illnesses, such as kidney and liver disease, as they could contribute to ADRs development

Monitoring ADRs

Pre-marketing clinical trials cannot be exhaustive as far as detection of all ADRs is concerned due to

- Recruitment of small population(< 2500 patients)
- The remote chance of low incidence reactions to be picked up before marketing
- Shorter duration of assessment
- Exclusion of patients who may take the medicine after marketing

Only the most common ADRs could be detected during pre-marketing trials. It is, therefore, important to devise methods for quick detecting ADRs. This could be carried out by post-marketing surveillance, i.e., ADRs monitoring. Hence, all health professionals have the responsibility to report any unique ADR observed to Food, Medicine and Health Care Control and Administration Agency (FMHACA).

Drug /Medicine Interactions

Though some drug/medicine interactions could be beneficial most are harmful. Hence it is always important to note the possible medicine interactions prior to concomitant medicine/food or drink administration.

Drug/medicine interactions could occur at different levels including:

- Pharmaceutics, which are physicochemical interactions in an IV infusion or in the same solution,
- Pharmacokinetics, which may take place at the level of absorption, distribution, biotransformation or excretion.
- Pharmacodynamics, which could occur directly at receptor level or indirectly where a medicine induced disease, alters the response to another medicine.

Drug/medicine interactions could be additive (the effect is simple algebraic sum), synergism (the total effect is more than the algebraic sum) potentiation (the effect of one drug increases by the presence of another medicines), or antagonism (the effect of the agonist is blocked by the antagonist when given together). Medicne interactions are some of the most common causes of adverse reactions. As medicine reactions could also occur between a medicine and food or a

medicine and drink. We should always inform our patients the type of food or drink which they have to avoid while taking the drug.

Prescribing for pregnant women

The kinetics of a medicine is altered during pregnancy. The rate of absorption decreases, while volume of distribution, metabolism and glomerular filtration rate increase during pregnancy. The embryonic period, where, organogesis takes place, is the most susceptible period of pregnancy to drug effects. Administration of drugs, except those proved safe, in the first trimester, is therefore not generally recommended. It is advisable not to prescribe any medicine during at any stage of pregnancy if possible. This, however, should not preclude the importance of prescribing in life threatening conditions of the mother. Prior to prescribing any drug for pregnant women, the benefit risk ratio of prescribing should be considered.

Prescribing for breast feeding women

Most medicines administered are detectable in breast milk. The concentration, however, is low. If the woman has to take the drug and the drug is relatively safe, she should optimally take it 30-60 minutes after breast feeding and 3-4 hours before the next feeding in order to allow time for many drugs to be cleared from the mother's blood, and the concentration in breast milk to be relatively low.Medicines for which no data are available on safety during lactation should be avoided or breast feeding discontinued while they are being given. Most antibiotics taken by breast feeding mothers can be detected in breast milk. e.g., tetracycline and chloramphenichol. Most sedative hypnotics achieve concentrations in breast milk. Opioids also achieve concentrations in breast milk. Antineoplastic medicines are contraindicated in breast feeding. So it is worth noting not to prescribe medicines secreted in milk to the nursing mother.

Prescribing for infants/children

Physiologic processes that influence drug kinetics in the infant change significantly in the first year of life, specially the first few months, while there is no much difference in the dynamics. All the four parameters of kinetics are, therefore, affected in children: Gastric acid secretion begins soon after birth and increases gradually over several hours in full term infants. In premature infants, however, the secretion is slower, with the highest concentration occurring on the fourth day. So medicines, which are partially or totally inactivated by the low pH of gastric content, should not be administered orally. GI enzymes are lower in the neonates than in adults. Neonates have less bile acid so that absorption of lipid soluble drugs is less. Gastric emptying time is prolonged in the first day. So medicines, which are absorbed primarily in the stomach, may be absorbed more completely. For drugs absorbed in the small intestine, therapeutic effects may be delayed. Peristalsis in neonates is slow. More medicines, therefore, will get absorbed from the small intestine. The volume of distribution is low in children, and drug metabolizing enzymes are not well developed. The glomerular filtration rate is slower than adults (30-40%). So the clearance of drugs is slower in children than in adults. This definitely demands for dose adjustment in this age group.

Dose adjustment in pediatrics:

The most reliable pediatric doses are those given by the manufacturer. If no such information is given, the dose can be calculated using formulae based on age, weight or surface area. Calculations of doses based on age or weight are conservative and tend to underestimate the required dose. Doses based on surface area are more likely to be adequate. This is available in form of chart. Pediatric doses can be calculated as follow:

Dose calculations based on Age:

$$\text{Dose} = \text{adult dose} \times \frac{\text{age (years)}}{\text{Age} + 12}$$

Dose calculations based on Weight:

$$\text{Dose} = \text{adult dose} \times \frac{\text{weight (kg)}}{70}$$

Prescribing for elderly patients

There is no major alteration in medicine absorption in elderly patients. However, Conditions associated with age may alter the rate of absorption of some medicines. Such conditions include altered nutritional habits, alteration in gastric emptying, which is often slower and the concurrent administration of other medicines. Aged people have reduced lean body mass, reduced body water and an increase in fat as a percentage of body mass. There is a decrease in serum albumin, and the ratio of bound to free drug is significantly changed. Phase I reactions are more affected in elderly patients than phase II. There is a decline with age of the liver's ability to recover from injury. Diseases that affect hepatic function like congestive cardiac failure are more common in the elderly. Severe nutritional deficiencies in the elderly may impair hepatic function. Creatinine clearance declines in the elderly leading to marked prolongation of the half life of drugs. The increased incidence of active pulmonary disease in the elderly could compromise drug elimination through exhalation.

There is also a change in the sensitivities of receptors to medicines in aged people. The quality and quantity of life in elderly patients can be improved by careful use of drugs. Adherence to the doses is absolutely required in these patients. Unfortunately patient nonadherence in the elderly is common because of forgetfulness, confusion, deliberate skipping of doses and physical disabilities as in the case of tremors which cause errors in measurement by spoon.

Prescribing in renal failure

Many drugs are excreted through the kidneys and impairment of renal function alters the excretion of these medicines and may result in renal as well as non-renal toxicity unless doses are adjusted on the basis of the degree of renal impairment. There are two principal pathways for drug excretion by the kidneys; glomerular filtration and tubular excretion. Glomerular filtration plays a major role in the excretion of small, non-protein bound molecules whereas protein bound molecules that are excreted in urine are eliminated by secretion into the proximal tubules.

For dose adjustment in renal failure it may occasionally be necessary to measure drug levels and adjust doses accordingly, but generally doses are adjusted on the basis of the estimated

glomerular filtration rate (GFR). Among the various formulae used to estimate the GFR from the serum creatinine, the Cockcroft Gault formula is the easiest to use although not the most accurate one. The GFR in the C&G formula is calculated as follows:

$$GFR = \frac{(140-age)\times \text{lean body weight(kg)}}{\text{Serum creatinine (mg/dl)} \times 72}$$

The value is multiplied by 0.85 in women to account for the smaller muscle mass.

Factors that potentiate renal dysfunction and contribute to the nephrotoxic potential of renally excreted medicines include;

- intravascular volume depletion either due to external losses or fluid sequestration (as in ascites or edema)
- Concomitant use of 2 or more nephrotoxic agents' e.g. Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory agents, aminoglycosides, radio contrast agents.

In general in the presence of renal impairment to avoid worsening of renal dysfunction

1. Avoid potentially nephrotoxic drugs and use alternative drugs that are excreted through other routes.
2. If there are no alternative drugs to use calculate the GFR and adjust the dose on the basis of the estimated GFR. (Many textbooks, formularies have tables showing dose adjustment on the basis of estimated GFR).Dose adjustment may be accomplished in three different ways i) Decreasing each individual dose and maintaining the same dose frequency ii) Maintaining the same individual dose but administering each dose less frequently and iii) Modifying both individual doses and the frequency of administration, which is a combination method.
3. Avoid concomitant use of 2 or more potentially nephrotoxic agents.
4. Insure that the patient is adequately hydrated.
5. If the patient is on dialysis check if the drug is eliminated by the specific dialysis modality and consider administering a supplemental dose at the end of the dialysis session.
6. Serially monitor kidney function.

Prescribing in liver disease

The liver is a site for the metabolism and elimination of many medicines but it is only in severe liver disease that changes in medicines metabolism occur. Unfortunately, routine determination of liver enzymes and other tests of liver function cannot predict the extent to which the metabolism of a certain drug may be impaired in an individual patient.

In general terms drug prescription should be kept to a minimum in all patients with severe liver disease as liver disease may alter the response to drugs in several ways. Major problems occur in patients with advanced liver disease who have ascites, jaundice or hepatic encephalopathy.

The hypoproteinemia in patients with severe liver disease is associated with reduced protein binding and with increased toxicity when highly protein bound drugs are used.

One must exercise caution in the use of some drugs like sedatives, opioids and diuretics which may precipitate hepatic encephalopathy in patients with advanced liver disease.

It is always advisable to consult tables in standard textbooks or drug formularies before prescribing drugs for patients with severe liver disease.

Prescribing and pain management in Palliative Care

Palliative care is the active total care of patients whose disease is not responsive to curative treatment. Focus lies in four main domains: 1) control of pain and other physical symptoms; 2) mental or psychological symptoms; 3) social needs; and 4) spiritual needs. This requires careful assessment of the symptoms and needs of the patient by a multidisciplinary team. The family should be included in the care of terminally ill patients.

The number of medicines should be as few as possible. Oral medications are usually satisfactory unless there is severe nausea and vomiting, dysphagia, weakness, or coma, in which case parenteral medications may be necessary. The most common medicine classes used in palliative care are strong opioids, nonopioids, corticosteroids, laxatives, antiemetics, gastric protection agents, neuroleptics, sedatives/anxiolytics, antidepressants and diuretics.

Interventions for pain must be tailored to each individual with the goal of preempting chronic pain and relieving breakthrough pain. Pain relief in palliative care may require nonpharmacologic interventions such as radiotherapy or neurosurgical procedures such as peripheral nerve blocks. Pharmacologic interventions follow the World Health Organization three-step approach involving nonopiod analgesics, mild opioids and strong opioids with or without adjuvants.

Analgesics are more effective in preventing pain than in relieving established pain; it is important that they are given regularly. Nonopioid analgesics, especially nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory medicines, are the initial management for mild pain. Ibuprofen, up to 1600mg/day, has minimal risk of gastrointestinal bleeding and renal impairment and is a good initial choice. If nonopioid analgesics are insufficient, then weak opiods such as Codeine should be used. When using opiods, start with short acting formulations and once pain relief is obtained, switch to extended release preparations. Opioids have no ceiling dose-the appropriate dose is one required to achieve pain relief. When using opioids, side effects like constipation, nausea and vomiting have to be anticipated and treated preemptively.

Constipation is another physical symptom that may require pharmacologic management and one may use stimulant laxatives such as Bisacodyl or osmotic laxatives, such as Lactulose or Magnesium Hydroxide.

General guidelines for use of topical steroids

- Absorption from the skin depends on the sites (high at axilla, face and scalp; medium at limbs and trunk; and low at palm, elbow and knee) and nature of lesion (high in exfoliative dermatitis and low in hyperkeratinised skin)
- Strong preparations should be avoided at highly absorption sites and on acute lesions. They may, however, be used for chronic lesions.
- Lotions/creams are better for exudative lesions as they allow evaporation, have cooling, drying and antipruritic effects
- Sprays and gels are good for hairy regions
- Ointments from occlusive film and are good for chronic scaly conditions
- Occlusive dressing enhances steroid absorption, retains moisture and results in maceration of horny layer
- Absorption is greater in pediatric patients, hence milder preparations should be used
- Do not use strong steroids routinely
- Strong preparations should be restricted for short term use only
- Sudden withdrawal should be avoided
- Upon improvement, milder preparations should be substituted
- Twice a day application is enough: do not exceed three times a day

Medicines incompatibilities

Drugs should not be added to blood, amino acid solutions or fat emulsions. Some drugs, when added to IV fluids, may be inactivated due to change in pH, precipitate formation or chemical reaction. For example, benzylepenicillin and ampicillin loose potency after 6-8 hours if added to dextrose solutions, due to the acidity of the solutions. Some drugs, such as diazepam and insulin, bind to plastic containers and tubing. Aminoglycosides are incompatible with penicillins and heparin. Hydrocortisone is incompatible with heparin, tetracycline and chloramphenicol.

Narcotics and controlled substances

The prescribing of a drug that is liable to be abused requires special attention and may be subject to specific legal requirements. Authorized health workers must use these drugs with a full sense of responsibility. The strength, directions and quantity of the controlled substance to be dispensed should be stated clearly. Required details must be filled in the prescription form carefully to avoid alteration and abuse.

Antimicrobial prophylaxis

Postoperative wound infections are the major source of infectious morbidity in the surgical patient. Surgical site infections (SSIs) are associated with prolonged hospital stays and increase cost. The use of antimicrobial prophylaxis has become an essential component of the standard of care in virtually all surgical procedures and has resulted in a reduced risk of postoperative infection when sound and appropriate principles of prophylaxis are applied which include:

- There is probable risk of infection in the absence of a prophylactic agent.
- There must be knowledge of the probable contaminating flora associated with the operative wound or organ site.
- The activity of the chosen prophylactic agent should encompass the majority of pathogens likely to contaminate the wound or operative site.
- When more than one choice is given as a prophylactic agent, the agents or agents selected should be based on the most likely contaminating organisms.
- Single antimicrobial agent is preferable.
- The prophylactic agent must be administered in a dose which provides an effective tissue concentration prior to intra-operative bacterial contamination. Administration must occur 30-45 minutes prior to incision (usually with the induction of anesthesia).
- The effective dose should be governed by the patient's weight.
- In procedures lasting 3 hour or less, a single prophylactic dose is usually sufficient. Procedures lasting greater than three hours require an additional effective dose. Procedures in which there is rapid blood loss and/or fluid administration will dictate more

frequent prophylactic dosing. Under no circumstance should any prophylactic agent be given on-call because it often results in less than effective tissue levels at the time of incision. Postoperative prophylaxis is strongly discouraged except in the scenario of a bioprosthetic insertion in which case 2 or 3 additional prophylactic doses may be deemed sufficient (Warning: there are no standard rules on prophylaxis following prosthetic insertion and clinical experience strongly dictates practice).

- Vancomycin may be used for patients with severe penicillin/cephalosporin allergy.
- An effective and thoughtful prophylactic regimen is no substitute for exquisite surgical technique and competent postsurgical management.

Antimicrobial Prophylaxis in Selected Surgeries

Type of procedure	Agent	Route	Dosage	Time of administration	Rationale (likely infective agent)
I. Clean surgery a. Insertion of synthetic biomaterial device/ prosthesis b. Patients with impaired immunity	Cefazolin Or Cefuroxime	IV	750mg	30-45min before skin incision, 2nd dose if procedure lasts > 3hrs	Gm positive cocci (*S. aureus* and epidermidis), aerobic coliforms (*E. coli)*
II. Upper GIT and elective bowel surgeries (stomach, small bowel, pancreas, hepatobilliary etc)	Ciprofloxacin Or Cefazolin Plus Metronidazole	IV IV IV	400mg 750gm 500mg	30-45min before skin incision	Coliforms > Enterococcus > Streptococci>Aerobic> Clostridia>Pepto-Streptococci Bacteriodes > Prevotella
III. Large bowel resection	Bisacodyl Neomycin Plus Erythromycin Cefazolin Or Ceftetan	PO PO PO IV IV	2tablets 500mg 500mg 1-2gm 1-2gm	2days before surgery 1pm,2pm and 10pm before surgery 30-45min before skin incision, 2nd dose if procedure lasts>3hrs	Coliforms, enterococci, Bacteriodes, peptostreptococci, Clostridia
IV. Acute appendicitis (Non-perforated) NB: In perforated or gangrenous cases treatment should continue as clinically indicated	Cefazolin Plus Metronidazole	IV IV	1gm 500mg	30-45min before skin incision	Coliforms, anaerobes
V. Trauma surgery (penetrating abdominal trauma)	Ampicillin Or Cefazolin Plus metronidazole	IV IV IV	3gm 1-2gm 500mg	30-45min before skin incision, 2nd dose if surgery lasts> 3hrs	Coliforms and anaerobes(gm positive and negative)

Type of procedure	Agent	Route	Dosage	Time of administration	Rationale (likely infective agent)
VI. Gynecology and Obstetrics Vaginal and abdominal hysterectomy including radical hysterectomy Ceasarean section/ hysterectomy	Ceftizoxime Or Cefazolin Ceftizoxime Or Cefazolin	IV	1gm 1gm 1gm	30-45min before skin incision, In high risk patients 2gm may be used after clamping the umbilical In high risk patients 2gm may be used after clamping the umbilical	Coliforms, enterococci, streprococci, clostridia, bacteroides
VII. Urology Prostatectomy **VIII. Head and neck surgery** **a.** Clean procedure (skin incision and dissection) **b.** Mandibular fracture **IX. Orthopedics (Traumatic open fractures)**	Cefazolin Or Ciprofloxacin Cefazolin Or Pencillin G Pencillin G Cefazolin Or Ceftizoxime	IV IV IV IV	1gm 400mg 1gm 2-4MU 2-4MU 2gms	cord 30-45min before skin incision 30-45min before skin incision	Coliforms, staphylococci, Pseudomonads Staphylococci Staphylococci
X. Neurosurgery	Cefazolin	IV	1gm	30-45min before skin incision	Staphylococ

Antimicrobial resistance

Infectious diseases are those which are caused by microorganisms like bacteria, protozoa, viruses and fungi. These diseases are threats to all societies irrespective of age, gender, ethnicity, education and socioeconomic status. . Unexpected outbreaks of infectious disease can occur at any time and at any place with high morbidity and mortality in large populations. Their treatment imposes huge financial burden to society specially to developing ones. A very good example is

the cost incurred for the treatment of HIVs with ARVs which are expensive drugs. A lot of money is spent for the development of better drugs and vaccines. On top of these problems resistance can easily emerge by microorganisms to drugs used for the treatment of infectious diseases which are known as antimicrobials.

Currently, antimicrobials are irrationally used for the treatment, prophylaxis and growth promotion of food animals in order to decrease percentage of fat and increase protein content in the meat. Furthermore they are also used inappropriately to control zoonotic pathogens, such as salmonella and campylobacter. These improper uses result in antimicrobial resistance.

Antimicrobial resistance is the ability of microorganisms to survive and/or multiply in the presence of tolerable doses of antimicrobial drugs. Antimicrobial resistance may be natural when it occurs spontaneously as a result of gene mutation or may be acquired due to inappropriate exposure to antimicrobials.

Biological Mechanisms for antimicrobial resistance

There are several mechanisms by which microorganisms develop antimicrobial resistance. These include

- Inability of antimicrobials to concentrate on their targets by
  - Denying access to their sites of action, e.g., Resistance to cephalosporins
  - Increasing their efflux e.g., Resistance to tetracycline
- Inactivation of antimicrobials through
  - Production of degrading enzymes like β lactamases which hydrolyze β lactams, e.g. resistance to penicillins; and Drug biotransforming enzymes, e.g., resistance to chloramphenicol.
  - Inducing bacterial failure to convert a pro-drug to active metabolites, e.g., resistance to INH
- Alteration of targets due to
  - Target modification, e.g., macrolide resistance
  - Substitution with a resistant target to the native agent e.g., methicillin resistance
  - Use of alternate metabolic pathways, e.g., sulfonamides resistance
  - Mutation of the natural target, e.g., fluoroquinolone resistance

Types of antimicrobial resistance

There are different types of antimicrobial resistance. These include

- Multi Drug Resistance (MDR), which is resistance to two or more drugs
- Cross-resistance, which is resistance that occurs among two different antimicrobials
- Co-resistance, where more than one mechanism of resistance is involved by the same organism for a given antimicrobial

Factors which contribute to antimicrobial resistance

- There are a number of factors which are responsible for resistance to emergence. These include
- Natural disaster due to climatic and weather changes which result in spread of resistant microorganisms
- Poverty due to lack of education, poor sanitation, malnutrition, lack of diagnostic facilities and poor access to drugswith exposure to infections ultimately resulting resistant microorganisms
- Over population which leads to overcrowding resulting in spread of resistant MOs
- Irrational antimicrobial consumption such as self-medication, non-compliance , misinformation, wrong beliefs
- Economic problems leading to premature cessation or sharing of antimicrobials which pave the way for resistant organisms to prevail
- Irrational prescribing (see section on rational prescribing)
- Irrational dispensing(see section on rational dispensing)
- Manufacturers' pressure which has impact both on prescribers and consumers
- Problems in drug procurement
- Inappropriate health service providing centerswhich cater for patients with acute or chronic infection who are reservoirs of highly resistant pathogens
- Environmental contamination with antimicrobials from human, animal, agricultural/ pharmaceutical spillover
- Use of antimicrobials in food animals

Treats of antimicrobial resistance

Many important medicine options for treatment of common infectious diseases are getting limited, expensive or nonexistent. Today, nearly all *Staph. aureus* strains are resistant to penicillin and many even to methicillin.. Resistance to vancomycin is also increasingly being observed. If it is not possible to limit emergence and/or spread of antimicrobial resistance, infections may become untreatable. Antimicrobials are the most misused drugs in developing countries like Ethiopia. They are available not only as OTC in drugs in pharmacies but also in open markets considered being commodities. Studies indicate most common drugs used for self-medication are antibacterials.

Antimicrobial resistance has several economic and health impacts. They cause prolonged illness leading to prolonged absence from work resulting in reduced productivity. Antimicrobial resistance can also contribute for longer hospital stay which increases cost. Antimicrobial resistance also prolongs the period of infectiousness of patients with infections resulting in spread of infection leading to mortality.

Strategies for Antimicrobial containment

- Keeping track of Resistance profile to help identify most prevalent pathogens, status of resistance, more appropriate choices of treatment
- Keeping public health officials alert to new pathogens
- Implementation of control policies
- Preparing Guidelines for antimicrobial use
- Optimize AM prophylaxis for surgery
- Optimize choice and duration of empirical therapy
- Improve prescribing/dispensing pattern
- Control hospital Infection
- Improve Diagnostic quality
- Improve laboratory facilities together with skills of technicians
- Introduce efficient recording/reporting systems
- Improving Public Health
- Adhere to principles of chemotherapy while prescribing which include

- Identification of underlined causative agent/s
- Test for drug sensitivity
- Consideration of Nature of medicine (static/cidal)/ potential toxicity, age of the patient/Concomitant diseases, previous exposure to drugs, cost of therapy, “Reserve antimicrobials”, rational antibacterial prophylaxis, Limiting duration of antimicrobials use and avoiding indiscriminate use of broad spectrum AMs.

Differential Diagnosis

Differential diagnosis is a systematic diagnostic method used to identify the presence of an entity where multiple alternatives are possible (and the process may be termed differential diagnostic procedure), and may also refer to any of the included candidate alternatives (which may also be termed candidate condition). This method is essentially a process of elimination or at least of obtaining information that shrinks the "probabilities" of candidate conditions to negligible levels. The differential diagnostic procedure is in general based on the idea that one begins by considering the most common diagnosis first: flu versus meningitis, for example in someone presenting with a headache.

As a reminder, medical students are taught the adage, "When you hear hoofbeats, look for horses, not zebras," which means look for the simplest, most common explanation first. Only after the simplest diagnosis has been ruled out should the clinician consider more complex or exotic diagnosis.

Differential diagnosis has four steps. First, the physician/ health worker should gather all information (from the history and physical examination) about the patient and create a list of possibilities. Second, the physician should make a list of all possible causes (also termed "candidate conditions") of the symptoms and physical signs. Third, the physician/ health worker should prioritize the list by placing the most likely explanation for the given symptoms and signs at the top of the list. Fourth, the physician/health worker should rule out the possible causes beginning with the most likely condition and working his or her way down the list. "Rule out" practically means to use tests and other scientific methods to render a condition of clinically

negligible probability of being the cause. In the differential diagnostic process the physician/ health worker will need to use various sources of information (in addition to the history and physical examination obtained from the patient) including the epidemiology of the condition/s under consideration and results of laboratory tests and / or imaging studies to narrow down the list of differential diagnosis. The physician/ health worker may sometimes be confronted with a situation, particularly in emergencies where a therapeutic decision would need to be made with incomplete information. Treatment for the most likely condition according to the differential diagnosis procedure will then be acceptable clinical practice

Note: The information presented in these guidelines conforms to the current medical, nursing and pharmaceutical practice. Contributors and editors cannot be held responsible for errors, individual responses to drugs /medicines and other consequences.

CHAPTER II: CARDIOVASCULAR DISORDERS

1. Acute Cardiogenic Pulmonary Edema

Acute cardiogenic pulmonary edema is a life threatening medical emergency which results from either systolic and/or diastolic left ventricular dysfunction, arrhythmias or preload- after load mismatch. It could result from acute heart failure or an acute decompensation of chronic heart failure. The etiology of the heart failure can be any cause of acute or chronic heart failure such as valvular heart disease, cardiomyopathies, ischemic heart disease, hypertensive heart disease, and tachyarryhymias.

Clinical features

- Rapid onset of dyspnea at rest, marked orthopnea.
- Cough with frothy sputum, hemoptysis.
- Tachypnea and severe hypoxemia.
- Pulmonary crepitations and wheezing.
- S3 gallop
- Hypertension or hypotension.
- Other features of heart failure- raised JVP, hepatomegaly, peripheral edema
- Findings which would suggest the specific cause of the heart failure

Investigations

Investigations should not cause any delay in the management of acute cardiogenic pulmonary edema

Treatment

Objectives

- Relive symptoms
- Stabilize hemodynamic state

Non pharmacologic

- Maintain open airway.
- Bed rest in sitting position, unless hypotensive or comatose.
- Oxygen via nasal catheter or face mask.
- Frequent monitoring of vital signs
- Identify and treat precipitating factor

Pharmacologic

Give Furosemide 40 to 80 mg, IV bolus and refer by ambulance

2. Heart Failure

Heart failure is an abnormality of cardiac structure or function leading to failure of the cardiac output to meet the body's metabolic requirements despite normal filling pressures. Clinically it is a syndrome consisting of typical symptoms (Shortness of breath, fatigue, orthopnea, ankle swelling) and signs (raised JVP, pulmonary crackles, displaced apex beat, edema). It might predominantly involve the left ventricle or the right ventricle. More commonly, however, both left and right ventricular dysfunctions co-exist. It could result from systolic or diastolic dysfunction or both. Identification of the underlying cause of the heart failure is central to the diagnosis. It could result from valvular disease, ischemic heart disease, hypertension, cardiomyopathies, thyrotoxicosis, congenital heart disease etc.

The functional classification of heart failure using the New York Heart Association (NYHA) Classification is described in the table below.

Table 1: New York Heart Association (NYHA) functional Classification for Heart Failure

NYHA I	No limitation of physical activity.
NYHA II	Slight limitation of physical activity- Comfortable at rest, but ordinary physical activity results in fatigue, palpitation or dyspnea.
NYHA III	Marked limitation of physical activity - Comfortable at rest, light activity causes fatigue, palpitation or dyspnea.
NYHA IV	Symptomatic at rest

Clinical features

- Breathlessness on exertion, Breathlessness on lying flat (orthopnea)
- Intermittent breathlessness at night (paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea)
- Night cough, Tachypnea, Frothy blood-stained sputum, Lower chest crepitations
- Swelling of the feet and lower extremities, Abdominal distention and discomfort
- Pitting pedal edema, Ascites, Tender hepatomegaly
- Tachycardia, S3 gallop, Cardiac murmurs, Displaced apex beat
- Raised jugular venous pressure,

Investigations

- CBC, BUN, Creatinine and Electrolytes, LFT

Treatment

Treatment objectives

- Relieve symptoms and improve quality of life
- Improve survival
- Treat the precipitating cause
- Prevent complications
- Treat the precipitating cause

Non-pharmacological treatment

- Reduce salt intake, avoid a salt intake of >6g/day
- Avoid "salt replacement" tablets due to their high potassium content.
- Encourage patients to weigh themselves
- Reduction of weight in overweight and obese individuals
- Refraining from excessive alcohol consumption
- Avoid smoking. Patients should be offered smoking cessation advice and support.
- Encourage low intensity physical activity amongst patients with stable heart failure
- Bed rest in hospitalized patients

Caution!
Heart failure is a pathophysiologic state caused by different etiologies such as valvular heart disease, hypertensive heart disease, coronary artery disease and cardiomyopathies. Treatment needs to be tailored to the specific causes. The main stay of treatment in symptomatic valvular heart disease is surgical correction; the use of ACE inhibitors or beta blockers is not well studied in valvular heart disease. ACEI use in stenotic valvular heart diseases is deleterious.

Pharmacological treatment

Initial therapy of moderate heart failure – Start the following and refer

i. **Diuretics**
Furosemide oral, 40mg, po, once daily or BID.

Give **Potassium chloride** sustained release, oral, 600-1200 mg, 12 hourly.

ii. **Spironolactone**, oral, 25-50 mg daily

DO NOT GIVE POTASSIUM SPARING DIURETICS SUCH AS SPIRONOLACTONE AND POTASSIUM CHLORIDE SUPPLEMENTS TOGETHER

iii. **Digoxin**, oral, 0.125 mg once daily

3. Hypertension

Hypertension is a state of elevated systemic blood pressure that causes marked increment of cardiovascular risk. It is one of the major but preventable risk factors of coronary artery disease, hemorrhagic and ischemic stroke, heart failure and chronic kidney disease. In 90-95% of cases, the cause is unknown and it is called essential hypertension. Secondary hypertension refers to hypertension caused by other systemic illness as part of their manifestation. The common causes are renal parenchymal disease (e.g. glomerulonephritis, chronic kidney disease of any cause), renovascular disease (renal artery stenosis), endocrine (e.g. Cushing syndrome, primary hyperaldosteronism, Pheochromocytoma), coarctation of the aorta, obstructive sleep apnea and drug induced (e.g. corticosteroid, oral contraceptive pills).

Although the risk of cardiovascular and renal disease continuously rises over the entire range of blood pressure; based on the level of blood of blood pressure hypertension is defined a systolic blood pressure $\geq$ 140mmHg and/or diastolic blood pressure $\geq$ 90mmHg.

Clinical features

- Hypertension is generally **ASYMPTOMATIC.**
- Clinical evaluation (history and physical examination) should focus on proper blood pressure measurement, looking for other cardiovascular risk factors (Diabetes Mellitus, Dyslipidemia, Obesity, Smoking and family history of coronary heart disease), looking for evidence of end organ damage and searching for possible secondary causes.

Table 2. Category of blood pressure according to the USA Joint National Committee on Prevention, Detection, Evaluation, and Treatment of High Blood Pressure (JNC-7)

	Blood pressure in mm Hg		
Category	**Systolic**		**Diastolic**
Normal	<120	AND	<80

Prehypertension	120-139	OR	80-89
Hypertension	≥140	OR	≥90

Table 3. Category of stage of hypertension according to the USA Joint National Committee on Prevention, Detection, Evaluation, and Treatment of High Blood Pressure (JNC-7)

Stage of hypertension	**Systolic**		**Diastolic**
Stage1	140-159	OR	90-99
Stage 2	≥160	OR	≥100

N.B These definitions apply to adults on no antihypertensive treatment and who are not acutely ill. If there is a disparity in the category between the systolic and diastolic pressures, the higher value determines the severity of hypertension

1. **Hypertensive Emergencies-** are acute, life-threatening, and usually associated with marked increases in blood pressure (BP), generally ≥180/120 mmHg**.** These are situations that require immediate (within minutes) blood pressure reduction to prevent or limit target organ damage.

   The conditions include ypertensive encephalopathy, intracranial hemorrhage, unstable angina, acute myocardial infarction, acute kidney injury, pulmonary edema and dissecting aortic aneurysm, and eclampsia.
2. **Hypertensive Urgency-** is a situation in which there is asymptomatic severe hypertension with no target organ damage.Tthe goal of management is to reduce the blood pressure to ≤160/100 mmHg over several **hours to days, not rapidly.** This is based on the adverse effects observed with faster correction and/or lower achieved blood pressure.

Investigations

- Urinalysis
- BUN/Creatinine
- Fasting blood glucose

Treatment Objectives

- Detection and management of other cardiovascular risk factors
- Detection and management of target organ damage
- Prevention of target organ damage
- Decrease the side effects of medications
- Achieve target blood pressure (< 140/90mmHg, in patients having diabetes with proteinuria and chronic kidney disease < 130/80 mmHg)

Non pharmacologic

- **Smoking cessation**: Complete cessation of smoking
- **Physical activity**: At least 30 minutes of moderate intensity activity 5-7 days per week
- **Weight reduction**: BMI 18-24 kg/m2, waist circumference < 102 men, < 88 cm women
- **Dietary recommendations**: emphasize fruits, vegetables, low-fat dairy products, fibre, whole grains, and protein sources that are reduced in saturated fats and cholesterol
- **Reduce salt intake:** about1 tsp of table salt. Do not forget hidden salt in home prepared spices
- **Alcohol consumption**: limited to two drinks or less per day.

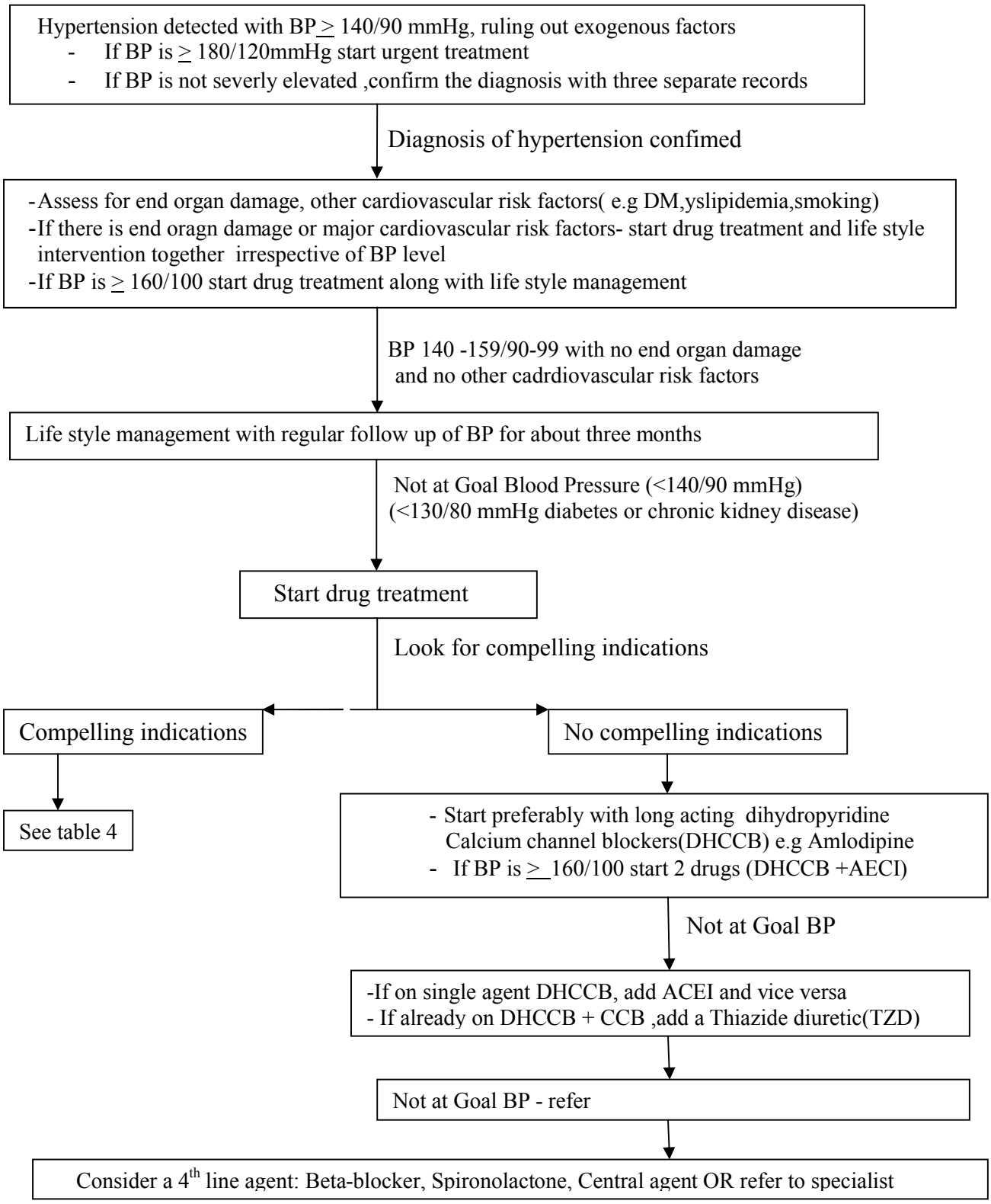
One standard drink

- 1 bottle (341 mL) of 5% beer or 1 glass (150 mL) of 12% wine or, 1.5 oz (45 mL) of 40% spirit

Pharmacologic

- The first-line drugs are roughly equally effective as mono therapy although there is inter-patient variability.
- Beta blockers are not considered as first line in the absence of a compelling indication.
- Start with a single agent among the first lines, two drugs can be started at the beginning in stage 2 hypertension if the BP is hiher than 20/10 mmHg from the target.
- If BP target is not achieved by a single agent add a second agent rather than increasing the dose of the first drug to maximum dose.
- If two drug combinations are started, start with a long acting ACEI (e.g Lisinopril) and long acting dihydropyridine calcium channel blocker (e.g Amlodipine)

Fig 1. Algorithm for the treatment of essential Hypertension


Hypertension detected with BP ≥ 140/90 mmHg, ruling out exogenous factors
- If BP is ≥ 180/120mmHg start urgent treatment
- If BP is not severly elevated ,confirm the diagnosis with three separate records
Diagnosis of hypertension confimed
-Assess for end organ damage, other cardiovascular risk factors(e.g DM,yslipidemia,smoking)
-If there is end oragn damage or major cardiovascular risk factors- start drug treatment and life style intervention together irrespective of BP level
-If BP is ≥ 160/100 start drug treatment along with life style management
BP 140 -159/90-99 with no end organ damage and no other cadrdiovascular risk factors
Life style management with regular follow up of BP for about three months
Not at Goal Blood Pressure (<140/90 mmHg)
(<130/80 mmHg diabetes or chronic kidney disease)
Start drug treatment
Look for compelling indications
Compelling indications
No compelling indications
See table 4
- Start preferably with long acting dihydropyridine Calcium channel blockers(DHCCB) e.g Amlodipine
- If BP is ≥ 160/100 start 2 drugs (DHCCB +AECI)
Not at Goal BP
-If on single agent DHCCB, add ACEI and vice versa
- If already on DHCCB + CCB ,add a Thiazide diuretic(TZD)
Not at Goal BP - refer
Consider a 4th line agent: Beta-blocker, Spironolactone, Central agent OR refer to specialist

Non -Emergency conditions

First line (in the absence of compelling indications**)**

Calcium channel blockers - Amlodipine, Nifedipine**,** (extended or slow release), Felodipine

ACE inhibitors - Lisinopril, Enalapril and captopril

Thiazide diuretics- Hydrochlorothiazide

Angiotensin receptor blockers (ARBs) – Candesartan, Valsartan, Losartan

(For ADRs, and dosage forms, see Table 4 below)

Alternatives

Beta blockers- Atenolol, Metoprolol, Carvedilol, propranolol

Central alpha-2 agonist – methyldopa, for dose regimens, ADRs, C/Is, P/Cs, D/Is and dosage forms, see Table 4 below.

Table 4. Dose and frequency of antihypertensive medications available

Class	Drug	Dose range (mg/d)	Frequency (Per day)	Common ADRs
ACEI	Enalapril	5 - 40	1-2	Dry cough, hyperkalemia, AKI, angioedema
	Lisinopril	10 - 40	1	
	Captopril	25 -100	2-3	
Thiazide diuretics	Hydrochlorothiazide	12.5 - 25	1	Frequent urination, hyperglycemia, hyperlipidemia, hyperuricemia
Dihydropyrdine CCB	Amlodipine	2.5 - 10	1	Pedal edema and headache
	Nifedipine(extended release)	20 - 120	1-2	
	Felodipine	2.5 - 20	1	
Beta blockers	Atenolol	25 - 100	1	Fatigue, bronchospasm,bradycardia, AV block hyperglycemia, sexual dysfunction
	Propranolol	40 - 160	2-3	
	Metoprolol succinate	25 - 100	1	
	Carvedilol	12.5 - 50	2	
ARBS	Candesartan	8 -32	1	Hyperkalemia and AKI
	Valsartan	80- 320	1 – 2	
	Losartan	25 - 100	1 - 2	
Non-dihydropyrdine CCB	Verapamil	120–360	1-2	Constipation (verapamil), headache (diltiazem), bradyacrdia
	Diltiazem	180-420	1	
Central α agonists	Methyl dopa	250 - 1000	2	Sedation, dry mouth, rebound hypertension, sexual dysfunction

Table 5- Compelling indication/co-morbidities in hypertension treatment

Compelling condition	First line	Second line
Coronary heart disease	ACE inhibitors/ARB Beta blockers	Calcium channel blocker
Heart failure	ACE inhibitor/ARB Metoprolol/Carvedilol	Diuretics
Diabetes with proteinuria	ACE inhibitor/ARB	Thiazide Calcium channel blockers
Left ventricular hypertrophy	ACE inhibitor/ARB	Thiazide
Chronic kidney disease	ACE inhibitor/ARB	Loop diuretics, cacium channel blocker

I. Treatment of Hypertensive Emergencies

Optimal therapy varies with the type of hypertensive emergency. Hydralazine, 5-10 mg initial dose, repeated every 20 to 30 minutes (with maximum dose of 20 mg)

Alternative – Furosemide 40 mg, IV stat

After giving the first few doses of the above medications, refer

II. Hypertensive Urgency

- **For previously treated patients** – adjust existing medication regimen, or reinstituting
    - their medications (if nonadherent)
- **For previously untreated patients** – start either a low dose of a calcium channel blocker
    - (Nifedipine**,** slow release 30) or ACE inhibitor (captopril or Enalapril) or Beta blocker
- **Furosemide 20-40mg** (PO or IV) can be added to the above agents
- If patient is reliable follow up can be made every one to two day. If not reliable admit
- Avoid rapid drop in blood pressure
-

4. Ischemic Heart Disease

Clinically Ischemic Heart Disease comprises of stable angina pectoris, acute coronary syndromes and ischemic cardiomyopathy.

Stable angina pectoris

Stable angina pectoris refers to recurrent characteristic/atypical chest pain induced by physical activity or emotional stress and relieved by rest or nitrates. Atherosclerosis with narrowing of the coronary blood vessels of the vessels leading to reduction in blood supply to the myocardium is the cause. Risk factors of stable angina are that of atherosclerotic vascular disease, the major risk factors include diabetes mellitus, hypertension, cigarette smoking, dyslipidemia, obesity, a family history of ischemic heart disease or sudden death, old age, male gender and elevated markers of inflammation such as C-reactive protein.

Clinical features

- Central/retrosternal or precordial squeezing chest pain or heaviness on the chest which may radiate into the left arm, neck or jaw relieved by rest or nitrate.
- The pain usually happens during physical activity and is relieved by rest or nitrates.
- No typical signs are found in patients with stable angina.
- Physical findings which indicate the presence of risk factors may be observed: hypertension, obesity, xanthelasmata, evidence of peripheral arterial disease etc.

Investigations

- Fasting blood glucose

Treatment- refer

5. Rheumatic Fever

Rheumatic fever is a systemic illness in which there is inflammation of several organs. It occurs as non-suppurative complication of group A streptococcus pharyngitis and may consist of arthritis, carditis, chorea, erythema marginatum, and subcutaneous nodules. The onset of symptoms occurs 1-3 weeks after the throat infection Damage to cardiac valves is the most serious complication and it is usually progressive. It is a major cause of permanent damage to the heart in developing countries. The disease occurs mainly in children of school age.

The major manifestations are:

- Migratory arthritis (predominantly involving the large joints)
- Carditis and valvulitis (eg, pancarditis)
- Central nervous system involvement (eg, Sydenham chorea)

- Erythema marginatum
- Subcutaneous nodules

The four minor manifestations are:

- Arthralgia, Fever
- Elevated acute phase reactants

Supporting evidence of preceding streptococcal infection- Elevated or rising ASO titre, Positive throat culture

Diagnosis – requires the presence of supporting evidence for preceding streptococcal infection and the following

1) Primary episode of Rheumatic Fever or recurrence without established rheumatic heart disease- Two major or one major and two minor manifestations.
2) Recurrent attack of Rheumatic fever with established rheumatic heart disease- two minor manifestations.
3) Rheumatic chorea or insidious onset carditis-neither evidence of preceding streptococcal infection nor other major manifestation needed.

Investigations

- CBC
- ESR
- Antistreptolysin O (ASO) titre

Treatment

Objectives

- Eradicate streptococcal throat infection
- Prevent recurrent episodes of rheumatic fever and further valvular damage
- Treat heart failure, if co-existent
- Control inflammation and relive symptoms of arthritis

Non-pharmacologic

- Bed rest if the patient has severe rheumatic carditis or arthritis/arthralgia only.
- Salt restriction if there is associated heart failure

Pharmacologic

1) Antibiotic (primary prevention)

2) Conventional therapy for heart failure - (See page 40, Heart Failure)

3) Anti-inflammatory- refer

4) Prevention of recurrent rheumatic fever (secondary prevention)

First line

Benzathine penicillin, 1.2 million units or 600,000 units if <30 kg, every 4 weeks. It can be given every 3 weeks, to persons considered to be at particularly high risk.

(For ADRs, C/Is, P/Cs, D/Is and dosage forms see page 408)

Alternative (if penicillin allergic)

Erythromycin, 250 mg, p.o. BID

(For ADRs, C/Is, P/Cs, D/Is and dosage forms see page 268)

Table 6. Duration of secondary prophylaxis

Category of Patient	**Duration of Prophylaxis**
Rheumatic fever without carditis	For 5 years after the last attack or 18 years of age (whichever is longer)
Rheumatic fever with carditis with no residual valvular disease or mild mitral regurigitation	For 10 years after the last attack, or 25 years of age (whichever is longer)
Rheumatic fever with persistent valvular disease or after valve surgery	Life long

CHAPTER III: ENDOCRINE DISORDERS

1. Diabetes Mellitus

Diabetes mellitus describes a group of disorders which are phenotypically characterized by persistently high blood glucose levels. Diabetes is a major cause of cardiovascular disease, chronic kidney disease, visual loss and amputations.

Current diagnostic criteria for the diagnosis of diabetes mellitus:

1) Fasting plasma glucose (FPG) ≥126 mg/dl
2) Hemoglobin A1C ≥6.5%
3) A random plasma glucose ≥200 mg/dl, in patients with classic symptoms of hyperglycemia or hyperglycemic crisis
4) Two-hour plasma glucose ≥200 mg/dl during an oral glucose oral tolerance test

The classification of diabetes includes four clinical classes

1) **Type 1 diabetes**- results from β-cell destruction(immune mediated or idiopathic), leading to absolute insulin deficiency
2) **Type 2 diabetes** - results from a progressive insulin secretory defect on the background of insulin resistance
3) **Other specific types of diabetes** - e.g., genetic defects in β-cell function, genetic defects in insulin action, diseases of the exocrine pancreas , and drug-induced diabetes
4) **Gestational diabetes mellitus (GDM) -** diabetes diagnosed during pregnancy in previously non-diabetic woman.

Clinical features

- No recognizable symptoms in many individuals particularly in type 2 diabetes
- Large amounts of urine (polyuria)
- Thirst and excessive drinking of water
- Unexplained weight loss
- Blurred vision
- Recurrent skin infections
- Recurrent itching of the vulva
- Symptoms related to chronic complications
- Abnormal sensory / motor neurologic findings on extremities

- Foot abnormalities (various deformities, ulcers, ischemia)
- Visual impairment

Investigations

Newly diagnosed patient

- Fasting or random blood glucose
- Urine ketones
- Urine protein
- Blood urea, electrolytes and creatinine
- Fasting lipid profile

N.B In the absence of severe hyperglycemia, the diagnosis of Diabetes Mellitus should be confirmed with repeat fasting blood sugar determination.

Treatment

Objectives

- Relieve symptoms
- Prevent acute hyperglycemic complications
- Prevent chronic complications of diabetes
- Prevent treatment-related hypoglycemia
- Achieve and maintain appropriate glycemic targets
- Ensure weight reduction in overweight and obese individuals

Treatment of type -2 diabetes mellitus is not just treatment of hyperglycemia. It includes management of all cardiovascular risks (hypertension, dyslipidemia and obesity, smoking)

Treatment of Type-2 Diabetes Mellitus

Non pharmacologic

1) **Medical Nutrition Therapy (MNT)**
   - Avoid refined sugars as in soft drinks, or adding to their teas/other drinks.
   - Be encouraged to have complex carbohydrates.
   - Low in animal fat.
   - Increase in the amount of fiber e.g. vegetables, fruits and cereals

2) Exercise

- Regular moderate-intensity aerobic physical activity for at least 30 minutes at least 5 days a week or at least 150 min/week.
- Encouraged to resistance training three times per week for type -2 diabetes

3) Self-blood glucose monitoring (SBGM)

4) Screening and treatment of micro and macro vascular complications

Table 1. Glycemic Targets for Non-Pregnant Adults with Diabetes

Fasting plasma glucose (capillary)	**70-130 mg/dl**
Postprandial(1–2 h after the beginning of the meal) plasma glucose	**< 180 mg/dl**
Hemoglobin A1C	**< 7%**

CAUTION

For older adults, for those with reduced life expectancy, higher cardiovascular disease burden and advanced chronic kidney disease glycemic targets should be high(less ambitious). Avoidance of hypoglycemia, decreasing extreme hyperglycemia and drug safety should be the focus.

Pharmacologic

1) Oral blood glucose lowering drugs

Metformin

- It is the first line drug for initiation of therapy
- If intolerant to metformin or have a contraindication to it, sulfonylureas can be the initial drugs to start treatment.

Metformin, 500 mg, p.o.daily with meals.Titrate dose slowly depending on blood glucose levels or HbA1C to a maximum dose 2000 -2500mg

ADRs: abdominal discomfort and diarrhea, lactic acidosis

C/Is: Serum creatinine >1.5 mg/dL (men) >1.4 mg/dL (women), CHF, radiographic contrast studies, seriously ill patients, acidosis, hepatic failure

Dosage forms: Tablet, 500 mg, 850mg, 1000mg

If blood sugar targets are not achieved

ADD

2) **Sulfonylureas**

Glibenclamide, 2.5 mg -5mg, p.o.daily 30 minutes before breakfast

- Titrate dose slowly depending on HbA1c and/or fasting blood glucose levels to 15 mg daily.
- When 7.5 mg per day is needed, divide the total daily dose into 2, with the larger dose in the morning.
- Avoid in the elderly and patients with renal impairment.

ADRs: abdominal discomfort and diarrhea;

C/Is: renal diseases, hepatic disease, alcoholism.

Dosage forms: Tablet, 5 mg

N.B- **If postprandial hyperglycemia remains high with good fasting blood sugar while patient is on basal insulin regimen as depicted above; pre meal short acting agents can be added.**

3) **If poorly controlled with the above treatment, refer for further therapy**

4) **Management of other cardiovascular risks**

A. Aspirin, 75–162 mg, p.o, once/day

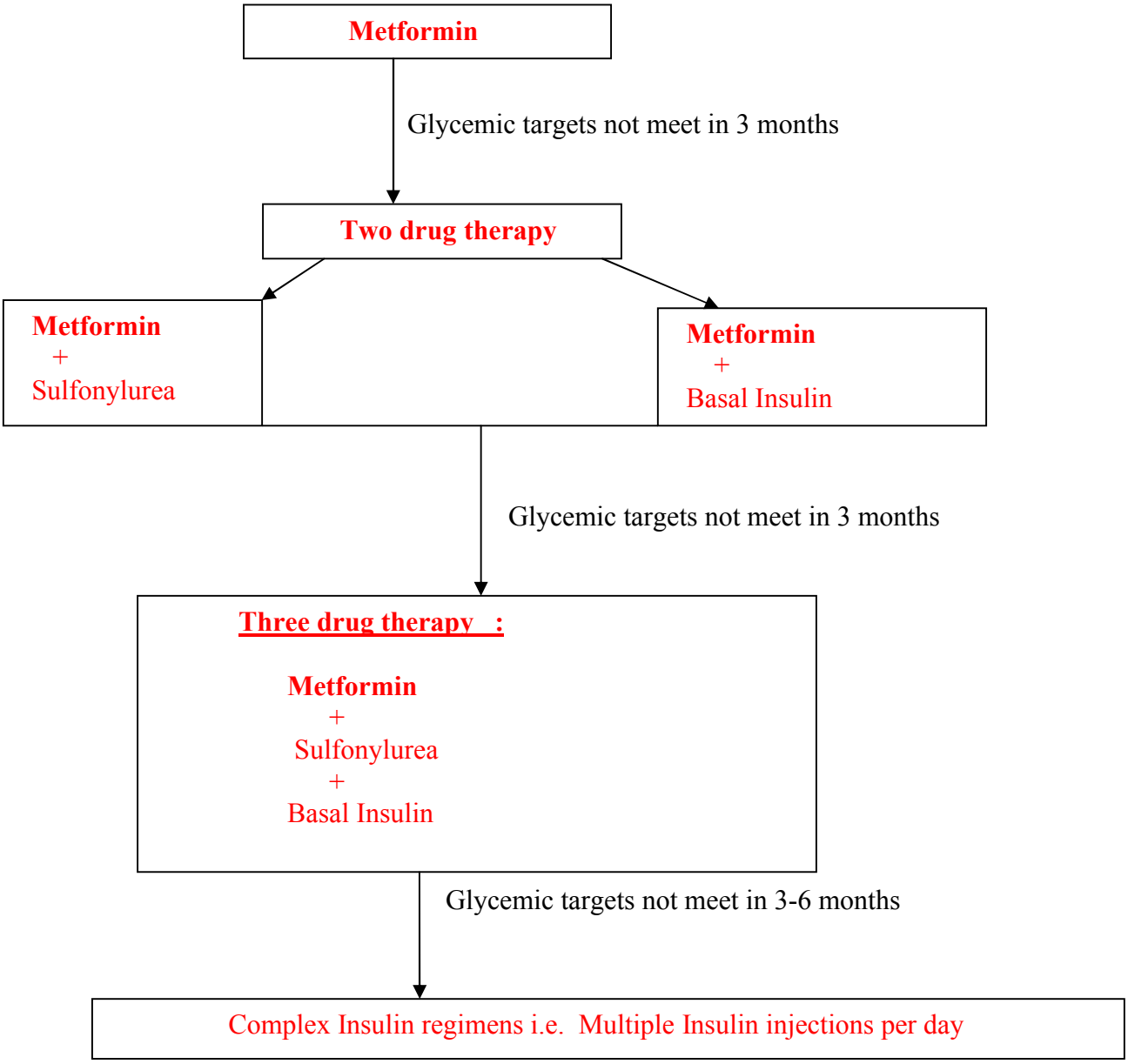
Indications:

- Increased cardiovascular risk (10-year risk >10%)
- Men >50 years of age or women >60 years of age who have at least one additional major risk factor (Hypertension, Smoking, Dyslipidemia, Albuminuria and family history of CVD)

(For ADRs, C/Is, P/Cs, D/Is and dosage forms see page 109)

B. Antihypertensives (See treatment of hypertension) - ACE inhibitors or ARBS are the drugs of choice

Fig 1. Sequential therapy in Type 2 Diabetes (modified from Diabetes Care, Diabetologia.19 April 2012)



Treatment of Type 1 Dibetes Mellitus

Non pharmacologic

- See type 2 Diabetes

Pharmacologic

- Insulin

Insulin regimen in type 1 Diabetes Mellitus

1. **Conventional insulin therapy** - describes simpler non-physiologic insulin regimens, such as single daily injections, or two injections per day (including a combination of regular or short-acting and NPH insulin)
2. **Intensive insulin therapy** - describes treatment with **three or more injections per day** or with continuous insulin infusion with an insulin pump.

   Intensive insulin therapy requires:

   - Monitoring blood sugar before breakfast (fasting), before lunch, before dinner and before bed.
   - Counting and recording carbohydrates.
   - Adjusting insulin doses in response to given glucose patterns.
   - Coordinating diet, exercise, and insulin therapy.
   - Responding appropriately to hypoglycemia

Designing insulin therapy

- **Total insulin dose per day**

  Initiation - 0.2 to 0.4 units/ kg/ day

  Maintenance – **highly variable** roughly 0.6 to 0.7 units/kg/day

- **Regimen options- with NPH and regular insulin (commonly available in Ethiopian setting)**

  1) NPH twice daily injection – before breakfast and at bed time

  and

  Regular Insulin twice daily injection**-** before breakfast and before supper

  2) **70/30 (**70% **NPH** & 30% **regular)** twice daily injection**-** before breakfast and before supper

  3) NPH twice daily injections – before breakfast and before bedtime.

Table 2. Properties of common insulin preparations and insulin analogues

Preparation	Onset(hr)	Peak(hr)	Effective Duration(hr)
Short acting			
Aspart,Glulisine, Lispro	0.25	0.5–1.5	3–4
Regular(more intermediate than short acting)	0.5–1.0	2–3	4–6
Long acting			
Detemir, Glargine	1–4	minimal	Up to 24
NPH	1–4	6–10	10–16
Mixed			
70/30 = 70% NPH + 30% regular	0.5–1.0	Dual peak (as regular + as NPH)	10 -16

2. Gout

This condition results from the deposition of microcrystals of uric acid in the joints and peri-articular tissues of the affected joints. It is often, but not invariably, associated with elevated blood uric acid levels. This implies that gout may be present even when the level of uric acid in the blood is normal, while patients with high levels of uric acid may not necessarily have attacks of gout. Acute symptoms are often precipitated by the consumption of alcohol and foods rich in purines e.g. red meat, sea foods, as well as trauma, surgery, starvation and infection. Persistent hyperuricemia may be associated with uric acid crystal deposition in subcutaneous tissues (tophus) and in other tissues such as the kidneys and tendons.

Gout can be a manifestation or complication of other diseases such as metabolic syndrome, hematological malignancies, chronic kidney disease and medicines like thiazide and loop diuretics, cytotoxic drugs and pyrazinamide

The three classic stages in the natural history of progressive urate crystal deposition disease (gout) are:

- Acute gouty arthritis
- Intercritical (or interval) gout
- Chronic recurrent and tophaceous gout

Clinical features

The clinical manifestations include one or more of the following:

- Recurrent attacks of acute inflammatory arthritis

- Chronic arthropathy
- Accumulation of urate crystals in the form of tophaceous deposits
- Uric acid nephrolithiasis
- A chronic nephropathy that in gouty patients is most often due to comorbid states

Typical acute attack

- Excruciating pain, redness, swelling, and disability.
- Maximal severity of the attack is usually reached within 12 to 24 hours. .
- 80 % of initial attacks involve a single joint, most often at the base of the great toe (known as **podagra**), or the knee.
- Affected joint is inflamed, swollen and tender

Investigations

- CBC, ESR ,BUN, creatinine, Serum uric acid, Blood glucose

Treatment Objectives

- Relieve pain immediately
- Reduce joint inflammation
- Prevent recurrent attacks and joint damage
- Prevent uric acid crystal deposition in soft tissues

Non Pharmacologic

- Rest affected joint
- Identify and manage underlying or predisposing factors
- Weight reduction in obese or overweight individuals
- Dietary modification (low purine diet)

Pharmacologic

I. Acute Gout

NSAIDS

Ibuprofen, 800 mg p.o.TID with meals. If not tolerated: 400 mg 8 hourly

ADRs: GI disturbances, headache, dizziness; GI ulceration and bleeding; CNS disturbances; thrombocytopenia; hyperglycemia; blurred vision.

C/Is: epilepsy, parkinsonism, psychiatric disturbances

An extra **night-time** dose of a NSAID may be added in some patients with severe nocturnal pain/morning stiffness

OR

Diclofenac, Immediate or delayed release tablet: 150-200 mg/day p.o. in 2-4 divided doses. Rectal suppository, Insert 50 mg or 100 mg rectally as single dose to substitute for final daily dose (maximum combined dose [rectal and oral]: 150 mg/day

OR

Indomethacin, 25-50 mg p.o. BID or TID; maximum dose: 200 mg/day **or** Rectal suppository, 100mg, BID or once, at bed time

(For ADRs and C/Is, see under Ibuprofen above)

Do not give allopurinol in the acute phase. It may worsen or prolong the attack. Start it only when pain is under control i.e. after approximately 2 weeks. NSAIDs are not to be given as maintenance or prophylaxis

II. Chronic gout

- If possible, avoid known precipitants
- Treat secondary causes when possible.
- Assess renal function and blood uric acid level.

Uric acid lowering therapy

Indicated for

- >2 acute attacks per year,
- chronic tophaceous gout,
- Uric acid renal stones,
- Urate nephropathy.

Allopurinol, 100 mg p.o. daily

- Increase monthly by 100 mg according to uric acid blood levels and eGFR.
- Most patients will be controlled with a dose of 300 mg daily.

N.B. Do not stop uric acid lowering drugs during an acute attack

CHAPTER IV: GASTROINTESTINAL TRACT AND LIVER DISORDERS

1. Constipation

Constipation is difficult to define. In general it may be defined as infrequent passage of stool. It may be caused by either organic or functional disorders.

New onset constipation should be taken as an alarm sign for possible colorectal malignancy, hence investigation for the underlying cause should be performed before resorting to symptomatic treatment.

Clinical features

- Complaint of persistent, difficult, or infrequent, or seemingly incomplete defecation

Investigation

- Diagnosis is mainly clinical.

Treatment

Objectives

- Improve symptoms
- Prevent large bowel obstruction

Non pharmacologic

- Removal of the underlying cause
- More fiber diet intake
- High residue diet intake
- Increased fluid intake

Pharmacologic

I. Short term relief of severe constipation.

Magnesium Sulphate, 10-20 mg P.O. in a glass of water, preferably before breakfast.

ADRs: colic

C/Is: acute gastro-intestinal conditions

Dosage forms: Magnesium sulphate crystals in sachets

II. For chronic constipation

Treating constipation with laxatives of any type for long period of time is not advisable.
All patients with more an an acute constipation should be evaluated for colonic malignancy.
The presence of exweight loss, anemia, and anorexia are strong indicators of malignancy.

First line

Bisacodyl, 5 – 10mg, P.O. at night OR 10mg rectally in the morning

ADRs: mild

C/Is: insignificant

Dosage forms: Tablet, 5mg; suppository, 5mg, 10mg.

Alternatives

Cascara, 40mg, P.O. at night

ADRs: mild

C/Is: insignificant

Dosage forms: tablet, 125mg

OR

Glycerin, 1 gm, rectally at night after moistening with water

ADRs: loose stool

C/Is: insignificant

Dosage forms: suppository, 1g, 1.36g, 2g, and 2.76g

OR

Liquid paraffin, 10ml, P.O. every 8-12 hrs as required

ADRs: loose stool

C/is: insignificant

Dosage forms: semi-liquid preparation.

2. Dyspepsia and Peptic Ulcer Disease

Dyspepsia describes a wide and common clinical entity which presents in one of the three ways:

1) Epigastric pain/burning (epigastric pain syndrome)
2) Postprandial fullness
3) Early satiety

Dyspepsia is caused by a number of disorders. The most common cause is functional (non- ulcer) dyspepsia followed by peptic ulcer disease. Gastro esophageal reflux disease (GERD), gastric cancer, drug induced dyspepsia, biliary pain, chronic abdominal wall pain and pancreatitis are other possible causes.

Clinical features

Depending on the type of dyspeptic syndrome patients may present with predominant epigastric burning sensation/pain/discomfort, postprandial discomfort and fullness or unable to finish regular meal.

ALARM INDICATORS	
Advanced age (>55years)	previous gastric surgery
Unintended weight loss	Persistent vomiting
Progressive dysphagia/Odynophagia	Otherwise unexplained anemia
Hematemesis	Palpable abdominal mass
Lymphadenopathy	Jaundice

Investigations

Treatment

Objectives

- Decrease symptoms/ improve quality of life
- Prevent development of complications.

Non pharmacologic

- Avoid offensive substance intake

Pharmacologic

First line- Proton pump inhibitors, see options below

Omeprazole, 20mg p.o. twice per day for 4-8 weeks

Dosage forms: Capsule, 20 mg

ADRs: GI disturbances

C/Is: pregnancy, lactation

D/Is*:* may enhance the effect of drugs like warfarin and phenytoin

Alternative- H_2 receptor blockers

Cimetidine, 400 mg p.o. BID for 4-8 weeks

ADRs: galactorrhea, Gynacomastia, impotence

C/Is: insignificant

D/Is: may enhance the effect of drugs like warfarin, phenytoin, and lidocaine

Dosage forms: Tablet, 200 mg, 400 mg, 800 mg; chewable tablet, 200mg

Ranitidine, 150mg p.o. BID

ADRs*:* GI disturbances

C/Is: insignificant

Dosage forms: Tablet, 150 mg

If despepsia persists after a trial of the above therapy, please refer for H.Pylori test and/or upper GI endoscopy

3. Hemorrhoids

Hemorrhoids are enlargement of veins of the hemorrohidal plexus in the submucosal space of the anal canal. Hemorrhoids can be external or internal depending on whether it is the internal or external plexus that is enlarged.

Clinical features

- Internal Hemorrhoids are painless and often manifest with bright red rectal bleeding (usually with or following bowel movements).
- Prolapse with defecation or other straining activities can also occur.
- External hemorrhoids are quite often painful and manifest with a tender swelling at the anal verge.

Internal hemorrhoids are graded

Grade I Visualized on anoscopy

Grade II Prolapse with defecation or with straining but reduce spontaneously

Grade III Require the patient to reduce them into their normal position

Grade IV Irreducible and may strangulate

Investigations

- Diagnosis is usually clinical but confirmation needs anoscopy.
- Hemoglobin/hematocrit

Treatment

Objectives

- Relief of symptoms

- Decrease bleeding and prolapse
- Prevent strangulation

Non pharmacologic

- Fluid and fiber rich diet
- Sitz bath
- Avoid constipation.
- The main stay of treatment for refractory and significantly relapsing hemorrhoids is surgical

Pharmacologic

First line-

Bismuth subgallate, insert one suppository in the rectum BID, OR topical application, BID for five days.

OR

Bismuth Subgallate + Bismuth Oxide + Peru Balsam + Zinc Oxide + Hydrocortisone acetate + Benzyl Benzoate, one suppository in the rectum or topical application, BID for five days

ADRs: worsening of untreated infection, and thinning of the skin structure on prolonged use.

C/Is: known hypersensitivity to the preparation, untreated infection.

P/Cs: Same as Bismuth Subgallate Compound. Avoid this preparation in the presence of an infection in the rectal area.

Dosage forms*:* Ointment, 2.25% + 0.875% + 1.875% +10.75% + 0.25% +1.25%

Suppository, 59mg + 24mg + 49mg +296mg + 10mg + 33mg

Alternative

Lidocaine + aluminium acetate + zinc oxide + hydrocortisone acetate, rectal suppository, once per day OR topical application BID for five days.

Dosage forms*:* Ointment, 50 mg + 35 mg + 180 mg + 2.5 mg

Suppository, 60 mg + 50 mg + 500 mg + 5 mg

4. Hepatitis

Hepatitis is an inflammation of the liver with multiple etiologies. It presents as an acute illness with jaundice and altered liver function tests or chronically with progressive liver dysfunction
When symptoms, signs or laboratory abnormalities persist for more than 6 months it is considered as chronic.Common causes include iruses (Hepatitis A, B, C, D and E, EBV etc.), drugs (e.g. anti Tb drugs, ARVs ,anti convulsant, paracetamol and herbal medicines), autoimmune disease (autoimmune hepatitis), deposition disease(e.g. Hemochromatosis, Wison's disease).

Clinical features

- Right upper quadrant abdominal pain
- Fever
- Fatigue, malaise, anorexia, nausea and vomiting
- Yellow or dark coloured urine and pale stools
- Physical findings include jaundice, right upper quadrant tenderness, hepatomegaly,ascites, edema, astrexis and mental status change

Investigations and treatment- Refer after emergency management (correct hypotension and hypoglycemia)

5. Liver Cirrhosis

Cirrhosis represents a late stage of progressive hepatic fibrosis with distortion of the architecture of the liver with formation of regenerative nodules. It can result from any cause of chronic liver disease e.g. chronic viral hepatitis, alcoholic liver disease or Patients with cirrhosis develop a variety of complications which cause marked morbidity and mortality. The common complications include Ascites, Spontaneous bacterial peritonitis, variceal bleeding, Hepatic encephalopathy, and hepatorenal syndrome and hepatocellular carcinoma.

Clinical features

- Symptoms are generally nonspecific (fatigue, poor appetite, weight loss)
- Symptoms of complication e.g. body swelling, hematemesis or melena
- Liver and spleen may be enlarged
- Scleral icterus

- Parotid gland enlargement
- Palmar erythema , spider angiomas
- Pubic and axillar hair loss
- Ascites and edema
- Sleep disturbance, behavioral or mental status changes in patients with encephalopathy

Investigations and treatment- if diagnosis suspected advice on non pharmacologic treatment and refer

Non pharmacologic

- Salt restriction(< 2 g/day)- for ascites
- Monitor weight regularly
- Bed rest
- Low protein diet- for encephalopathy

CHAPTER V: HEMATOLOGIC DISORDERS

1. Anemia

Anemia is defined as reduction in red blood cell (RBC) mass which will be measured in the laboratory by reduction in hemoglobin concentration or hematocrit or RBC count. WHO criteria for anemia in men and women are hemoglobin values <13 and <12 g/dl, respectively.

Anemia is not a single disease entity; it is rather a manifestation of several pathologies.

The causes of anemia can be divided in to two broad categories

I. Anemia due to increased RBC loss or destruction- Hemorrhage or hemolysis

II. Anemia due to defective or decreased RBC production - Examples – Iron deficiency anemia, B12 or folate deficiency, anemia of chronic disease/chronic renal failure/hypothyroidism, Aplastic anemia, Bone marrow infiltration, Chemotherapy induced anemia

Clinical features

- Fatigue/dyspnea/palpitation/syncope
- Headache, lightheadedness, tinnitus, vertigo, difficulty of concentration
- Anorexia/nausea/indigestion
- Pallor /tachycardia/wide pulse pressure /ejection systolic murmur
- Signs of heart failure(raised JVP, S3, hepatomegaly, edema
- Features of the underlying disease e.g. Melena in GI bleeding

Investigation

- CBC
- Peripheral blood smear

Further investigation will depend on the suspected cause/s of anemia based on the above tests, history and physical examination findings.

Suspected iron deficiency anemia- stool for occult blood, stool microscopy for hook worm infestation.

Treatment

Objectives

- Improve the functional status of anemia
- Prevent development of complications such as Heart failure
- Treatment of the underlying cause

Non pharmacologic

- Packed RBC or whole blood transfusion(when there is Heart failure, severe hypoxic symptoms, acute ongoing bleeding)
- Nutritional support
- Non pharmacologic treatment pertinent to the underlying cause

Pharmacologic

- There is no universal pharmacologic treatment for all causes of anemia

Hematinics (Iron, folate and vitamin B12) should not be routinely administered to patients with anemia without a definitive diagnosis of the cause

1) Pharmacologic treatment of iron deficiency anemia- Oral iron replacement

N.B. The cause of the iron deficiency state should be identified and treated

First line

Ferrous sulphate, 325 mg (65 mg elemental iron), 60mg elemental iron TID between meals for at least 3 months following correction of the anemia

ADRs: Nausea, abdominal cramps and dyspeptic symptoms, constipation or diarrhea. For patients who do not tolerate ferrous sulfate tablets, they may be advised to take it with meals, or to start a smaller dose, or to change the brand to ferrous gluconate or fumarate tablets or elixir forms.

D/Is: Antacids, tetracyclines, chloramphenicol, and quinolone antibiotics interfere with the absorption and metabolism of iron.

Dosage forms: Capsule Drop, Tablet (enteric coated)

OR

Ferrous gluconate, 325mg p.o. (39 mg elemental iron), 1- 2 tabs, TID

OR

Ferrous fumarate, 325mg p.o. (107 elemental iron), one tab, daily to twice per day

2) **Pharmacologic treatment of megaloblastic anemia – cobalamin (Vitamin B12) deficiency**

   Cobalamin, 1000 micrograms (1mg), IM, every day for one week, every week for four weeks and then, **if the underlying disorder persists**, 1 mg every month for the remainder of the patient's life**.**

3) **Pharmacologic treatment of megaloblastic anemia- Folate deficiency**

   Folic acid, 1 to 5 mg p.o. daily for 1- 4 months, or until complete hematologic recovery occurs.

Folic acid can partially reverse the hematologic abnormalities of Cobalamin (B12) deficiency BUT neurologic manifestations will progress. Thus, it is important to rule out cobalamin deficiency before treating a patient with megaloblastic anemia with folic acid alone.

2. Venous Thromboembolic Disease

Venous thromboembolism (VTE) is a condition in which a blood clot (a thrombus) forms in a vein, most commonly in the deep veins of the legs or pelvis. This is known as deep vein thrombosis, or DVT.

The thrombus can dislodge and travel in the blood, particularly to the pulmonary arteries. This is known as pulmonary embolism, or PE. The term 'VTE' includes both DVT and PE.

Venous thromboembolic diseases cover a spectrum ranging from asymptomatic calf vein thrombosis to symptomatic DVT. They can be fatal if they lead to PE. Non-fatal VTE can cause serious long-term complications such as post-thrombotic (post phlebitic) syndrome.

Risk factors for VTE are

- Immobility
- Previous PE or DVT
- Major surgery, e.g. orthopedic, abdominal and pelvic surgery,
- Trauma especially involving the pelvis and lower limbs
- Pregnancy and postpartum state
- Contraceptive pill use, hormone replacement therapy (HRT)
- Medical conditions, e.g. CHF, nephrotic syndrome, SLE, IBD
- Malignancy

- Inherited disorders causing hypercoagulability

Clinical features

- Swelling calf or thigh (usually unilateral)
- Pain in the affected limb
- Occasionally tenderness in the limb
- Breathlessness (may be intermittent)
- Dizziness, fainting or collapse
- Sharp chest pain
- Blood stained sputum
- Tachypnea /Tachycardia
- Hypotension
- Pleural effusion
- Low oxygen saturation on pulse oximetry <90%

Investigations and treatment – refer if diagnosis is suspected

CHAPTER VI: INFECTIOUS DISEASES

1. Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome (AIDS)

AIDS is a chronic infectious disease caused by the *Human Immuno-deficiency Virus* type 1 and 2. It is transmitted largely by sexual contacts. Other important means of transmission are direct contact to contaminated blood and blood products and from infected mother to child. It is essentially a disease of the immune system, which results in progressive immunodeficiency state. This immunodeficiency fails to control various types of infections progressing into diseases and the development of malignancies.

Human Immuno-deficiency Virus (HIV) infection targets the immune system and weakens a person's surveillance and defense systems against infections and some types of cancer. The virus destroys and impairs the function of immune cells; hence HIV infected individuals gradually become immunodeficient. Immunodeficiency results in increased susceptibility to a wide range of infections and diseases that people with healthy immune systems can fight off.

The most advanced stage of HIV infection is called **Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome (AIDS)**. AIDS is defined by the development of certain cancers, infections, or other severe clinical manifestations.

Causitive organisms

- HIV 1
- HIV 2

Clinical features

The clinical manifestations are quite variable depending on the degree of immunodeficiency which determines the clinical stage of the disease. The first few weeks after initial infection, individuals may experience no symptoms or an influenza-like illness including fever, headache, rash or sore throat.

At advanced immunodeificiency, patients are at a very high risk of being infected with less virulent organisms (opportunistic infections). Refer to **Table I** for a list of clinical conditions in the four WHO stages of HIV disease.

Investigations

- Demonstration of antibodies to HIV by Rapid test using the National HIV test algorisim
- HIV antigen detection
- Direct detection of the virus using PCR

Table 1: Clinical Stages of HIV Disease as per World Health Organization Classification

Clinical Stage 1

a) Asymptomatic infection

b) Persistent generalized lymphadenopathy

c) Acute Retroviral (HIV) Syndrome

Performace Status 1: asymptomatic, normal activity

Clinical Stage 2

a) Unintentional weight loss < 10% body weight

b) Minor mucocutaneous manifestations (e.g., PPE seborrhicdermatitis, prurigo, fungal nail infections, angular cheilitis)

C) Herpes zoster within previous 5 years

d) Recurrent upper respiratory tract infections

Performance Status 2: symptoms, but nearly fully ambulatory

Clinical Stage 3

a) Unintentional weight loss > 10% body weight

b) Chronic diarrhea > 1 month

c) Prolonged fever > 1 month (constant or intermittent)

d) Oral candidiasis

e) Oral hairy leukoplakia

f) Pulmonary tuberculosis within the previous 2 years

g) Severe bacterial infections

h) Vulvovaginal candidiasis

i) Unexplained Anemia, Neutropenia or chronic thrombocytopenia

Performance Status 3: in bed more than normal but < 50% of normal daytime during the previous month

Clinical Stage 4

a) HIV wasting syndrome

b) Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia

c) Toxoplasmosis of the brain

d) Crytosporidiosis with diarrhea > 1 month

e) Isosporiasis with diarrhea > 1 month

f) Cryptococcosis, extrapulmonary

g) Cytomegalovirus disease of an organ other than liver, spleen or lymph node

h) Herpes simplex virus infection, mucocutaneous

i) Progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy

j) Any disseminated endemic mycosis (e.g., histoplasmosis)

k) Candidiasis of the esophagus, trachea, bronchi, or lung

l) Atypical mycobacteriosis, disseminated

m) Non-typhoid Salmonella septicemia

n) Extrapulmonary tuberculosis

o) Lymphoma

p) Kaposi's sarcoma

q) HIV encephalopathy

r) Viseral Leishmaniasis

s) HIV –associated cardiomyopathy

t) HIV-associated nephropathy

Performance Status 4: in bed > 50% of normal daytime during previous month

Treatment

Objective

- Suppress viral replication to undetectable levels.
- Prevent opportunistic infections.
- Rehabiliate the patient and allow full function.

Non-pharmacologic

- Counseling and psychological support
- Nutritional support
- Socio-economic support

Pharmacologic

Management of HIV disease includes prevention and treatment of opportunistic infections (OIs) and controlling viral replication with Anti Retroviral Drugs (ARVDs) as Highly Active Antiretroviral Therapy (HAART).

Indications for initiation of ART

General Considerations for Anti-Retroviral Therapy (ART):

The goal of anti-retroviral therapy (ART) is to attain maximal and durable suppression of the viral replication. Effective ART should restore and/or preserve immunologic function. The effectiveness of ART is assessed by clinical observations, CD4 cell count and determination of plasma viral load. ART initiation should be timed appropriately and not delayed until the immune system is irreversibly damaged. Consideration to the stage of the HIV disease and the degree of immune damage determine the timing of initiation of ART.

For ART naïve patients, treatment is initiated with a combination of 3 drugs (**Triple Therapy**); consisting of two Nucleoside Reverse Transcriptase Inhibitors (NRTIs) and a third drug from the Non-Nucleoside Reverse Transcriptase Inhibitors (NNRTI) or Protease Inhibitors (PI).

When to start treatment

- All adolescents and adults with HIV infection with CD4 count ≤500cells/mm^3 should be started on HAART irrespective of WHO clinical stage.
- All adolescents and adults with HIV infection and WHO clinical stage 3 and 4 should be started on HAART irrespective of CD4 cell count.
- HIV infection and Active TB disease should be started on HAART irrespective of CD4 cell count
- Obtain CD4 cell count every six months for all patients with WHO stage 1 and 2 HIV infections until CD4 Count is < 500cells/mm3 to start ART.

Drug Regimens

First-line regimens for adults and adolescents (Table II)

First line regimen is the combination of ARVs started for treatment naive patient for the first time.

Table 2: Recommended first line antiretroviral regimens in adults and adolescents

One of the following should be used unless there are contraindications:
Prefered TDF+FTC+EFV = triple Fixed Drug Combination (FDC) ***Alternatives*** TDF/3TC/NVP ZDV+3TC+EFV= double FDC +EFV ZDV+3TC+NVP = triple FDC

Second-line ARV combination regimens for adults and adolescents (Table IV)

Second line regimen is the combination of ARVs given for a patient who has been taking ART and developed treatment failure, or severe side effects. All individuals who developed treatment failure or develop severe Adverse Drug Reaction and eligible for second line ARV treatment must be referred to hospitals for initiation of 2nd line treatment and follow-up.

Table 3. Dose regimens of anti-retroviral drugs for adults and adolescents [a]

Drug class/Drug	**Dose**
Nucleoside & Nucleotide RTl's	
Zidovudine (ZDV)	300 mg twice daily
Lamivudine (3TC)	150 mg twice daily
Didanosine (ddl)	400 mg once daily (250 mg once daily if < 60 kg)
Tenofovir(TDF) Emtricitabine(FTC)	300 mg daily 200 mg daily
Non-Nucleoside RTl's	
Efavirenz (EFZ)	600 mg once daily
Nevirapine (NVP)	200 mg once daily for 14 days, then 200 mg twice daily

a. These dosages are in common clinical use. The dosages featured in this table were selected based on the best available clinical evidence. Dosages that can be given on a once or twice daily basis were preferred in order to enhance adherence to therapy. The doses listed are those for individuals with normal renal and hepatic function. Product

specific information should be consulted for dose adjustments that may be indicated with renal or hepatic dysfunction or for potential drug interactions with other HIV and non-HIV medications.

Monitoring ARV Treatment

Treatment Adherence

- Patient and attendant or family education and counseling before initiation of therapy is mandatory to maximize future adherence
- Ongoing attention and counseling is crucial to enforce adherence throughout the entire course of treatment.
- Strategies to enhance adherence include:
    - Minimizing pill counts and dosage frequencies, preferentially using combination pills on a once or twice daily basis.
    - Enlisting the assistance of family or community members to support patients in taking their medications.
    - Tackling psychosocial issues that can contribute to low adherence to therapy.
- WHO recommends that innovative approaches to enhance adherence to ART be developed and used.
- It is advisable for patients on triple therapy to be seen:
    - Bi-monthly; particularly at the initiation of treatment. Once stabilized, patients may then be seen every three months.
    - At each visit, side effects and adherence to the treatment should be discussed in depth.

Baseline Clinical assessment:

- It should include the following:-
    - Documentation of past medical history (including major illnesses, tuberculosis, hospitalizations and surgeries)
    - Length of time since the diagnosis of HIV,
    - Current medications
    - Identification of co-existing medical conditions that may influence choice of therapy (such as TB or pregnancy)

- Current symptoms or physical signs

- This clinical assessment should be supplemented with review of the expected benefits and potential side-effects of regimen to be chosen, possible drug interactions (e.g. with contraceptives, ant-tuberculosis drugs), patient-caregiver partnership, commitment to long-term treatment and adherence to drug therapy, any perceived side-effects, and maintenance of safe sexual practices.
- **Once on ART**: first follow-up visit will be two weeks after initiation of treatment and every one to two months thereafter. The visits should be combined with drug dispensing, and should be used also as an opportunity to reinforce adherence. During each visit, patient should be evaluated for new symptoms that may be related to drug side effects, the disease progression, and clinical improvements/deterioration, development of OIs or recurrent problems that may exist.

Monitoring for toxicity of ART

Clinical monitoring for toxicity of ART

- All patients require clinical evaluation every month in the first 6 months for ARV related toxicity. Subsquent followup can be done every 3months.

Laboratory monitoring for toxicity of ART:

- **Baseline:** Hemoglobin/hematocrit, white blood cell count and differential, serum alanine aminotransferase, serum creatinine and/or blood urea nitrogen, serum glucose, pregnancy test. ***Resources permitting:*** serum bilirubin, amylase, triglycerides, and cholesterol.
- **Follow-up*:*** The above investigations need to be repeated bi-monthly, particularly at the start of treatment. Once stabilized, investigations may then be performed every three months and at any time when they are indicated.

Table 4: Major ADRs, contraindications and dosage forms of Antiretroviral drugs

Drug	Major ADRs	C/Is	Dosage forms
NRTIs/NTRTIs			
Zidovudine	Anemia, nausea, hperpigmentation	Severe anemia	Tablet, 150mh, 300mg; Capsule, 100mg,250mg; Syrup, 50mg/ml; I.V. infusion, 10mg/ml
Didanosine	Pancratitis, neuropathy		Tablet, 25mg, 150mg; chewable/dispersable, 100mg
Lamivudine	GI disturbances		Tablet, 150mg,; Oral solution, 100mg/ml
Tenofovir	GI disturbances		Tablet 300mg
NNRTIs			
Efavirenz	Skin rashes		Capsule Capsule 50mg, 100mg, 200mg
Nevirapine	Hepatitis, rash, fever, artraligia, myalgia		Tablet, 200mg; Oral suspension, 50mg/5ml
Fixed Dose Combinations			
Emitricitabine +Tenofovir	The combination of individual S/Is		
Efavirenz + Emitricitabine +Tenofovir	The combination of individual S/Is		Tablet, 600mg+200mg+300mg
Lamivudine+ Zidovudine+ Nevirapine	The combination of individual S/Is		Tablet, 150mg+300mg+200mg

Monitoring Effectiveness of ART

Response to ART is monitored using both clinical and laboratory parameters.

Laboratory parameters

a) The concentration of HIV - RNA in plasma (the "viral load")

- The desirable **"virologic" endpoint** is a plasma viral load that is: "below the limits of detection", within 3 to 4 months of starting treatment, and
- The achievement of a minimum decline from the baseline viral load of 1.5-2.0log by the end of the first month of treatment.
- The plasma viral load is checked at baseline then after one month of initiating therapy and two-monthly thereafter until the virologic goal of therapy is achieved. Following this, plasma viral load may be checked every 3 to 4 months.

N.B. In patients with higher baseline plasma viral loads (e.g. above 100,000 copies/ml by RT-PCR) maximal suppression of viral replication may take a longer time.

b) CD4+ cell count

- When optimal therapy is achieved, the median CD4+ cell rise is 50-100 cells within the first year.
- The CD4+ cell response may lag behind the "virologic response" in timing and at times the two responses may even be discordant.
- In general CD4+ count, is checked at baseline, thereafter it may be checked every 3 month in the 1st year every 6 month in the 2nd year and every 12 months
- In places where CD4+ count can not be done, total lymphocyte count can be used.

Clinical Parameters:

- An increase in body weight.
- Decrease in frequency and severity of OIs.
- Decrease in frequency and severity of HIV related malignancies.

Table 5: Definitions of treatment failure in adults and adolescents

	Definition
Clinical Failure [a]	New or recurrent WHO stage 4 condition [b c]
Immunologic Failure [d]	• Fall of CD4 count to pre-therapy baseline (or below); • 50% fall from the on-treatment peak value (if known); • Persistent CD4 levels below 100 cells/mm^3
Virological Failure	Plasma viral load above 5,000 copies/ml in duplicates after six months on ART

a. Should be differentiated from Immune Reconstitution Inflammatory Syndrome (IRIS).
b. Certain WHO clinical conditions (e.g. pulmonary TB, severe bacterial infections), may indicate treatment failure and should be investigated
c. Some WHO clinical stage 4 conditions (lymph node TB, uncomplicated TB pleural disease, oesophageal candidiasis, recurrent bacterial pneumonia) may not be indicators of treatment failure and thus do not require consideration of second-line therapy.
d. Without concomitant infection to cause transient CD4 cell decrease. If patient is asymptomatic and treatment failure is being defined by decreased CD4 cell criteria alone, consideration should be given to performing a repeat CD4 cell count before establishing diagnosis of treatment failure.

Post-exposure prophylaxis (PEP)

Universal precaution is the most effective way of protecting individuals from accidental transmission of HIV and other blood borne pathogens. Special atention should, therefore, be given to training health care givers on prevention methods and to provide them with necessary safe materials and protective equipment**.**

Assessment of risk of exposure

Low risk exposure:

- Exposure to a small volume of blood or blood contaminated with fluids from asymptomatic HIV positive patients.
- Following an injury with a solid needle.
- Any superficial injury or muco-cutaneous exposure.

High risk exposure

- Exposure to a large volume of blood or other potentially infectious fluid.
- Exposure to a large volume of blood or blood contaminated with fluids from a patient with clinical AIDS or early sero-conversion phase of HIV.
- Injury with a hollow needle
- Deep and extensive injuries.

Timing of initiation of treatment:

- Should be given in the shortest time possible (within the first 1-4 hours of exposure)
- Do not consider PEP beyond **72hours.**

Doses for post exposure prophylaxis are given in Table 6.

Table 6: Post exposure prophylaxis

Risk Category	**ARV Prophylaxis**	**Duration**
Low risk (2 drug regimen)	ZDV 300 mg bid + 3TC 150 mg bid or ZDV + 3TC 1 tab bid	For 28 days
High risk (3 drug regimen)	ZDV 300 mg bid +3TC 150 mg bid + EFZ600 mg daily	For 28 days

2. Amebiasis

Amoebiasis results from infection with the non-invasive Entamoeba dispar or the invasive Entamoeba histolytica, and is the third most common cause of death from parasitic disease. It is most commonly contracted through ingestion of live cysts found with faecally contaminated water, food, or hands. Foodborne infection is caused by faecally contaminated soil or water used for growing vegetables. It is endemic in most developing countries including Ethiopia.

Clinical features

- Gradual development of lower abdominal pain and mild diarrhoea.
- Malaise, weight loss, and diffuse lower abdominal or back pain.
- If caecum is involved, signs and symptoms will mimic those of appendicitis (right lower quadrant pain).
- Full dysentery develops in some patients with passage of 10–12 stools per day.
- Stools are mostly blood and mucoid.

Complications or unusual presentations: amoebic liver abscess, amoebic colitis can be confused with inflammatory bowel disease, and amoeboma (tender abdominal mass).

Investigations

- Stool examination: Fresh stools specimens must be examined for trophozoites typical of *E. hemolytica*. Cysts of both entamoeba species
- (Entamoeba dispar or the invasive Entamoeba histolytica) are very similar therefore trophozoites that have ingested red blood cells are diagnostic of E. hemolytica.

Treatment

Objectives

- Eradicate the invasive disease and subsequently to eradicate cysts to prevent relapses.

Non pharmacologic

- Hydration is impotant in patients who have severe dysentry

Pharmacologic

Treatment of invasive disease:

First line

Metronidazole, 500 - 750 mg p.o. TID for 5-7 days. For children: 7.5 mg/kg P.O. TID for 5 -7 days.

ADRs: unpleasant metallic test, furred tongue and gastrointestinal disturbances; rarely headache, drowsiness, dizziness

C/Is: chronic alcohol dependence

P/Cs: disulfiram like reaction with alcohol; hepatic impairment and hepatic encephalopathy, pregnancy; breastfeeding

D/Is: phenytoin, cumarine or indandion derivative anticoagulant, warfarin, disulfiram, alcohol

Dosage forms: Tablet, 250mg , Intravenous infusion, 5mg/ml in 100ml Cream, 0.75%, 1%

Alternative

Tinidazole, 2g p.o. QD for 3 consecutive days. For children: 50-60 mg/kg daily for 3 days. (For ADRs, C/Is, P/Cs and D/Is, see under Metronidazole)

Dosage forms: Tablet, 250mg, 500mg

Eradication of cysts: intestinal colonization persists in approximately 50% of individuals who receive nitroimidazoles (Metronidazole and Tinidazole), and relapse of infection can occur months later.

Eradication of cysts is recommended:

- The likelyhood of reinfection is low (e.g. Patients from non-endemic area)
- There is recurrent amebiasis despite previous effective treatment and preventative mesures against reinfections

First line

Diloxanide Furoate, Adult 500mg 3 times daily p.o. for 10 days. Child over 25 kg, 20mg/kg daily in 3 divided doses for 10 days; course may be repeated if necessary.

ADRs: flatulence, vomiting, urticaria, pruritus

Dosage forms: Tablet, 500mg

Alternative

Paromomycin, 25–35 mg/kg/day p.o. divided in 3 daily doses for 7 days

3. Amebic Liver Abscess

Amoebic liver abscess is caused by an often delayed extra-intestinal infection by E. histolytica. It is the most common extra-intestinal manifestations of amebiasis. It is 7 to 10 times more common in adult men

Clinical features

- In symptomatic patients, fever and right upper quadrant pain are the usual manifestations.
- Point tenderness over the liver with or without right side pleural effusion is also common. Amoebic liver abscess is not usually associated with diarrhoea (although the source is always the colon).
- In endemic areas, the course is often subacute with hepatomegaly and weight loss. Ten to fifteen percent of patients with amoebic liver abscess present with only fever.
- It may be complicated by pleuro-pulmonary involvement when the abscess extends from the liver into the lung area.

Patients suspected of having amebic liver abscess should be urgently refered to hospital for further investigation and treatment.

4. Anthrax

Anthrax is an infection caused by a bacterium called *B. anthracis*, gram-positive, rod-shaped bacteria that exists in the environment as a spore and can remain viable in the soil for decades. Spores ingested by grazing herbivores germinate within the animal to produce the virulent vegetative forms that replicate and eventually kill the host. Products (e.g., meat or hides) from infected animals serve as a reservoir for human disease. Germination from spore to vegetative organism is thought to occur inside host macrophages and after germination occurs, three factors appear key to the pathogenesis of anthrax: a capsule, the production of two toxins (i.e., lethal and edema), and the bacteria's ability to achieve high concentrations in infected hosts.

Anthrax was known to typically occur as one of three syndromes related to entry site of (i.e., cutaneous, gastrointestinal, or inhalational). The estimated mortalities of cutaneous,

gastrointestinal, and inhalational, anthrax are 1%, 25 to 60%, and 46%. Ninety-five percent of reported anthrax cases globally are cutaneous, and most occur in developing countries around the world where animal and worker vaccination is limited. It is estimated that there are approximately 2,000 cases annually worldwide.

Characteristics of anthrax in Ethiopia include a known exposure to diseased animals, occurrence within families, frequent treatment by local healers, and high morbidity and mortality. Because of its potential to be used as biologic weapon and the associated high fatality with gastrointestinal and inhalational anthrax, it is a reportable disease.

Clinical features

- The initial skin lesion is a painless or pruritic papule associated with a disproportionate amount of edema and which progresses to a vesicular form (1–2 cm).
- Fever and regional lymphadenopathy can occur.
- The vesicle then ruptures and forms an ulcer and black scar, which sloughs in 2 to 3 weeks.
- Purulence is only seen with secondary non anthrax infection. Edema with face or neck **infection may produce airway compromise.**

Refer suspected patient to hospital.

5. Bacillary Dysentry

Bacillary dysentery is diarrheal disease caused by bacteria, which invade and destroy the intestinal epithelium. It is often caused by Shigella spp. Other less important causes are Campylobacter species, non-typhoidal Salmonella species and entero-invasive Escherichia coli. Transmission occurs via contaminated water or food.

Clinical features

- Common clinical manifestations include severe abdominal cramps, fever, watery, mucoid or bloody diarrhea with tensmus.

Investigations

- Direct stool examination which mostly reveals abundance of leukocytes (pus cells)
- Stool culture

Treatment

Objective

- Prevent dehydration
- Replace lost fluid
- Eradicate the infecting organism

Supportive treatment

Correct dehydration with **ORS** or IV fluids

Relieve pain and fever if necessary

(For the **analgesic/antipyretic,** and its **dosage schedule, ADRs, C/Is** and **Dosage forms,** see under paracetamol)

Pharmacologic

First line

Ciprofloxacin, 500 mg P.O. BID for 3-5days.

(For ADRs, C/Is, P/Cs, D/Is and dosage forms, see page 354)

Alternatives

Sulfamethoxazole+trimethoprim, 800 mg/160 mg P.O. BID for 5-7 days. For children 6 weeks – 5 months; 100/20 mg; 6 months – 5 yrs, 200/40 mg; 6 – 12 yrs, 400/80 mg BID.

ADRs: hypersensitivity, photosensitivity, blood disorders, peeling of the skin, GIT disturbance

C/Is: infants up to two months of age, hypersensitivity

P/Cs: elderly, renal and hepatic function impairment, photosensitivity, Glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency, predisposition to folate deficiency; asthma; pregnancy; breastfeeding

D/Ic: oral hypoglycemics, oral anticoagulants, penytoin, methotrexate, folate antagonists.

Dosage forms: Tablet (pediatric), 100mg + 20mg; (adult), 400mg + 80mg, 800mg+160mg, Mixture, 200mg + 40mg in each 5ml, Injection, 400mg + 80mg in each 5ml ampoule

N.B. Avoid in blood disorders and discontinue immediately if blood disorder develops, adequate fluid intake to avoid crystalluria, monitor blood counts; rash – discontinue immediately;

OR

Ceftriaxone, 1-2g stat or 2 divided doses IM or slow IV. For children: 20-50 mg/kg/day as a single dose or 2 divided doses IM or slow IV.

ADRs: GI disturbances, headache, colitis, allergic reactions, transient hepatitis and cholestatic jaundice, blood disorders, reversible nephritis, rarely prolongation of prothrombin time, pancreatitis.

C/Is: cephalosporin hypersensitivity, porphyria, neonates with jaundice, hypoalbuminaemia, acidosis or impaired bilirubin binding.

P/Cs: penicillin sensitivity; renal and hepatic impairment, pregnancy and breast feeding,

D/Is: furosemide and warfarin. Do not admix with aminoglycosides in same bottle/bag

Dosage forms: Injection, 0.25g, 0.5 g, 1 g, 2 g in vial

N.B. As it precipitates in urine or in gall bladder, consider discontinuation if symptomatic Antidiarrheals are best avoided in the treatment of patients with bacillary dysentery as they may slow the clearance of the organisms and may increase the risk of toxic megacolon.)

6. Brucellosis

Brucellosis is a zoonotic infection caused by different species of the gram negative bacteria, *Brucella species. B. melitensis* is the most virulent and invasive. Transmission to humans occurs through direct contact, through broken skin, with infected animal tissue, inhalation of infectious aerosols, or ingestion of infectious milk or dairy products. Brucellosis is predominantly an occupational disease. Sporadic cases and sometimes large outbreaks occur after consumption of raw milk and milk products. Animals involved are cows, sheep, goats, swine, and occasionally dogs. Brucellosis is endemic in Ethiopia and the Mediterranean countries, North and East Africa, the Middle East, South and Central Asia, and South and Central America. Brucellosis is often unrecognized and frequently unreported.

Clinical features

- Brucellosis has a long incubation period of 1-8 weeks and the most common symptoms are prolonged fever classically referred to as ’undulating’ fever, chronic fatigue and arthralgia.
- Osteomyelitis of the vertebrae is commonly seen.

- Mortality, though rare, is due to neurologic complications (e.g.meningoencephalitis) or infective endocarditis.

Refer suspected patient to hospital.

7. Candidiasis

Candidiasis is a disease caused by fungi of *Candida species*. The most common causative agent is *C.albicans.* These fungi are parts of the normal human flora and found in the mouth, vagina, and gastrointestinal tract. Candidiasis can be limited to mucous membranes or can occasionally spread through the blood or be deeply invasive. Predisposing factors that can lead to infection are: wide-spectrum antibiotic use, Diabetes Mellitus, HIV, Pregnancy, skin maceration, or a break in the natural skin or mucosal barrier.

Clinical features

Oral candidiasis:

- Difficulty with swallowing and white deposits that adhere to the mucosa in the mouth. Persistent oral candida in an HIV patient is a WHO stage 3 condition

Skin infection:

- Red macerated skin if infection occurs in skin folds under breasts or around the anus; usually associated with itching.

Vaginal candidiasis:

- White itchy discharge; sometimes associated with pain on urination.

Oesophageal candidiasis:

- This can be asymptomatic but is often associated with chest pain and difficulty swallowing.
- Oesophageal candidiasis (and candida of trachea, bronchi, or lungs) in an HIV infected patient is a WHO stage 4 condition

Diseminated Candida/ Invasive disease:

- Fungemia can occur mainly through infection of intravenous devices or urinary catheters and can spread throughout the whole body.
- There are a few organs that are very prone to be invaded after bloodstream infections.
- These are the eyes, causing blurred vision and showing white cotton ball lesions on fundoscopy, and the liver and spleen, particularly in patients recovering from very low WBC. These situations require specific treatment

Investigations

- Mostly the diagnosis can be made clinically but a wet smear can identify the fungus with pseudo-hyphae (branching structures).

Treatment

Objectives

- Depend on the site of infection from symptom control to eradication of the organism from the site.

Approaches to management depend on the location and the severity of the infection.

Oral candidiasis:

First line

Miconazole oral gel, 60 mg 4 times daily for 7 days.

ADRs: GI disturbances; allergic reactions

C/Is: hepatic impairment

P/Cs: pregnancy and breast feeding; avoid in porphyria, Monitor haematocrit, haemoglobin and serum electrolytes and lipids

D/Is: oral anticoagulants, sulphonylurea hypoglycaemic drugs, phenytoin; amphotericin

Dosage forms*:* Tablet, 250 mg; Oral Gel, 25mg /ml; Intravenous infusion, 10 mg/ml in 20 ml

Alternatives

Nystatin, Adult: one tablet 500 000 IU 4 times daily; tablets should be sucked and retained in the mouth for as long as possible; therapy should be continued for at least 48 hours after symptoms have resolved

Child: 100,000 units 4 times daily prophylaxis, 1 million units once daily. **Neonate**: 100,000 units once daily.

ADRs: GI disturbances; Steven Johnson syndrome, irritation.

Dosage forms: Tablet, 500,000IU; Oral suspension, 100,000 units/ml

OR

Clotrimazole troche, (dissolving tablet) p.o.twice daily for 7 days;

ADRs: local irritation, hypersensitivity reactions

C/Is: Known hypersensitivity reactions

P/Cs: Pregnancy, contact with eyes and mucous membranes should be avoided.

D/I: Benzodiazepines, calcium channel blockers, ergot derivatives, mesoridazole, mirtazapine, nateglinide, nefazodone, pimozide, quinidine, thioridazine

Dosage form*s:* Powder, 1%; Mouth paint, 1%

OR

Fluconazole, 100 to 200 mg p.o. for 7 to 14days for recurrent oral candidiasis

ADRs: GI disturbances, headache, rash, abnormalities of liver enzymes, angioedema, dizziness, seizures

C/Is: hypersensitivity to other azole antifungals

P/C: renal or hepatic impairment.

D/Is: Rifampicin, hydrochlorthiazide, phenytoin, sulphonylureas, hypoglycemic agents, nortriptyline, and zidovudine, terfenadine, oral anticoagulants and theophylline.

Dosage forms: Capsule/tablet, 50mg, 100mg, and 200mg;

Oral Suspension, 50mg /5ml, 200mg /5ml

Skin infection: Use measures to reduce wetness or moisture and decrease friction. If needed topical application of an antifungal cream such as nystatin, cotrimazole, terbinafine, or miconazole cream for 5 to 7 days is effective.

Vaginal (see Section in STIs)

Oesophageal candidiasis:

Fluconazole, 100 mg or 200 mg p.o. daily for 14 to 21 days;

OR

Ketoconazole, 200 to 400 mg p.o.daily if fluconazole is not available, until remission is obtained

ADRs: gastro intestinal disturbance, gynaecomastia, impotence, menstural Irregularities, hepatotoxicity

C/Is: pre-existing liver disease, pregnancy; hypersensitivity to azole antifungals

P/Cs: breast-feeding, pediatrics and geriatrics patients, alchlorhydria, hypochlorhydria, alcoholism, renal function impairment

D/Is: antimuscarinic agents, antacids, H_2 - receptors antagonists; rifampicin, isoniazid, phenytoin, astemizole, terfenadine, corticosteroids, oral anticoagulants, alcohol, oral contraceptives, tolbutamide, didanosine, digoxin, indinavir, nevirapine.

Dosage forms*:* Tablet, 200mg; Syrup, 20mg /5ml

N.B. When administered with lopinavir/r, the dose of ketoconazole should not exceed 200 mg daily.

8. Cholera

Cholera is an acute diarrheal disease that can cause severe dehydration and death in a few hours. It is caused by *Vibrio cholera* and often occurs as epidemics under conditions of poor hygiene.

Clinical features

- Sudden onset of explosive diarrhoea is the hallmark of the disease.
- The diarrhoea is classically voluminous, non-offensive, and somewhat looks gray or "rice water". Fever is absent.

Investigations

- It is often diagnosed based on clinical grounds.
- If possible stool culture.

Treatment

Objectives

- Replace volume deficit and ongoing losses
- Decrease duration of diarrhea

Prevention: The promotion of adequate hygienic conditions in the community is important to prevent an outbreak and spread of the disease.

Non pharmacologic

- Advise patients to take fluid.
- Symptomatic/Supportive Treatment

For dehydration in mild cases give ORS, PRN; for children: < 2yrs: 50-100ml; 2-10 years: 100-200ml after each loose stool. For severe cases Ringer lactate IV infusion (alternatively Normal Saline) should be given 50 - 100 ml/min until shock is reversed; thereafter, according to fluid loss. KCl solution 20 - 40 mmol/litre may be added as required.

In the absence of IV infusion aggressive rehydration with ORS is vital.

Pharmacologic

First line

Doxycycline, 100 mg, P.O. BID for 3 days. For children: 6mg/kg daily for 3 days.

(For ADRs, C/Is, P/Cs, D/Is and dosage forms, see page 125)

Alternatives

Tetracycline, 500mg P.O. QID for 3-5 days.

(For ADRs, C/Is, P/Cs, D/Is and dosage forms, see page 188)

OR

Sulfamethoxazole+trimethoprim, 800 mg/160 mg P.O. BID for 5 days

For children 6 weeks – 5 months: 100/20 mg; 6 months – 5 yrs: 200/40 mg; 6 – 12 yrs: 400/80 mg BID for 5 days.

(For ADRs, C/Is, P/Cs, D/Is and dosage forms, see page 85)

OR

Ciprofloxacin, 500 mg PO BID, for 3-5 days

(For ADRs, C/Is, P/Cs, D/Is and dosage forms, see page 354)

9. Cryptococcal Infections

This infection is most commonly caused by a fungus called *Cryptococcus neoformans*, particularly in HIV-positive patients with advanced immunodeficiency (CD4 cell count generally <100/mm3). However, patients who have been on long-term steroid therapy, as well as other immunosuppressive drugs, are also at risk. Typically, infection is acquired by inhalation of the fungus into the lungs. Cryptococcus is found in most areas with a relatively warm climate, and is not restricted to the tropics.

Cryptococcal meningitis or meningo-encephalitis is the most common presentation in HIV-positive patients, and is associated with a universal mortality without treatment. Non-meningeal presentations of cryptococcosis include pneumonia, skin lesions, and lymphadenitis.

Clinical features

Sub-acute meningitis:

- Headache increasing over days to weeks, fever, photophobia, nausea, seizures, confusion, irritability, blurred vision, sixth cranial nerve palsy, papilloedema on retinal exam are common.
- Nuchal rigidity is often not marked. Coma or a reduced level of consciousness is associated with a poor prognosis.

Lung infections:

- Chest pain and cough in a minority of patients, but often no fever.

Skin lesions:

- Disseminated disease is associated with papular lesions with an umbilicated, centrally depressed area (similar appearance to molluscum contagiosum), which can become ulcerated.

Complications

- Intracranial pressure can become raised (increasing headache, vomiting,cranial nerve palsy). Hydrocephalus, blindness, dementia, and personality change can occur as permanent sequelae.
- Cryptococcomas can develop in the brain, more commonly in patients who are not immunocompromised. Coma, cerebral oedema, and death follow if it is untreated, usually due to elevated intracranial pressure.

Investigations

CSF examination:

- Opening pressure, cell count, glucose & protein.
- Tests to detect the organism with India Ink, antigen tests or culture.

Serology for cryptococcal antigens

Treatment

Objectives

- Suppress fungal growth
- Prevent squeal related to increased intracranial pressure

In patients suspected for cryptococcal meningitis, referral to a hospital for further investigation and management is important.

10. Giardiasis

Giardia lamblia is a ubiquitous gastrointestinal protozoa that results in clinical pictures ranging from asymptomatic colonization to acute or chronic diarrheal illness. It can occur both sporadically and in epidemics. *Giardia lamblia* infects humans through ingestion of as few as 10 cysts. The infection is more prevalent in children than adults. Asymptomatic infection occurs in approximately 60 % of people exposed to Giardia. The most common presentation is diarrhea which is foul-smelling with fatty stools (steatorrhea), flatulece, weight loss, crampy abdominal pain with bloating and failure to thrive.

Clinical features

- Abdominal cramps, bloating and diarrhea.

Investigations

- Established by identifying *Giardia lamblia* trophozoite or cyst from fecal or duodenal samples.

Treatment

Objectives

- Prevent and treat dehydration
- Stop diarrhea as promptly as possible

Drug Treatment

First Lline

Tinidazole, single oral dose of 2 g. For children, 50-75 mg/kg as a single dose (may be repeated once if necessary). (For ADRs, C/Is, P/Cs, D/Is and dosage forms, see page 82)

Alternative

Metronidazole, 250 -500 mg P.O. TID for five days

(For ADRs, C/Is, P/Cs, D/Is and dosage forms, see page 82)

11. Intestinal Parasitic Infestations

These are infections caused by intestinal worms (nematodes and cestodes), which are commonly associated with poor personal and environmental hygiene. Although they may not be fatal, they contribute to malnutrition and diminished work capacity.

Clinical features

- Include abdominal cramps, nausea, bloating, anorexia, Anemia, passage of adult worms

Investigations

- Mainly by direct stool microscopy

Treatment

Objectives

- Reduce symptoms
- Break the cycle of transmission

Non pharmacologic

- Personal hygene

Pharmacologic (See table 7)

Table 7. Treatment of common intestinal helminthic parasitic infestations

NAME OF INFECTION ETIOLOGY; MODE OF TRANSMISSION	TREATMENT	REMARK
Ascariasis ***Ascaris lambricoids*** Ingestion of the larvae of the parasite together with food	**First line- options** **Albendazole,** 400 mg P.O. as a single dose, for children: 1 – 2 years, 200 mg as a single dose. **Mebendazole,** 100 mg P.O.BID for 3 days or 500mg, once **Alternative (pregnant ladies)** **Pyrantel pamoate**, 700 mg P.O. as a single dose	Presence of migrating larvae in the lungs can provoke pneumonia
Enterobiasis ***Enterobius Vermicularis*** Ingestion of the eggs of the parasite together with food	**First line- options** **Mebendazole,** 100 mg P.O. BID for 3 days OR **Albendazole,** 400 mg P.O. as a single dose, Alternative **Piperazine,** 4 g in a single dose.	Common in children and auto infection may occur
Hookworm infestation ***Necator americanus or Ancylostoma duodenale*** Penetration of the larvae of the parasite through skin	**First line**- options **Mebendazole,** 100 mg P.O. BID for 3 days or 500mg stat OR **Albendazole,** 400 mg P.O. as a single dose mg as a single dose. **Alternatives:** **Pyrantel pamoate,**, 700 mg P.O. as a single dose	
Strongyloidiasis ***Strongloidexs stercolaries*** Penetration of the larvae of the parasite through skin	**First line** **Ivermectin,** 200 mg/kg daily for 2 days. For disseminated strongyloidiasis, treatment with ivermectin should be extended for at least 5–7 days or until the parasites are eradicated. **Alternatives-** options **Albendazol**e, 400 mg P.O.BID for three consecutive days. OR **Thiabendazole,** 1500 mg, P.O. BID, for children: 25 mg/kg p.o. for three consecutive days.	Larvae migrate to the lungs where they cause tissue destruction and bleeding. Treat concomitant anemia if any
Trichuriasis ***T.tricura***	**First line- options** **Mebendazole**, 500 mg P.O., single dose OR **Albendazole,** 400 mg ,P.O. for three days	Heavy infestation leads to bloody diarrhea, bleeding and weakness
Taeniasis ***T.saginata*** ***T.solium***	**First line- Intestinal infestation** **Praziquantel** P.O. 600mg or 10mg/Kg, single dose **Alternative** **Niclosamide,** 2 g in a single dose P.O. **Treatment ofneurocysticercosis** **- Albendazole** P.O. 15 mg/kg per day for 8–28 days **or** **Praziquantel** 50–100 mg/kg daily in three divided doses for 15–30 days**.** Longer courses are often needed in patients with multiple subarachnoid cysticerci **PLUS** - High-dose glucocorticoids - Anti epleptics(if there is seizure)	*T. solium* (pork tapeworm) may cause fatal cysticercosis

Hymenolepis nana	**First line** **Praziquantel**, 25mg/kg or 1800 mg P.O. single dose **Alternatives** **Niclosamide,** 2 g P.O. on the first day followed by 1g QD for 6 days	

12. Filariasis, Lymphatic (Elephantiasis)

The term filariasis refers generally to disease caused by the lymphatic-dwelling filarial worms *Wucheria bancrofti, Brugia malayi, and Brugia timori*. *Wuchereria bancrofti* is the most common cause of lymohatic flariasis in the Tropics including Ethiopia. The infection is transmitted by mosquitoes. Filarial parasites exhibit a daily periodicity in the concentration of microfilariae in the peripheral blood of the host. They have a nocturnal or diurnal periodicity. This diseases should be differentiated with podoconiosis ("non-filarial elephanthiasis") a non-communicale diseases which is common in some areas of Ethiopia.

Clinical Features

Progressive filariasis: In progressive filariasis, the clinical features depend on the clinical stage.

1) **Asymptomatic amicrofilariaemic stage: No clinical symptom**
2) **Asymptomatic microfilariaemic stage: No clinical symptoms but microfilariae detectable.**
3) **Stage of acute manifestations:**

   In the initial months and years following infection, patients may have recurrent episodes of acute inflammation in the lymph nodes or vessels of the limb and scrotum.These are generally related to bacterial and fungal superinfections of tissue compromised by reduced lymphatic function. Clinical manifestations: Filarial fever (ADL-DLA)

   - Acute adenolymphangitis (ADL): high fever, lymphatic enlargement in the area where the adult worm resides, transient local oedema, tenderness and redness of overlying skin. Ulceration can occur.
   - Dermatolymphangioadenitis (DLA): high fever, chills, muscle aches, and headache with inflammatory skin changes in the area of infection.
   - Lymphangitis,
   - Lymphadenitis
   - Epididimo-orchitis

4) **Stage of obstructive (chronic) lesions:**

These take 5–15 years to develop. They result from permanent damage to lymph vessels by the adult worms. Recurrent inflammatory reactions to the worms cause dilation of the lymph vessels, which results in oedema. In clinical surveys, leg lymphoedemas are commonly classified as grade I: pitting lymphoedema spontaneously reversible on elevation; grade II: non-pitting lymphoedema, loss of skin elasticity; and grade III: evident elephantiasis with skin folds and papules. A more detailed classification with stages of lymphoedema are outlined below.

Table 8: Stages of lymphoedema:

	Swelling	**Skin folds**	**Apearance**
Stage I	Reversible at night	Absent	Smooth, normal
Stage II	Not reversible at night	Absent	Smooth, normal
Stage III	Not reversible at night	Shallow	Smooth, normal
Stage IV	Not reversible at night	Shallow	Irregular, occasional knobs or nodules
Stage V	Not reversible at night	Deep	Smooth or irregular
Stage VI	Not reversible at night	Shallow or deep	Wart-like lesions on foot or toes
Stage VII	Not reversible at night	Deep	Irregular ;needs help with daily activities; dependent

Occult or cryptic filariasis, presenting as tropical pulmonary eosinophilic (TPE) syndrome:

Occult filariasis results from hyperresponsiveness to filarial antigens. It occurs more commonly in males and the classic manifestations are: paroxysmal cough and wheeze, scanty sputum, occasional haemoptysis, adenopathy, chronic interstitial lung disease, recurrent low-grade fever, and weight loss.

Investigations

- CBC: extremely high eosinophil count.
- Blood film to demonstrate the organisms.
- Immuno-chromatographic (card) test to demonstrate filarial antigens.
- Diethylcarbamazine (DEC) provocative test (2 mg/kg). After taking DEC, microfilariae enter the peripheral blood within 15 minutes
- Diagnosis is clinical in late disease

Treatment Objectives

- Eradicate the filaria.
- Prevent complications**.**

Non pharmacologic

1) Supportive treatment and prevention of acute ADL attacks:
   - hydration and rest
   - antipyretics and analgesics.
2) Treatment and prevention of lymphoedema:

   Hygiene measures for the affected limb:
   - wash twice daily with soap and clean water and dry well
   - keep nails short and clean
   - elevate the affected limb at night
   - wear comfortable footwear
   - Prevent and treat entry lesions.
   - Frequent exercise of the affected limb to promote lymph flow:
     - Standing on toes, flexing and circling ankles while sitting.
   - Use of antibiotic or antifungal agents:
     - antiseptic, antibiotic, and antifungal creams for small wounds and abrasions
     - systemic antibiotics or antifungals in severe cases
   - Surgical treatment of hydrocele.

Pharmacologic

Recommended regimen for lymphatic filariasis in clinical settings:

Diethylcarbamazine citrate (DEC), 6 mg/kg p.o.daily for 12 days

OR

Diethylcarbamazine citrate, 6 mg/kgp p.o. plus **albendazole** 400 mg p.o. as single dose

NB: DEC should not be used in patients with onchocerciasis, due to possible severe adverse reactions. Patients should be examined for co-infection before using DEC. In co-infected patients, the following alternative regimen should be used:

Ivermectin, 200-400 micrograms/kg p.o.plus **albendazole** 400 mg p.o. as single dose

NB: Ivermectin should not be used in patients with loiasis.

Recommended regimen for lymphatic filariasis in public health interventions:

Current public health strategies for lymphatic filariasis elimination rely on preventive chemotherapy with the aim of interrupting transmission of the infection. WHO currently recommends mass drug administration as an annual single dose of DEC 6 mg/kg plus albendazole 400 mg, yearly for 4-6 years in areas where onchocerciasis is not co-endemic with filariasis.

In areas where onchocerciasis is present but loiasis is absent, an annual single dose of ivermectin 200-400 micrograms/kg plus albendazole 400 mg, yearly for 4-6years, is recommended.

13. Leishmaniasis

Leishmaniasis is a zoonotic disease caused by protozoa, which belong to the genus *Leishmania*. Mode of transmission is by the bite of phlebotomites (sand flies) from animals to humans. It has two major clinical forms: **cutaneous** and **visceral leishmaniasis.**

Cutaneous Leishmaniasis

This form is characterized by the development of single or multiple firm, erythematouos papules which occur on the exposed parts of the body. The papules may ulcerate later in the course of the illness.

Post kala-azar Dermal Leishmaniasis (PKDL)

VL due to *L. donovani* occurs with a post treatment complication called PKDL. PKDL is characterized by the occurrence of painless skin lesions relatively common towards the end of treatment (more common in Sudan with about 50% of the cases) or shortly *after treatment*. PKDL is rare in Ethiopian VL patients but it is relatively common in *Leishmania*/ HIV co-infection. PKDL patients harbor Leishmania parasites in the skin lesions and these can be potential sources of infection and disease transmission. Patients should be advised to seek medical attention and use impregnated bed nets if they develop skin rash following treatment. Depending on the severity of the lesion, PKDL can be graded which will facilitate treatment decisions.

Occasionally, PKDL may occur prior to the VL (Pre-*kala azar* dermal Leishmaniasis) or concomitantly (para-*kala azar* dermal Leishmaniasis) to the active VL disease.

Visceral Leishmaniasis (Kalazar)

The two *Leishmania* species usually considered as responsible for VL are *L. donovani* and *L. infantum.* The commonest species causing Visceral leishmanisasis in Ethiopia *is L. donovani.*

The epidemiology of visceral leishmaniasis in Ethiopia is closely related to travel history to the North, North west and south west parts of the country particularly areas closer to the Ethio-Sudanese border. The disease is more prevalent in males and HIV infected adults.

Clinical features

- Its cardinal manifestations include fever, marked weight loss, splenomegally and features of pancytopenia.

Investigations

Diagnosis is established by the clinical presentation in endemic areas and the demonstration of the organisms in smears.

a) **Non-Leishmanial Tests** - CBC- pancytopenia is a very common finding in VL patients.
b) **Parasite Detection -** Visualization of the amastigote form of the parasite by microscopic examination of aspirates from lymph nodes, bone marrow or spleen aspiration.
   *Culture improves the detection of the parasites. However, this technique remains restricted to referral hospitals or research centers.
c) **Antibody Detection -** DAT and rK39 have been extensively evaluated and used for the diagnosis of VL in the field and in laboratory settings.
d) **Antigen Detection Test -** It is more specific than the antibody-based immunodiagnostic test. Evaluation of the performance of a urine latex agglutination (KATEX) at the Indian subcontinent and East Africa has shown that this test has a good specificity but only a low to moderate sensitivity.
e) **Molecular Techniques -** Compared to the other diagnostic techniques available, the molecular approaches remain expensive and technically highly demanding. Their applicability in the endemic areas is highly questionable.

Treatment

Objectives

- Reduce the parasite burden,
- Prevent drug resistance,

- Avoid toxic drug effects, and
- Improve the clinical condition of patients and to manage complications (anemia, malnutrition and secondary infections)

Currently, because of the complexity in the diagnosis and treatment of the disease, such care should be given at a hospital level where appropriate diagnostic procedures, diagnostic facilities drugs for treatment are available. Refer patients to such centers!!!

14. Leprosy (Hansen's disease)

Leprosy is a chronic infectious disease mainly affecting the skin and peripheral nerves, although other tissues, such as the eye, mucosa of the upper respiratory tract, joints and testis can also be involved. Leprosy is considered to be transmitted from person to person through the nasal mucosa from droplet infection from untreated leprosy patient to individuals living in the same household and/or in frequent contact with the index case. The disease has a long incubation period, averaging 3 to 5 years, occurring usually in people in the age group between 15 and 45 years. If not properly treated, leprosy can cause severe disability, mainly as a result of peripheral nerve damage. Among communicable diseases, leprosy is the leading cause of permanent physical disability. It is caused by *Mycobaterium leprae.*

Clinical features

The earliest clinically detectable lesion usually occurs in the skin

Patients may present with a history of any of the following complaints:

- Pale or reddish patches on the skin with loss of, or decreased sensation on the skin
- Painless swelling or lumps on the face and earlobes
- Numbness or tingling of the hands and/or the feet
- Weakness of eyelids, hands or feet
- Difficulty of closing the eyes
- Burning sensation in the skin
- Dryness of he palms

- Skin cracks on palms and soles with sensation loss
- Painless wounds or burns on the hands or feet
- Decreased vision
- History of close contact with a leprosy patient

The most common & early symptom of Leprosy is pale or reddish discoloration of the skin.

On physical examination, any of the following signs may exist

- Hypo-pigmented or erythematous skin lesions
- Loss of, or decreased sensation on the skin patches when touched with a wisp of cotton
- Enlarged/thickned peripheral nerves
- Painful and/or tender nerves on palpation
- Loss of muscle strength or paralysis of muscles of the eyes, hands and feet
- Sensory loss on the soles of he feet and/or palm of the hands when examined with ball point pain
- Corneal anesthesia with loss of corneal reflex
- Cracks on palms and soles with sensation loss.
- Wounds, ulcer on palms and soles with sensation loss.
- Clawed fingers and toes.
- Foot drop.
- Wrist drop.
- Shortening and scarring of fingers and toes

Investigations

- Skin slit smear microscopy

Leprosy cases can be diagnosed on clinical grounds. Laboratory investigation is indicated for confirmation in doubtful cases. Diagnosis of leprosy is confirmed when one of the three cardinal signs of leprosy present.

The **cardinal signs** of leprosy are:

1. Definite loss of sensation in a pale (hypo-pigmented) or reddish skin lesion.

2. Thickened or enlarged peripheral nerve/s with or without tenderness
3. Presence of the acid-fast bacilli *Mycobacterium leprae* in slit skin smears from skin lesions.

Presence of one or more of the three cardinal signs of Leprosy is a definite diagnosis or confirmation of a leprosy case.

A case of leprosy is classified as multi-bacilary or pauci-bacilary leprosy depending on the number of skin lesion and/or skin smear microscopy result.

1) **Multibacillary Leprosy**:

- Usually presents with multiple (>5) poorly defined, hypopigmented or erythematous lesions associated with hypoesthesia.
- Six or more skin lesions. Or
- slit skin smear result positive for AFB, irrespective of the number of skin lesion.or
- If there is involvement (enlargement) of more than one nerve.

2) Paucibacillary leprosy:

- Presents with one or few (usually <5) hypopigmented and hypoesthetic lesions.
- Only one nerve trunk enlarged and
- Slit skin smear negative for AFB.

Pure neural leprosy

These are patients who do not have any skin lesion, but who have clearly thickened nerves with or without signs of nerve damage. Patients with pure neural leprosy should be reported and treated as a MB case

Treatment

Objectives

- Cure leprosy by rapidly eliminating the bacilli
- Prevent the emergence of drug resistance
- Prevent relapse
- Prevent disability

Non-pharmacologic

- Counseling and Psychological support
- Socio-economic support

Pharmacologic

Leprosy is treated with a combination of two or more drugs in the form of Multi-Drug Therapy (MDT). **Multi-drug therapy (MDT)** is a combination of Rifampacin, Clofazimine and/or Dapsone. MDT drugs are provided in blister calendar packs each containing a four weeks (one month) supply.

Treatment of Multibacillary Leprosy:

Use three drugs as below to be taken for 12 months (to be completed within 15-month period) in all multi-bacillary cases. Treatment should be given for one year only (12 MDT blister packs).

Rifampicin: 10 mg per kilogram body weight **(**600 mg P.O for adults), once-monthly, supervised for 12 months.

ADRs: abdominal pain, itching, skin rash, urticaria, Skin rashes, hepatoxicityjaundice, Shock, purpura and renal failure

C/Is: hepatic dysfuncion, known hypersensitivity to rifampicin

Dosage forms: Capsule, 150 mg, 300 mg, and 600 mg.

PLUS

Dapsone, 2 mg/kg (100 mg P.O. for adults), daily self-administered for 12 months

ADRs: insomnia, Skin rashes, severe itching and urticaria (pale red, raised itchy bumps), hemolytic anemia (may occur in individual with G6PD- deficiency), Jaundice

C/Is: Hypersensitivity reactions to sulphonamides

Dosage forms: Tablet, 25 mg, 50 mg, 100 mg

PLUS

Clofazimine, 6 mg/kg (300 mg P.O. for adults) monthly, supervised and 1 mg/kg (50 mg for adults) daily, self-administered for 12 months.

ADRs: abdominal pain, rash, pruritis, elevation of blood sugar, Brown discoloration of skin lesions and pigmentation of the conjunctiva; photosensitivity; hepatic and renal impairment, Dryness of the skin and ichthiosis (thick, rough and scaly skin).

Dosage forms: capsule, 100 mg.

Table 9: Dose regimens of drugs use for treatment of multibacillary leprosy

Drugs	0-5 yrs old	6-14 yrs old	≥ 15 yrs old
Rifampicin (4-weekly supervised)	300 mg	450 mg	600 mg
Clofazimine (4-weekly supervised)	100 mg	150 mg	300 mg
Clofazimine (unsupervised)	50 mg twice a week	50 mg every other day	50 mg daily
Dapsone (daily, unsupervised)	25 mg	50 mg	100 mg

Treatment of Paucibacillary leprosy:

Use two drugs as below to be taken for 6 months (to be completed within 9-month period) in all pauci-bacillary cases. Treatment should be given for 6 months only (6 MDT blister packs).

Rifampicin, 10 mg per kilogram body weight **(**600 mg P.O for adults), once-monthly, supervised for 6 months. (For **ADRs, C/sI** and **dosage forms,**) as above

PLUS

Dapsone 2 mg/kg (100 mg P.O.for adults), daily self-administered for 6 months

(For **ADRs, C/Is** and **dosage forms**) as above

Table 10: Dose regimens of drugs use for treatment of Paucibavillary leprosy

Drugs	**0-5 yrs old**	**6-14 yrs old**	**≥ 15 yrs old**
Rifampicin (4-weekly supervised)	**300 mg**	**450 mg**	**600 mg**
Dapsone (daily, unsupervised)	**25 mg**	**50 mg**	**100 mg**

Table 11: Symptom based approach to the Management of Adverse effects of MDT

ADRs		**Responsible Drug (s)**	**Action**
Minor	Itching and skin rash	Rifampicin	Reassurance

	Loss of appetite, nausea and abdominal pain	Rifampicin	Give drugs with food
	Orange/red urine, faeces, saliva and sputum	Rifampicin	Reassurance (harmless and will disappear after cessation of MDT)
	Brown discoloration of skin lesions and pigmentation of the conjunctiva	Clofazimine	Reassurance (harmless and will disappear after cessation of MDT)
	Dryness of the skin and ichthiosis (thick, rough and scaly skin)	Clofazimine	Apply Vaseline ointment
	Insomnia (sleeping difficulties and disturbances)	Dapsone	Give the drug in the morning
	Anaemia	Dapsone	Give iron and folic acid
Major	Jaundice (Yellowish discoloration of the sclera, skin and mucous membranes)	Rifampicine Dapsone	Stop treatment and refer
	Skin rashes, severe itching and urticaria (pale red, raised itchy bumps)	Dapsone & Rifampicin	Stop treatment and refer

Precautions in leprosy treatment

Patients co-infected with TB

Patients suffering from both TB and leprosy require standard TB treatment in addition to the standard MDT. Hence, skip the monthly dose of the rifampicin in the leprosy MDT regimen. Once the TB treatment is completed, the patient should continue his/her MDT, or the other way round.

Pregnancy and breast-feeding

The standard MDT regimens are safe, both for the mother, the unborn child and the child and therefore can be administered during pregnancy and breast-feeding.

Treatment Monitoring and Follow-up

- Leprosy Patients on MDT must collect drugs from the clinic every month on regular bases.
- During every clinic visit patients must be educated about the importance of regularly taking of the medications, the major side effects of the drugs and signs and symptoms of reactions/neuritis and on the need to report immediately to the nearby treatment center whenever any problem occurs.
- Nerve function tests (VMT and ST of the eyes, hands and feet) must be carried out to detect nerve function impairment early and to prevent the occurrence of disability.
- A patient who has missed MDT dose for more than 3 months in total should be recorded as ***default.***

Leprosy complications (reaction in leprosy)

Complications of leprosy may occur or may have already occurred at the time of diagnosis/during treatment. One of the most common complications in leprosy is reaction. Leprosy reaction is an immunological response to the bacilli, presenting as acute inflammatory episodes. It is the sudden appearance of symptoms and signs of inflammation on the skin, eyes and peripheral nerves. The long-term problems related to leprosy (deformity and disability) are due to nerve damage from leprosy reactions.

There are two types of leprosy reactions:

1. Reversal Reaction (or Type 1 reaction)
2. Erythema Nodosum Leprosum (ENL) or Type 2 reaction

Both types of leprosy reactions can occur before the start of treatment, during treatment and after completion of treatment.

Mild type 1 reaction

Usually occurs in type 1 reaction and characterized by the presence of oedema and erythema of skin lesions only (excluding the face and overlying peripheral nerves)

Clinical features

- Oedema and erythema of skin lesions (excluding the face and overlying nerve trunk).
- Redness, swelling and sometimes tenderness of skin lesions.

Investigations

- Blood sugar
- Stool examination
- CBC

Treatment of mild reaction

Objectives

- Relieve the patient from pain and restore quality of life and productivity
- Reduce symptoms

Non-pharmacologic

- Rest
- Reassurance
- Psychological support and counseling
- Patient education on early recognition of signs of severe reaction

Pharmacologic

First line

Aspirin, 600 mg to 1200 mg p.o. is given 4 to 6 times daily until the reaction is controlled and then the dose decreased gradually.

ADRs: GI irritation; skin reaction; broncho-spasm.

C/Is: GI ulceration; hemophilia; children under the age of 12.

Dosage forms: Tablet, 75 mg, 100mg (soluble), 300mg, 500mg (enteric coated), 324 (microfined)

Alternative

Paracetamol; Adult; 0.5 to 1g p.o. every 4-6 hours, maximum 4g daily; **Child:** 3 months-1 year 60-125mg, 1-5 years 120 - 250mg, 6-12 years 250 - 500mg these doses may be repeated every 4 - 6 hours if necessary (maximum 4 doses in 24 hours)

ADRs: Allergic reactions such as skin rashes, neutropenia and thrombocytopenia may occur rarely.

P/C: caution in alcoholics, and in patients with hepatic diseases, and severe renal function impairment, anaemia and other disorders of the haemopoietic system.

D/I: avoid simultaneous use of single toxic doses or long-term high doses of paracetamol with alcohol, or phenobarbitone; oral anticoagulants.

C/I: severe hepatic or renal disease.

Dosage forms: Tablet, 100mg, 500mg; Suppository, 125mg, 250mg; Syrup, 120mg/5ml, 250mg/5ml; Drops, 100mg/ml

Severe reactions

Usually occurs in type 2 reaction but sometimes it can also occur in type 1 reaction. All type 2 reactions are severe

Clinical features

- Appearance of tender redish lesions with ulceration.
- Painful eyes, with redness around the limbus cornea, increased lacrimation, fixed narrowing (constriction) of the pupil and diminishing vision (irido-cyclitis).
- Painful swollen fingers (dactylitis).
- Swelling of hands or feet.
- Painful testicular swelling (orchitis).
- Weakness of muscles of the eyes, hands and feet
    - Numbness or tingling of the hands and/or the feet
    - Weakness of eyelids, hands or feet
    - Difficulty of closing the eyes
    - Burning sensation in the skin
    - Dryness of the palms
    - Skin cracks on palms and soles with sensation loss
- Painless wounds or burns on the hands or feet
- A raised, red swollen patch overlying a nerve trunk or around the eye/s.
- Red, raised and ulcerating skin lesions.
- Oedema of hands or feet
- Erythematous Sub-cutaneous Nodular Lesions with ulceration (ulcerating ENL) – hallmark of type 2 severe reaction

- Tenderness of eyes, with redness around the limbus cornea, increased lacrimation, fixed narrowing (constriction) of the pupil and diminishing vision (irido-cyclitis).
- tender nerves on palpation
- Corneal anesthesia with loss of corneal reflex
- Loss of muscle strength and/or loss of sensation in eyes, hands or feet, for less than 6 months.
- Change in VMT (including eye closure) of less than six months duration. The change can be from strong to weak, from weak to paralysis, or from strong to paralysis.
- Change in Sensory Testing of less than six months duration. A change is considered to be significant when any hand or foot has increased loss of sensation at two or more points.
- Tender testicular swelling (orchitis).
- Marked arthritis or lymphadenitis

Investigations

- blood sugar
- stool examination
- CBC
- Sputum for AFB examination to exclude tuberculosis

Treatment of severe reactions

Objectives

- Prevent nerve damage
- Prevent disabilities
- Relieve the patient from pain and restore quality of life and productivity

Non-pharmacologic

- Complete rest to the affected nerve
- Immobilize the affected limb with a splint
- Physical rehabilitation
- Physiotherapy
- Health education on self care

Pharmacologic

Type 1 severe reaction

Prednisone 1 mg/kg body weight/day (40-60 mg daily), according to severity and starting high dose should be reduced to 40 mg after a few days. Thereafter, the dose is reduced by 5-10 mg every 2-4 weeks, ending with 10mg every 2-4 weeks
(see table below).

ADRs: Abdominal discomfort, peptic ulceration; hypertension, diabetes, osteoporosis; myopathy;

C/Is: Peptic ulcer, diabetes, Cushing's disease.

Dosage form: Tablet, 1mg, 5mg, 40mg prednipac.

Table 12: Ambulatory treatment of severe reversal reaction with Prednisolone

Duration of treatment		**Daily dose of prednisolone (do not exceed 1 mg per kg body weight)**
MB	**PB**	
4 weeks	2 weeks	40 mg
4 weeks	2 weeks	30 mg
4 weeks	2 weeks	20 mg
4 weeks	2 weeks	15 mg
4 weeks	2 weeks	10 mg
4 weeks	2 weeks	5 mg
Total 24 weeks	**Total 12 weeks**	**Stop**

Table 13: Hospital treatment with Prednisolone of severe type 1 reaction

60 mg daily (12 tablets of 5mg prednisolone)	1 week
50 mg daily (10 tablets of 5mg prednisolone)	1 week
40 mg daily (8 tablets of 5mg prednisolone)	2 weeks
30 mg daily (6 tablets of 5mg prednisolone)	2 weeks
20 mg daily (4 tablets of 5mg prednisolone)	12 weeks
15 mg daily (3 tablets of 5mg prednisolone)	2 weeks
10 mg daily (2 tablets of 5mg prednisolone)	2 weeks
5 mg daily (1 tablet of 5mg prednisolone)	2 weeks
Total	**24 weeks**

Type 2 severe reactions (ENL)

It is often better to start treatment with a higher dose of prednisolone and then taper more quickly. Preferrably, these patients are better referred to specilaied leprosy hospitals and managed by dermato-venerologist and/or leprologists.

Referral

Indication for referral and admission to hospital during severe reaction

- ENL reaction
- Deep ulcer(s)
- Red and/or painful eye
- Pregnancy
- Younger than 12 years of age
- Severe peptic ulcer disease
- Diabetes
- General illness with fever
- Patient who improved during previous courses, but who develops a reaction for the 3rd time
- Severe depression or psychosis
- Suspected relapse

Prevention of leprosy

Chemoprophylaxis

- Unlike Tuberculosis, there is no indication for chemoprophylaxis for leprosy.

BCG

- BCG vaccination has a documented and substantial effect in preventing leprosy and is therefore considered as an important tool for prevention of leprosy

15. Malaria

Malaria is a major public health problem in Ethiopia and has been consistently reported as one of the leading cause of morbidity and mortality. Malaria is a parasitic infection caused by plasmodium species known to affect humans. The most serious and life-threatening disease occurs from Plasmodium Falciparum infection. Prompt diagnosis and treatment is essential even in mild cases to prevent complications.

Causes: the commonest causes of Malaria in Ethiopia are

- P. Falciparum
- P. vivax

Clinical feature: uncomplicated malaria

- Fever
- Chills
- Rigors
- Sweating
- Severe Headache
- Generalized body and joint pain
- Nausea and or vomiting
- Loss of appetite
- Abdominal pain (especially in children)
- Irritability and refusal to feed (in infants)
- flu-like symptoms
- fever above 38°C
- Splenomegaly
- Pallor

Investigations

- Microscopy - thick and thin blood films for malaria parasites
- Rapid diagnostic tests (RDT) - if microscopy is unavailable
- CBC

The diagnosis of malaria can be confirmed when malaria parasites are demonstration in the blood films (thick or thin) or with Rapid Diagnostic Test (RDT). Blood film is also helpful to estimate

the degree of parasitemia, which is extremely useful not only to predict severity but gauge response to treatment as well.

If neither microscopy nor rapid tests are available, diagnosis should be made on the basis of clinical symptoms.

N.B. Clinical diagnosis of malaria is made in a patient who has fever or history of fever in the last 48 hours and lives in malaria-endemic areas or has a history of travel within the last 30 days to malaria-endemic areas. Malaria treatment based on clinical diagnosis must be the last option when there is no RDT or blood film microscopy

Treatment

Objectives

- Treat the patient and restore quality of life and productivity
- Prevent uncomplicated malaria from progressing to severe and fatal illness
- Prevent death from malaria complication
- Prevent the development and transmission of drug resistance
- Decrease malaria transmission to others

Non-pharmacologic

- Apply tepid sponging or fanning to reduce body temperature
- Admit or refer severe complicated cases

Pharmacologic

1. **Treatment of uncomplicated *P. Falciparum malaia***

   First line

   Artemether + Lumefantrine, 20mg + 120mg in a fixed dose combination

   ADRs: dizziness and fatigue, anorexia, nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain, palpitations, myalgia, sleep disorders, arthralgia, headache and rash

   C/Is: previous history of reaction after using the drug; Pregnant women in the first trimester and infants less than 5 kg; severe and complicated malaria should not be treated with oral medications

   Dosage forms: **Artemether (20 mg) + Lumefantrine (120 mg)** FDC Tablet

   N.B. Artemether-lumefantrine should not be used as malaria prophylaxis either alone or in combination;

Table 14: Dose regimens of artemether-lumfantrine

Weight (KG)	Age	Dose
5-14 kg	From 4 months to 2 years	1 tablet bid for 3 days
15-24 kg	From 3 years to 7 years	2 tablets bid for 3 days
25-34 kg	From 8 years to 10 years	3 tablets bid for 3 days
>35 kg	10 years & above	4 tablets bid for 3 days

P/Cs: Drug should be stored at temperatures below 30^0C; Drug should not be removed from the blister if it is not going to be used immediately; Drug is not recommended for infants weighing <5KG and pregnant mothers in the first trimester; Drug should preferably be taken with food or fluids; fatty meal or milk improves absorption of the drug.

Dosage forms: tablet containing 20mg of Artemether and 120 mg of lumefantrine

Alternative

Quinine dihydrochloride, 10 mg quinine sulphate salt/kg TID for 7 days.

ADRs: Cinchonism, including tinnitus, headache, nausea, abdominal pain, rashes, visual disturbances, confusion, blood disorders (including thrombocytopenia and intra-vascular coagulation), acute renal failure, and hypoglycemia may be caused by quinine

C/Is: Hemoglobinuria, optic neuritis

Dosage forms: Tablet (dihydrochloride or sulphate), 300mg, and 600mg; injection, 300mg/ml in 1 ml ampoule.

2. Treatment of uncomplicated *P. Vivax* malaia

Chloroquine phosphate, 1 g, then 500 mg in 6 hours followed by 500 mg p.o. QD for 2 days, or 1 g at 0 and 24 hrs followed by 0.5 g at 48 hrs P.O.

ADRs: gastro-intestinal disturbances, headache, also convulsions, visual disturbances

P/Cs: Avoid alcoholic beverages

D/Is: Carbamazepine, digoxin, ethosuximide, mefloquine, phenytoin and valproic acid

Dosage forms: Tablets, 250mg, 500mg (equivalent to 150mg, 300mg chloroquine base); Syrup, 50mg/5ml; Injection, 50mg/ml; (equivalent to 40 mg chloroquine base)

Followed by

Primaquine, 15mg base P.O.QD for 14 days.

ADRs: hemolytic anemia, especially in patients with G6PD deficiency.

P/Cs: In patients with G6PD deficiency; systemic diseases associated with granulocytopenia, e,g. rheumatoid arthritis, and pregnancy and breast feeding)

The drug is recommended for patients with limited risk of malaria infection in the future; for patients who are not living in malaria endemic areas.

Dosage forms: Tablet, 7.5mg base, 15mg base

Alternatives

Artemether + Lumefantrine, 20mg + 120mg in a fixed dose combination

ADR, C/I, P/C and dosage forms same as above.

OR

Quinine dihydrochloride, 10 mg quinine sulphate salt/kg TID for 7 days

(ADR, C/I, P/C and Dosage: See above)

3. **Treatment of uncomplicated Mixed infection (Multi-species RDT positive for *P.falciparum* and *P.vivax*)**

First line

Artemether + Lumefantrine, 20mg + 120mg in a fixed dose combination

ADR, C/I, P/C and dosage forms same as above.

P/C; do not treat a patient with confirmed mixed infection with both AL and chloroquine

Alternative

Quinine dihydrochloride, 10 mg quinine sulphate salt/kg TID for 7 days

(ADR, C/I, P/C and Dosage form see page117) **Complicated P.falciparum malaria**

Delay in diagnosis or inappropriate treatment of uncomplicated malaria can lead to the rapid development of severe or 'complicated malaria'." It mostly occurs in children under 5 years of age, pregnant women and non-immune individuals. Severe malaria may lead to death unless it is diagnosed early and appropriately managed

Clinical features

- Inability to take in fluids (or breast milk in children)
- Repeated profuse vomiting
- Dark or 'cola-coloured' urine
- Passing of very little urine
- Difficulty in breathing
- Generalised weakness, inability to walk or sit without assistance
- Sleepiness, change of behaviour
- Repeated generalized convulsions
- Altered consciousness, confusion, delirium, convulsions, coma
- Tachypnoea, respiratory distress and/or cyanosis
- Oliguria, renal failure
- repeated vomiting
- hypoglycaemia
- Severe anaemia (Hb < 6 g/dL)
- Hyperpyrexia (axillary temperature >38.5°C)
- Extreme pallor (severe anaemia)

- Circulatory collapse or shock (cold limbs, weak rapid pulse)
- Crepitations on chest exmination
- Haemoglobinuria (dark or 'cola-coloured' urine)
- Spontaneous unexplained heavy bleeding (disseminated intravascular coagulation)

Investigations

- Microscopy - thick and thin blood films for malaria parasites
- Rapid diagnostic test (RDT) - if microscopy is unavailable
- CBC
- RBS
- Blood grouping and cross-matching
- BUN and creatinine
- Lumbar puncture to exclude meningitis or cover with appropriate antibiotic.

The diagnosis of severe malaria is based on clinical features and confirmed with laboratory testing. While confirmation of the diagnosis is necessary treatment must be started promptly and not withheld while confirming the diagnosis

Treatment of Severe and complicated *P. falciparum* malaria

Patients with Severe and complicated malaria preferably be immediately referred to hospitals for admission and in-patient management. In cases referral is not possible, treatment should be started promptly:

Treatment Objectives

- Administer drugs parenterally to ensure adequate blood-serum concentrations of the drug and rapid clearance of parasitaemia
- Provide urgent treatment for life threatening problems e.g. convulsions, hypoglycaemia, dehydration, renal impairment
- Prevent death from malaria

Non pharmacologic

- Clear and maintain the airway.
- Position semi-prone or on side.
- Weigh the patient and calculate dosage.
- Make rapid clinical assessment.
    - Exclude or treat hypoglycemia (more so in pregnant women).
    - Assess state of hydration.
- Measure and monitor urine output.
    - If necessary insert urethral catheter.
    - Measure urine specific gravity.
- Open IV line for 8 hours of intravenous fluids including diluents for anti-malarial drug, glucose therapy and blood transfusion.
- If rectal temperature exceeds 39°C, remove patient's clothes, use tepid sponge,
- Consider other infections.
- Consider need for anti-convulsant treatment

Pharmacologic:

First line

Artesunate: 2.4mg/Kg IV or IM given on admission (time = 0), then repeat at 12 hours, and 24 hours, then onec a day for upto 5 days.

Artesunate is dispensed as a powder of Artesunic acid. From 60mg vials, artesunate must be reconstituted in two steps: initially with sodium bicarbonate solution (Provided), then with 5 ml of 5% glucose (D5W) solution. Full reconstitution results in either 6ml (intravenous concentration 10mg/ml) or 3ml (for intramuscular injection concentration 20mg/ml) of injectable artesunate dosed by weight.

Table 15: Dose Regime of Artesunate IV, IM

Weight (kg) (approximate)	IV 10 mg/ml	IM 20 mg/ml
0-8	1 ml	0.5 ml
9 to 12	2 ml	1 ml
13-16	3 ml	1.5 ml
17-18	4 ml	2 ml
19-21	5 ml	2.5 ml
22-25	6 ml	3 ml
26-29*	7 ml	3.5 ml
30-33*	8 ml	4 ml
34-37*	9 ml	4.5 ml
38-41*	10 ml	5 ml
42-46*	11 ml	5.5 ml
47+*	12 ml	6 ml

* for persons weighing more than 25 kg, a second artesunate vial must be completely reconstituted as above for each dose, and then each dose administered determined by the chart.

ADRs: dizziness, tinnitus, neutropenia, elevated liver enzymes, ECG abnormalities, type 1 hypersensitivity reaction

P/Cs: The solution should be prepared for each administration and should not be stored.

Give parentral Antimalarials in the treatment of severe malaria for a minimum of 24 hours, once started (irrespective of the patient's ability to tolerate oral medication earlier)

Dosage forms; ampoules for IV/IM injection 6omg anhydrous Artesunic acid + a separate ampoule of 5% sodium bicarbonate solution; Tablets 50mg or 200 mg sodium artesunate; Rectal capsule 100mg or 400mg

Alternatives

Artemether IM 3.2 mg/kg loading dose on the first day followed by 1.6 mg/kg daily for two days

ADRs: dizziness, tinnitus, ECG abnormality, neutropenia, type 1 hypersensitivity reaction

P/Cs: the drug should only be used during the first trimester of pregnancy when both IV/IM artesunate and IV/IM Quinine are unavailable

Dosage forms: capsules 40mg; Tablets 50mg; ampoules for injectable solutions (IM) 80mg in 1 ml for adults or 40mg in 1ml of children

OR

Quinine dihydrochloride (IV/IM): Loading dose: 20 mg/kg in 500 ml of isotonic saline or 5 % dextrose over 4 hours (4ml/minute). The pediatric dose is the same but the fluid replacement must be based on body weight.

Maintenance dose: should be given 12 hours after the start of the loading dose at a dose of 10 mg / kg and it should be given 8 hourly diluted in 500 ml of isotonic saline or 5 % dextrose over 4 hours.

Table 16: Dose regimens of Quinine

Route	**Loading dose over 4 hours**	**Rest for next 8 hours**	**Maintenance dose over 4 hours (given 12 hours after start of loading Dose)**	**Rest for 4 hours**	**Maintainance dose over 4 hours every 8 hourly**
IV	20 mg/kg in 500 ml of isotonic saline or 5 % dextrose over 4 hours (4ml/minute)	Give N/Saline or Ringers lactate to keep vein open and maintain fluid balance	10 mg salt/kg body weight in 500 ml of 5 % dextrose over 4 hours	Give N/Saline or Ringers lactate to keep vein open and maintain fluid balance	10 mg salt/kg body weight in 500 ml of 5 % dextrose over 4 hours
	Loading dose		Rest for next 4 hours	Maintainance dose every 8 hourly	
IM	20 mg/kg body weight divided into 2 site (one in each thigh)			10 mg salt/kg body weight IM into thigh	

The parenteral treatment should be changed to P.O. only after 24 hours and as soon as the patient‘s condition improves and if there is no vomiting.

Oral treatment should be given with ***Artemether*** + ***Lumefantrine*** in the doses as indicated above. However, if a patient has a history of intake of ***Artemether*** + ***Lumefantrine*** before complications developed, give **Quinine** tablets 10 mg salt per kg TID to complete 7 days treatment.

ADRs: Cinchonism, including tinnitus, headache, nausea, abdominal pain, rashes, visual disturbances, confusion, blood disorders (including thrombocytopenia and intra-vascular coagulation), acute renal failure, and Hypoglycemia may be caused by quinine

C/Is: Hemoglobinuria, optic neuritis

Dosage forms: Tablet (dihydrochloride or sulphate), 300mg, and 600mg; injection, 300mg/ml in 1 ml ampoule.

Referral
Severe complicated malaria
Prevention of malaria

I. Chemo-prophylaxis

P. Falciparum

First line

Mefloquine, 5 mg base per kg weekly (1tablet for adults >50kg, begin ≥ 2weeks before travel to malariuos area, take weekly on the same day while in the area and for 4 weeks after leaving the area.

Table 17: Dose regimen of Mefloquine as prophylaxis; 5 mg /kg mefloquine (250 mg salt) once weekly

Weight (Kg)	Age (approx.)	Number of tablets per week
<9	< 3 months	5mg/kg salt
9 – 19	3 – 23 months	¼ tablet
20 – 30	2 – 7 year	½
31 – 45	8 – 10 year	¾
36 – 50+	11 – 14+	1

ADRs: Dizziness, mild to moderate gastrointestinal disturbances (nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain and diarhorrea).

C/Is: persons with known hypersensitivity; Persons with a history of severe neurospsychiatric disease; Pregnant women in the first trimester; Infant less than 3 months; Persons who have received treatment with mefloquine in the previous 4 weeks; persons performing activities requiring fine coordination and spatial discrimination

Dosage form: Tablet, 250mg

Alternatives

Atovaquone/Proguanil: 250mg/100mg PO daily for adults; begin 1-2 days before travel to malarous area and daily while in the areas and for 7 days after leaving the area.

Table 18: dose regimen of Atovaquone-proguanil chemoprophylaxis

Weight (kg)	Atovaquone/ Proguanil HCl Dosage form	Dosage Regimen
5-8	62.5 mg/25 mg (pediatric tablet)	½ Pediatric Tablet daily
>8-10	62.5 mg/25 mg	¾ Pediatric Tablet daily
11-20	62.5 mg/25 mg	1 Pediatric Tablet daily
21-30	62.5 mg/25 mg	2 Pediatric Tablets as a single dose daily
31-40	62.5 mg/25 mg	3 Pediatric Tablets as a single dose daily
>40	250 mg/100 mg (adult tablet)	1 Tablet (adult strength) as a single dose daily

ADRs: ranal impairment

C/I: severe renal impairment**,** children<5Kg body weight, prergnant women,

P/C: the drug should be taken with food or a milky drink, drug should be taken daily at the same tme each day

Dosage forms: adult tablets 250mg atovaquone/100mg Proguanil; pediatric tablet 62.5mg atovaquone/25mg proguanil**.**

OR

Doxycycline, 100mg daily for adults; 2.2mg/kg daily for children >8yrs; begin 1-2 days before travel to malarious areas, to be taken daily while at the area and after 4 weeks after leaving the area

ADRs: visual disturbance, hepatotoxicity, pancreatitis, pseudomembrane colitis, discolouration of infants and children's teeth, photosensitivity

C/Is: pregnancy, breast-feeding, children up to 8 years of age.

D/Is: antacids, carbamazepine, oral contraceptives, ferrous salts, phenobarbital, phenytoin, rifampicin and warfarin

Dosage forms: Tablet, 100mg; capsule, 100mg

For *P. vivax*

Primaquine phosphate, 15 mg base P.O. QD for 14 days after travel.

16. Onchocerciasis

Onchocerciasis is a disease caused by O*nchocerca volvulus*, transmitted by several species of simulium ("Black flies") and manifested by onchodermatitis. Mature worms and microfilariae are found in granulomatous dermal nodules mainly on the bony prominences, the trunks and extremities in Africans and the scalp in Central Americans. Inflammatory cells and sometimes giant cells accumulate around the worms and occasionally calcification may occur. Perivascular inflammatory response occurs in the dermis as a result of the presence of microfilariae. With chronicity, these reactions are replaced by fibrosis and atrophy of the dermis and epidermis. The presence of microfilariae in the eye causes keratitis, iritis and choroiditeis, which may eventually lead to blindness.

Clinical features

- Onchocercal dermaitis- Generalized intense prurituis, enlargement of inguinal and femoral lymph nodes, lymphatic obstruction and patchy hypopigmentation
- Oncocercoma -subcutaneous (or deeper) nodules that contain adult worms may be visible or palpable.
- Oncophthalmia- punctate keratitis, sclerosing keratitis and eventually blindness.

Investigation

- Demonstration of microfilariae by examination of skin snips.
- Histological examination of the nodule (presence of adult worms and microfilariae),

Treatment

Objective

- Relieve itching
- Treat the infection

Non pharmacologic

- Surgical removal of accessible onchocercomas
- Minimize fly bites by avoiding fly-infested areas, wearing protective clothing and using insect repellents

Pharmacologic

Ivermectin, single oral dose of 150 micrograms/kg. It should be continuously given once or twice a year until patients are asymptomatic or for people residing in endemic area. For those no more living in endemic area, single dose treatment is enough and a repeat dose should only be given in cases of relapse.

ADRs: Myalgia, dizziness, fever, headache, lymphadenopathy, skin rash or itching, postural hypotension

C/Is: Pregnancy, hypersensitivity to ivermectin.

P/C: Breast-feeding

Dosage forms: Tablet, 3mg, 6mg (scored)

PLUS

Doxycyclin, 100mg po BID for 8weeks prior to treatment with **Ivermectin**

PLUS

Antihistamines may be required in the first few days of treatment if there is severe exacerbation of the diseases.

Promethazine, 25 mg BID OR TID until the prurutis subsides.

(For ADRs, C/Is, P/Cs, D/Is and dosage forms, see page 375)

N.B. Nodulectomy may have a place for eradication of the adult worm

17. Rabies

Rabies is a fatal viral disease that can affect almost all mammals. The causative agent is Rabies virus from class Rhabdoviridae, genus *Lyssavirus* and species Serotype 1. The virus is transmitted through inoculation of saliva, usually from the bite of an infected animal. The distribution is worldwide with as many as 10 million people annually receiving postexposure treatment (PET) to prevent rabies but the human disease is more common in developing countries. An estimated 55 000 people die from rabies per year in Africa and Asia.

More than 95% of the deaths are due to exposure to dogs, which are the major reservoir and transmitter of rabies, but transmission by wild animals such as bats, foxes, and wolves is also possible. The incubation period is relatively long (ranging from 3 weeks to 3 months) but can be as long as several years in rare cases. The closer the inoculation site is to the central nervous system, the shorter is the incubation period.

Clinical features

Prodrome (2-10 days):

- Paresthesias (pins and needles sensation) around bite area are very suggestive of rabies.
- Fever, headache, malaise, muscle pain, nausea, vomiting, and cough.

Acute neurologic phase (2-7 days):

- Confusion, delirium, altered mentation, agitation, hallucinations.
- Excitation predominates in many cases with hypersensitivity or spasms in response to touch, noise, visual, or olfactory stimuli. Hydrophobia (fear of water) and aerophobia (fear of air) may occur, and when they occur they are very suggestive of rabies.
- In paralytic rabies, phobic spasms occur in only half of patients. In early paralytic rabies, piloerection and myoedema may occur at percussion site on the chest, deltoid muscle, and thigh.
- Autonomic system dysfunction: enlarged pupils, increased production of saliva, tears, perspiration.

Coma, death (0-14days):

- Occurs after several days to 1 week.
- Hypoventilation, loss of temperature control, heart dysfunction can lead to death.

Ascending paralysis:

Similar to Guillain-Barré syndrome, occurs in some cases and makes diagnosis more difficult. This can also occur during post-exposure rabies treatment.

Investigations

- Diagnosis rests on history of exposure and typical neurological findings.
- CSF: increased white cells (lymphocytes), mildly increased protein.

Treatment

There is no effective treatment against rabies. It is almost always fatal. Supportive management is important; recovery is exceedingly rare and has only occurred in cases where intensive respiratory and cardiac supports were available.

Apparently healthy dogs and cats at the origin of the exposure should be kept under observation for 10 days. Dogs and cats that are suspected of being rabid, as well as wild animals, should be humanely killed and their tissues examined in the appropriate laboratory.

Objectives

- Reduce the pain and suffering of patient.

Non pharmacologic

- Supportive treatment of a paralyzed patient mostly focused on nursing care and providing comfort to the patient.

Pharmacologic

Palliative care

The short clinical course of rabies entails much suffering, whether excitation or paralysis is predominant. Patients remain conscious, are often aware of the nature of their illness, and are often very agitated, especially when excitation is predominant. Patients with rabies should receive adequate sedation and comfort with emotional and physical support, preferably in a private room. Sedation with barbiturates can be added. Avoid intubation and other life support measures when the diagnosis is certain.

Health worker safety

It is theoretically possible for person-to-person rabies transmission to occur since secretions may contain the virus; this has not been described. As a precaution, medical and nursing staff must wear mask, gloves, and goggles.

Rabies post-exposure vaccination after animal bites

After an exposure to a possibly rabid animal, the following measures should be undertaken:

The cornerstone of rabies prevention is wound care, which potentially reduces the risk of rabies by 90%. Wound care for any scratches, abrasions, bites, or licks on broken skin.

- Immediately scrub with alkaline soap and water, and flush with water for 15 minutes
- Irrigate with Povidone-iodine

Decide on post-exposure vaccination and immunoglobulin use depending on the type of contact with the rabid animal**.**

Types of contact are:

Category I – Touching or feeding animals licks on the skin.

Category II – Nibbling of uncovered skin, minor scratches or abrasions without bleeding.

Category III – Single or multiple transdermal bites or scratches, licks on broken skin, contamination of mucous membrane with saliva from licks; exposure to bat bites or scratches.

Treat according to category of contact:

Category I – No treatment is required

Category II –Immediate vaccination

Category III –Immediate vaccination and administration of rabies immunoglobulin

Depending on vaccine type, the post-exposure schedule prescribes intramuscular doses of 1 ml or 0.5 ml given as 4 to 5 doses over 4 weeks.

If no prior rabies vaccination:

- In category III exposure, and if available, rabies immunoglobulin should be used in addition to human rabies vaccine.
- In category II exposure, only vaccination is necessary.

Immunoglobulin:

Human rabies immune globulin 20 IU/kg

OR

Equine rabies immunoglobulin 40 IU/kg

NB: It is mostly injected at the site of the bite. If any is leftover, inject IM at a distant site. This can be given up to 7 days post-exposure if not available immediately.

Vaccination:

These may not be at a health center and patients should be referred for post-exposure vaccination to centers where vaccines are available.

If prior pre- or post-exposure vaccination

For rabies-exposed patients who have previously undergone complete preexposure vaccination or post-exposure treatment with cell-derived rabies vaccines, 2 intramuscular doses of a cell-derived vaccine separated by 3 days are sufficient. Rabies immunoglobulin treatment is not indicated in such cases.

Pre-exposure vaccination

Pre-exposure vaccination is recommended for those in rabies diagnostic and research laboratories and veterinarians, individuals at high risk of exposure such as stray dog handlers,

park officials, or bat handlers. Pre-exposure vaccination is administered as 1 full dose vaccine given 3 times, IM or 0.1 ml intradermal, on days 0, 7, and 21 or 28.

18. Rerelapsing Fever

Relapsing fever is a louse-borne disease that is caused by the spirochaete, *Borrelia recurrentis.* The disease is common among the homeless and in those living in overcrowded living conditions. It is endemic in our country but outbreaks do also occur from time to time especially during the rainy season. It is characterized by recurrent acute episodes of spirochetemia with short febrile periods alternating with spirochetal clearance and pyrexia. Other febrile diseases like typhus, typhoid fever, malaria and meningitis should be considered in the differential diagnosis of relapsing fever.

Clinical features

- Fever, rigors/chills are the most common manifestations.
- Symptoms and signs of complications like bleeding tendency, confusion, gallop rhythm, etc may occur.

Investigations

- Microscopic examination of peripheral blood for presence of spirochets.
- In complicated cases: CBC,Liver function tests,ECG

Treatment

Objectives

- Treat the infection.
- Prevent or minimize the Jarish Herxheimer reaction.

Non pharmacologic

- Delousing

Pharmacologic

First line

Procaine penicillin, 400,000 unit I.M. single dose. For children: 25,000-50,000 units.

(For **ADRs, C/Is**, and **dosage forms**, see under Benzyl penicillin ans see page 282)

Check blood film after 12 hours of treatment. If negative, give tetracycline 250 mgTID for three consecutive days. If the blood film remains positive, repeat the same dose of procaine penicillin and continue with tetracycline later as described above.

Alternative

Tetracycline hydrochloride, 500mg P.O. single dose. The same dose could be repeated the following day

(For **ADRs, C/Is** and **dosage forms**, see page 188)

OR

Erythromycine, 500mg P.O. Single dose

N.B.

1. **Jarish- Herxheimer reaction**: Some patients may develop Jarisch-Herxheimer reaction and is believed to be due to a rapid clearance of the spirochetes. The first dose of appropriate antibiotic causes transient worsening of clinical symptoms/signs. This mostly happens within the first two hours after antibiotic administration. This reaction is very common ocuring in 35-100% and is associated with increased mortality. In its classic form, it occurs in two distinct phases: Chills phase which consists of a rise in BP, pulse,and respiratory rate; and flush phase which is associated with dramatic fall of BP. The reaction should be actively anticipated and managed aggressively with fluid rescucitation and cardiovascular support. These patients should be referred to Hospitals for better care!
2. In patients who remain febrile after treatment, consider other concomitant infections like typhus.

19. Schistosomiasis

Schistosomiasis is a disease caused by three major trematodes, which include *Schistsoma mansoni*, *Schistsoma japonicum and, Schistsoma haematobium*. The first two species inhabit venules of the intestines whereas the latter are found mostly in the venules of the urinary tract. Human infection occurs as a result of penetration of the unbroken skin by the free-swimming cercariae larva. This often occurs in individuals who have frequent contact with water bodies heavily infested with appropriate snail hosts.

Clinical features

- Acute symptoms are swimmer's itch and/or Katayama fever are seen in travelers from non-endemic areas.
- Chronic complications related to schistosomiasis are more common in endemic areas where individuals are at increased risk of a high burden of infection. Almost all chronic

complications of the disease are related to the presence of eggs in tissues which induce inflammation. Some of the manifestations are colonic polyps, huge hepatosplenomegally, portal hypertentions and its complications, pulmonary hypertension with corpulmoale, calcified urinary bladder and in some cases bladder cancer (S.hematobium is classified as a carcinogen).

- Symptoms and signs of intestinal schistosomiasis may include diarreahea and hepatosplenomegaly while urinary schistosomiasis may manifest with gross hematuria.

Investigations

- Stool or urine examination to look for the parasites(stool for S. mansoni and japonicum or urine for S.hematobium

Objectives

- Eradicate the infection
- Prevent complications (hepatosplenic schistosomiasis or obstructive uropathy)

Non pharmacologic

- None

Pharmacologic

First line

Praziquantel, 40 mg/kg in 2 divided doses 4-6 hours apart on one day OR 1200 mg P.O. as a single dose OR 2 divided doses for both *S. haematobium* and *S. mansoni*

ADRs: minor Gastro–intestinal upset.

C/Is: ocular cysticercoids.

Dosage forms: Tablet, 600 mg.

Alternatives

Metrifonate, 600 mg P.O. TID at 14 days interval for *S. haematobium.*

Dosage forms: Tablet, 100mg.

OR

Oxamniquine, 1250 mg (30 mg/kg) P.O. single dose for *S. mansoni*

Dosage forms: capsule, 250 mg; suspension, 250-mg/5 ml

20. Tetanus

Tetanus is a neurological syndrome caused by a neurotoxin, tetanospasmin, elaborated by *Clostridium tetani* at the site of injury. It can largely be prevented by appropriate immunization. Prognosis in all patients depends upon the severity of the disease, occurrence of complications and the setting.

Clinical Features

- The most common and important clinical features include trismus (lockjaw) localized or generalized muscular rigidity and spasm.
- The presence of arrhythmia, extreme oscillation in blood pressure, diaphoresis, laryngeal spasm and urinary retention may suggest autonomic dysfunction.

A short incubation period (time from injury to first symptom) of ≤4 days generally indicates severe disease. The period between the first symptom and the development of muscular spasms is termed the period of onset. Shorter periods of onset, particularly <48 h, are again associated with more severe forms of tetanus.

Investigations

- Clinical, based on the history and examination findings.

Severity Scoring: There are several severity scores used but the Ablett classification has been used most commonly.

Table 19: Ablett classification of severity of Tetanus*

Grading	Clinical Features
I- Mild	Mild to modrate trismus;general spasticity; no respiratory embarassement; no spasm; little or no dysphagia
II- Moderate	Moderate trismus; well marked rigidity;mild to moderate but short spasms; moderate respiratory embarrasement with RR greater than 30;mild dysphagia
III- Severe	Severe trismus;generalized spasticity; reflex prolonged spasms; increased RR greater than 40; apnoeic spells; severe dysphagia; tachycardia greater than 120.
IV- Very Severe	Grade III and violent autonomic disturbances involving the cadiovascular system. Severe hypertention and tachycardia altenating with relative hypotention and bradycardia, either of which may be persistent.

***Ablett JJL. Ellis M, ed. Symposium on Tetanus in Great Britain. 1967; 1-10.**

Treatment

Objectives

- Reduce spasms
- Prevent serious complications like laryngeal spasm

Patients with severe tetanus should be managed in the intensive care setting where mechanical ventilator and appropriate medication are available. This may necessittate referal of most patients to specialized centers.

21. Toxoplasmosis (CNS)

CNS Toxoplasmosis is an infection of the central nervous system by the protozoan *Toxoplasma gondii*. The disease develops in individuals with underlying immunodeficiency, usually occurring as a reactivation.

Clinical features

- Patients with cerebral toxoplasmosis typically present with headache confusion, fever and/or signs of focal neurological deficit.

Refer suspected patients for further evaluation and management!

22. Tuberculosis

Tuberculosisis is a chronic bacterial infection caused by a group of bacteria, *Mycobacteria*ae, the most common of which is Mycobacterium tuberculosis. Less frequently, it can be caused by Mycobacterium bovis and Mycobacterium africanum. Tuberculosis usually affects the lungs in which case it is called pulmonary TB. Although the lung is the most commonly affected organ, almost all parts of the body can be infected with this bacterium and in this case it is called extra-pulmonary TB. Common extra-pulmonary sites affected include the lymph nodes, pleura, spine, urinary tract, the brain, joints, bone and abdomen.

HIV infection has now become one of the most important risk factors for the development of active tuberculosis.

Causative organisms

- *M.tuberculosis*
- *M.bovis*
- *M.africanum*
- *M.canasi*

Clinical features

The clinical feature of tuberculosis is quite variable and depends on the specific organ affected by the disease. The symptoms of TB are grouped in to general, non-specific systemic symptoms and symptoms associated with the specific organ affected by TB.

The general symptoms of TB (pulmonary or extra-pulmonary):

- Weight loss
- fatigue, malaise
- low grade fever
- night sweats
- loss of appetite
- malnourished and chronically ill children with failure to thrive

Symptoms of Pulmonary tuberculosis; in addition to the general symptoms, patients with pulmonary TB present with the following symptoms and signs:

- Cough that lasts for more than 2 weeks with or without sputum production
- Chest pain
- haemoptysis

- difficulty of breathing

Symptoms and signs of extra-pulmonary TB; in addition to the general symptoms of TB, patients with extrapulmonary TB present with signs and symptoms specific to the organ affected:

- Tuberculous lymphadenitis: Slowly developing painless lymph node enlargement, initially firm and discrete, later become matted and fluctuant. The overlying skin may breakdown with the formation of abscesses and chronic discharging sinuses, which heal with scarring.
- Tuberculous pleurisy: pain while breathing in, dull lower chest pain, intermittent cough, breathlessness on exertion.
- TB of bones and/or joints: localized pain and/or swelling of insidious onset discharge of pus, muscle weakness, paralysis, and stiffness of joints.
- Abdominal TB: loss of appetite, weight loss, chronic abdominal pain, diarrhoea or constipation, mass in the abdomen, fluid in the abdominal cavity (ascites).
- Tuberculous meningitis: Headache, fever, vomiting, neck stiffness, impaired consciousness and mental confusion of insidious onset. Tuberculous meningitis remains a potentially devastating disease that is associated with a high mortality and sequelae, despite prompt initiation of adequate chemotherapy. HIV-infected patients appear to be at increased risk of developing tuberculous meningitis.
- TB of the spine: collapse of vertebral bodies results in kyphosis (gibbus). A paravertebral cold abscess may also be formed

N.B: Suspect tuberculosis in any person who presents with a history of cough of at least two weeks duration.

Investigations

- Sputum Direct light Smear Microscopy with Ziehl Nielsen staining is the mainstay of diagnostic methods to test for the presence of acid fast bacilli (AFB). Three sputum specimens collected and examined in two consecutive days (spot-early morning-spot) and result must be available on the second day.
- Light emitting diode (LED) microscopy with fluorescent staining is a newly introduced diagnostic tool to complement the conventional microscopy. It is recommended for centers with high case load as it saves time and improves sensitivity.

- Sputum culture and drug susceptibility test is a highly sensitive diagnostic method which permits detection of a minimum of 10 to 100 viable bacilli (usually a tenth of an ml); hence; the method allows diagnosis of less infectious cases. Culture remains the gold standard in mycobacterial detection and phenotypic identification of drug resistance.
- Line Probe Assay is a new test to identify the presence of specific mutations on the genes of TB bacilli which are responsible for Isoniazid and Rifampicin resistance. It is a rapid and accurate test to identify cases with MDR-TB.
- Gene Xpert MTB/RIF is a new, rapid and fully automated DNA/molecular diagnostic test to detect TB and Rifampicin drug resistance simultaneously. It is indicated for the diagnosis of TB in high MDR-TB and TB/HIV settings.
- Fine needle aspiration from accessible mass like peripheral enlarged lymph nodes and histopathological examination.
- Tissue biopsy from any body tissues such as serous membranes, skin, endometrium, bronchial, pleural, gastric or liver tissue for histophatological examination
- Other investigation: HIV test, ESR, CSF analysis,

A Case of tuberculosis is a definite case of TB or a patient whom a health worker has diagnosed TB and has decided to treat the patient with a full course of TB treatment.

A Definite/proven case of tuberculosis is a patient with two sputum smears (one sputum positive is enough for HIV positive patients) or culture positive for Mycobacterium tuberculosis. Definite case of tuberculosis is also defined as a patient with Mycobacterium tuberculosis complex identified from a clinical specimen, either by culture or by a newer method such as molecular line probe assay.

Patients with negative smears or when definite TB cannot be determined:

- Repeat sputum smear
- If all investigations, do not suggest TB, prescribe two weeks of adequate antibiotic treatment

Treatment

Objectives

- Cure the TB patient and restore quality of life and productivity
- Prevent death from active TB or its late effects

- Prevent TB relapse
- Prevent the development and transmission of drug resistance
- Decrease transmission

Non pharmacologic

- Counselling
- Good nutrition
- Adequate rest
- Admission for severely ill patients

Pharmacologic

Treatment of TB is with a combination of 4 or more anti-TB drugs. The treatment is standardized by putting patients into different treatment groups based on smear status and previous history of treatment for TB. Standardized treatment means that all patients in a defined group receive the same treatment regimen. TB treatment strategy is referred to as DOT indicating that treatment is given under direct observation of a health worker or treatment supporter daily throughout the course of treatment.

Treatment with 1st line anti-TB Drugs

TB Patients with strains susceptible to first line anti-TB drugs are treated with standardized first line treatment regimen either for 6 or 8 months, depending on the history of previous TB treatment

First line anti-TB drugs available for TB treatment in Ethiopia:

- Rifampicin(R);
- Ethambutol (E);
- Isoniazid (H);
- Pyrazinamide (Z) and
- Streptomycin (S)

The fixed dose combination (FDC) drugs available for adults and adolescents:

- RHZE 150/75/400/275 mg
- RHZ 150/75/400 mg
- RH 150/75 mg
- EH 400/150mg

TB drugs available as loose form:

- Ethambutol 400 mg;
- Isoniazid 300 mg;
- Streptomycin sulphate vials 1 gm

Table 20: Recommended Doses of First-Line Anti-tuberculosis Drugs

Drugs	Recommended dose	
	Dose and range(mg/kg)	**Maximum**(mg)
Isoniazid (H)	5 (4–6)	300
Rifampicin (R)	10 (8–12)	600
Pyrazinamide (Z)	25 (20–30)	2,000
Ethambutol (E)	15 (15–20)	1600
Streptomycin (S)	15 (12–18)	1000

TB treatment regimen with first line anti-TB drugs

1. **Treatment regimen for new patients:** newly diagnosed smear positive, smear negative and extrapulmonary TB patients never had treatment for TB, or have taken anti-TB drugs for less than 1 month. This regimen consists of 8 weeks (2 months) treatment with Rifampicin, Isoniazid, Pyrazinamide and Ethambutol during the intensive phase, followed by four months with Rifampicin and Isoniazid in the continuation phase (2RHZE/ 4RH). Other Previously treated Smear Negative PTB and EPTB cases (Case definition 'Other') who were previously cured or treatment completed will be treated with New TB patient regimen

Table 21: Anti TB Drugs Dosage of New TB cases for adults and adolescents

Patient's Weight in Kgs	Treatment Regimen and Dose	
	Intensive Phase 2RHZE	**Continuation Phase 4RH**
20-29	**1 ½**	**1 ½**
30-39	**2**	**2**
40-54	**3**	**3**
≥55	**4**	**4**

**The recommended dose in the weight range of 20-30kg children is different from those in adults due to diferences in age. Children older than 15 years will be managed as adults.*

Table 22: FDC dosing regimens for pediatric new cases

Weight (kg)	Intensive phase (2 months)			Continuation phase (4 months)		
	RHZ (60,30,150)	RHZE (150,75,400,275)	E (100)	RH (150,75)	RH (60,30)	RH (60,60)
5 to 7	1		1		1	1
8 to 14	2		2		2	1
15 to 20	3		3		3	2
21 to 30*		2		2		2

2. **Treatment regimen for preiviously treated patients (Re-treatment Regimen)**: patients that have received 1 month or more of anti-TB drugs in the past. Registration groups for previously treated patients are based on the outcome of their prior treatment course: failure, relapse and default. This regimen consists of eight weeks (2 months) treatment with Streptomycin, Rifampicin, Isoniazid, Pyrazinamide and Ethambutol followed by four weeks (1 month) treatment with Rifampicin, Isoniazid, Pyrazinamide and Ethambutol during the intensive phase, followed by five months with Rifampicin, Isoniazid and Ethambutol: 2SRHZE/1RHZE/5(RH)E. patients who had defaulted treatment and returned back with

smear negative or Extra-pulmonary TB (Case definition 'others' are treated with re-treatment regimen.

Table 23: Dose regimens of anti TB Drugs for previously treated cases of adults and adolescents

Patient's Weight in Kgs	Dose regimens			
	Intensive Phase 2SRHZE/1RHZE		Continuation Phase 5 (RH)E	
	S: streptomycin	RHZE	RH	E
20-29	½ (0.5 g)	1 ½	1 ½	$1^{1/2}$
30-39	½(0.5 g)	2	2	$1^{1/2}$
40-54	¾ (0.75g)	3	3	2
≥ 55	1 g	4	4	3

Table 24: FDC dose regimens for Retreatment Cases for children

Weight (kg)	Intensive phase (3Months)			Continuation phase (5Months)				
	RHZ (60,30,150)	RHZE (150,75,400,275)	E (100)	RH (60,30)	RH (150,75)	RH (60,60)	E (100)	E (400)
5 to 7	1		1	1		1	1	
8 to 14	2		2	2		1	2	
15 to 20	3		3	3		2	3	
21 to 30*		2			2	2		1

* *Tthe recommended dosese in the weight range of 20-30kg children is different is different from those in adults due to diferencexs in age. Children older than 15 years will be managed as adults.*

Table 25: ADRs, precautions, contra-indications and drug interactions of 1st line Anti-TB drugs

Drug	ADRs	C/Is	D/Is	P/Cs
Isoniazid (H)	Skin rash, Sleepiness and lethargy, Peripheral neuropathy (paraesthesia, numbness and limb pain), Hepatitis. Rare: Convulsions, pellagra, arthralgia, anaemia, lupoid reactions		$Al(OH)_3$ decreases its absorption, H Inhibits metabolism of phenytoin, diazepam, carbamazepine and warfarin hence increases the serum concentrations	Drug must be taken orally on daily basis, drug should not be given in divided doses; slow and rapid inactivators (acetylators) of isoniazid; patients infected with HIV are at higher risk of ADR
Rifampicin (R)	Gastrointestinal reactions (abdominal pain, nausea, vomiting), Hepatitis,	Known MDR-TB cases	Increase metabolism of warfarin, corticosteroids,	preferably be given at least 30 minutes before meal, restrict availability of

	Generalized cutaneous reactions, Thrombocytopenic purpura. Rare: Osteomalacia, pseudomembranous colitis, pseudoadrenal crisis, acute renal failure, shock, haemolytic anaemia		antifungal agents protease inhibitors, non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors, oral hypoglycaemic agents, oral contraceptives hence reduces serum levels of these drugs,	rifampicin for programmatic use to prevent resistance
Ethambotol (E)	Retrobulbar/Optic neuritis, (impairment of vision, red–green blindness, blurring) Rare : Generalized cutaneous reactions, arthralgia, peripheral neuropathy, Very rarely: hepatitis	Patients with rrenal failure		must be manufactured and stored appropraitely to prevent absorption of moisture
Pyrazinamide (Z)	Arthralgia, Hepatitis Rare: Gastrointestinal reactions, cutaneous reactions, sideroblastic anaemia	patients with liver disorder		
Streptomycin (S)	Minor: Pain, rash, induration at injection site, Numbness around the mouth and tingling soon after the injection Major: Cutaneous hypersensitivity, Vestibular and auditory nerve damage to the patient & fetus in pregnancy, Renal damage	Pregnancy Patients with rrenal failure		For patients over 60 years of age, the maximum dose of streptomycin is 0.75 gm

Table 26: Symptom based approach to the management of Anti-TB drugs induced Adverse effectss

Adverse-effects		**Responsible Drugs**	**Management**
Minor (Continue Anti-TB drug/s)	Anorexia, nausea, abdominal pain	Rifampicin; Pyrazinamide	Give tablets with small meals or before bed time
	Joint pains	Pyrazinamide	NSAIDs
	Burning sensation in feet	Isoniazid	Pyridoxine 100mg daily
	Orange/red urine	Rifampicin	Reassurance
Major (Stop the responsible drug/s)	Itching, skin reaction	Streptomycin; Rifampicin or isoniazid	Stop and replace with ethambutol; Stop, then reintroduce with desensitization[1]
	Deafness	Streptomycin	Stop streptomycin and replace with Ethambutol
	Dizziness (vertigo, imbalance and nystagmus)	Streptomycin	Stop streptomycin and replace with Ethambutol
	Jaundice; hepatitis	Most anti-TB drugs	Stop all anti-TB drugs and refer
	Vomiting and confusion	Most anti-TB drugs	Stop all anti-TB drugs and refer
	Visual impairment	Ethambutol	Stop Ethambutol and refer
	Shock, purpura and acute renal failure	Rifampicin	Stop Rifampicin and refer

Precautions during treatment with 1st line anti-TB drugs

Treatment of patients with renal failure:

Consult expert, if not possible to consult then avoid Streptomycin & Ethambutol; therefore the recommended regimen is 2RHZ/4RH.

Treatment of patients with (previously known) liver disorder (e.g. hepatitis, cirrhosis):

Most anti-TB drugs can cause liver damage. Do not give Pyrazinamide because this is the most hepatotoxic anti-TB drug. Isoniazid & Rifampicin plus one or two non-hepatotoxic drugs such as Streptomycin and Ethambutol, can be used for total treatment duration of eight months. If the patient has severe liver damage, an alternative regimen is Streptomycin plus Isoniazid plus Ethambutol in the initial phase followed by Isoniazid & Ethambutol in the continuation phase with a total duration of 12 months. The dose of Rifampicin for these patients should not exceed 8mg per kg and Isoniazid dose should not exceed 4 mg per kg. Hence, for TB patients with liver disease, recommended regimens are: 2SERH/6RH or 9RHE. In the case of jaundice, the treatment regimen should be changed to 2 SEH /10 EH.

Pericardial tuberculosis

For patients with pericardial tuberculosis, same regimen (as pulmonary) of anti-TB treatment is recommended (need expert opinion in diagnosis & treatment).

Corticosteroids are recommended as adjunctive therapy for 11 weeks during the first period of anti-tuberculosis therapy.

Table 27: Prednisone dose for adult TB patients with TB pericarditis

Weeks of treatment	Prednisolone dosage
1-4	60mg/day
5-8	30mg/day
9-10	15mg/day
11th week	5mg/day (then discontinue at the end of the 11th week)

Pleural tuberculosis

Tuberculous empyema, a chronic, active infection of the pleural space containing a large number of tubercle bacilli, usually occurs when a cavity ruptures into the pleural space. Treatment consists of drainage (often requiring a surgical procedure) and anti-TB drugs.

Tuberculous meningitis

Patients presenting with more severe brain impairment such as drowsiness, neurological signs, or coma have a greater risk of neurological sequelae and a higher mortality.

Chemotherapy should be initiated with **RHZS** in an initial phase for 2 months and RH should be continued for 7 to 10 months in the continuation phase.

Adjunctive corticosteroid therapy is recommended for all patients. The recommended regimen is dexamethasone in an initial dose of 8 mg/day for children weighing less than 25 kg and 12 mg/day for children weighing 25 kg or more and for adults. The initial dose is given for 3 weeks and then decreased gradually during the subsequent 3 weeks.

Prednisolone at a dose of 2-4mg/kg/day for children; 60mg/day for adults, for 3 weeks, then tapered of gradually over the following three weeks is used as an alternative

Treatment during pregnancy and breast-feeding

- Avoid Streptomycin because of the risk of toxic effects on the fetus.
- Chemotherapy should not be discontinued during Breast-feeding.
- When a breast-feeding mother has PTB, the infant should, regardless of prior vaccination with BCG, be given chemo-prophylaxis and then be vaccinated with BCG if not vaccinated before.

Treatment of patients also infected with HIV

- HIV infection and Active TB disease should be started on HAART irrespective of CD4 cell count

Patients infected with HIV usually respond equally well to TB treatment as those without HIV infection, with a few exceptions:

- They should always be treated with short course chemotherapy.

- Initiation of ART in the course of treatment for tuberculosis should follow the WHO guidelines

Table 1-Guideline for management of patients presenting with TB before initiation of ART

	Recommendation	Preferred ARV regimen
CD4 count <500cells/mm^3	▪ Start TB treatment. ▪ Start ART as soon as TB treatment is tolerated (usually between 2-8 weeks of TB treatment)[1]	EFV containing regimen is preferred.[2] However, if medicines are unavailable or there are problems with EFV (adverse effects with intolerance and risk of pregnancy) use triple Nucleoside regimen with caution (3). If patient develops ABC hypersensitivity continue NVP but monitor liver function every month[3].
CD4 count <500cells/mm^3	● Start TB treatment ● Defer ART	− Re-assess eligibility for ART[4]
CD4 not available	− Start TB treatment. − Defer ART	● Start ART after determining CD4 count

[1] It is recommended that ART be initiated as soon as TB therapy is tolerated. Ideally, this may be as early as 2 weeks and not later than 8 weeks.

[2]Patients who present with TB before initiation of ART the preferred regimen are EFV containing first line regimen. If patients develop TB while on ART for 3-6 months, continue ART throughout TB treatment and patients with NVP based treatment should be shifted to EFV.

The recommended regimens include EFV containing regimens: TDF/3TC/EFV or ZDV/3TC/EFV.

[3] NVP (200 mg daily for 2 weeks followed by 200 mg twice daily) may be used in place of EFV in absence of other options. NVP containing Regimens include: TDF/3TC/NVP or ZDV/3TC/NVP.

[4]Obtain CD4 cell count every six months for all patients including those with WHO stage 1 and 2 HIV infections

Treatment monitoring

- Health worker or a community TB treatment supporter must observes and ensure each patient swallows every single dose of the drugs; this is called **directly observed treatment or DOT.**

- During treatment follow-up, monitoring of patient's progress involves: clinical assessment of signs & symptoms, weight measurement and follow-up AFB sputum examination.
- Follow-up sputum examination is done for all new smear positive TB cases at 2nd motnh, 5th month and 6th month. If smear result is positive at 2nd month repeat sputum smear examination is done at the 3rd month and if it is still positive, sample must be sent for DST. If smear result is positive at 5th month or later, it is declared that treatment has failed and patient will be started on re-treatment regimen and sputum is examined for DST. If smear is negative at 5th and 6th month of follow-up, patient is declared cured.
- Follow-up sputum examination is done for all previously treated smear positive TB cases at 3rd motnh, 5th month and 8th month. If smear result is positive at 3rd month, sample must be sent for DST. If smear result is positive at 5th month or later, it is declared that treatment has failed and patient must be started on 2nd line treatment regimen pending the DST result. If smear is negative at 5th and 8th month of follow-up, patient is declared cured.

Drug resistant TB

TB is considered drug-resistant (DR) when the TB causative agent (mycobacterium tuberculosis) is not killed by one or more of the available anti-TB drugs. **Drug-resistant TB can be primary or secondary (acquired). Primary resistance is drug resistance among new cases; it is** resistance to one or more of anti-TB drugs in a person who has never been previously treated for TB. **Secondary resistance** is **drug resistance among previously treated cases;** in people diagnosed with TB who start anti-TB treatment and subsequently acquire resistance to one or more of the drugs used during the treatment. Both drug susceptible and resistant MTB spread in the same manner.

There are four different types of drug resistance:

- **Mono-resistance**: Rresistance to one anti-tuberculosis drug.
- **Poly-resistance**: Resistance to more than one anti-tuberculosis drug, other than Isoniazid and Refampicin.
- **Multidrug-resistance (MDR)-TB**: Resistance to at least isoniazid and rifampicin.

- **Extensive drug-resistance (XDR-TB)**: Resistance to any of the fluoroquinolones, and at least one of the three injectable Second Line Drugs (capreomycin, kanamycin and Amikacin), in addition to resistance to INH andrefampicin
- **Total drug-resistance (TDR-TB): resistance to all anti TB drugs.**

The **clinical features** of drug susceptible and drug resistant TB are the same.

Investigations

- direct smear microscopy
- Line Probe Assay (LPA) directly from the sputum specimen or cultured sample
- Culture and DST
- Gene Xpert MTB/RIF test
- CBC, HIV test, urinalysis, FBS, CXR,
- LFT, RFT, Serum electrolyte,
- TSH, HCG,
- Audiometric test

Definitive diagnosis of drug-resistant TB depends on laboratory diagnosis through Drug Susceptibility testing (DST); it requires that M. tuberculosis is isolated and drug susceptibility test is completed.

Treatment of MDR-TB

Objectives

- Cure the TB patient and restore quality of life and productivity
- Prevent death from active TB or its late effects
- Prevent TB relapse
- Prevent the development and transmission of extensive drug resistance
- Decrease transmission

Non pharmacologic

- Adherence counselling
- Psychosocial and emotional support
- Nutritional support
- Admission of severe cases

Pharmacologic

MDR-TB Patients with strains resistant to at least refampcin and Isoniazid are treated with standardized second line treatment regimen for at least 18-24 months. Drug Resistance Survey (DRS) data from representative patient populations are used to design Standardized treatment regimen. The treatment approach that is widely used in Ethiopia is the standardized treatment regimen where all patients in a defined group or category receive the same regimen.

Standard MDR-TB Treatment Regimen in Ethiopia

Patients with confirmed MDR-TB disease must get the drug regimen:

8E-Z-Km (Am)-Lfx-Eto-Cs/12 E-Z-Lfx–Eto–Cs

Threre are five groups of anti-TB drugs that can be used for the treatment of Drug Resistance-TB as shown the table beow:

Table 29: Grouping of anti-tuberculosis drugs and dose for treatment of drug resistance TB

Drugs (Abbrevation, common formulation)	<33 kg	33-50 kg	50-70 kg	>70 kg
Group 1: FIRST-LINE ORAL ANTITUBERCULOSIS DRUGS				
Isoniazid (H): 100 mg, 300 mg tabs	4–6 mg/kg daily or 8–12 mg 3 x wk	200–300 mg daily or 450–600 mg 3 x wk	300 mg daily or 600 mg 3	300 mg daily or 600 mg 3 x wk
Rifampicin (R): 150mg, 300 mg tabs	10–20 mg/kg daily	450–600 mg	600 mg	600 mg
Ethambutol (E): 100 mg, 400 mg tabs	25 mg/kg daily	800–1200 mg	1200–	1600– 2000 mg
Pyrazinamide (Z): 500 mg tabs	30–40 mg/kg daily	1000–1750 mg	1750–2000 mg	2000– 2500 mg
GROUP 2: INJECTABLE ANTITUBERCULOSIS DRUGS				
Streptomycin (S): 1 g (vial)	15–20 mg/kg daily	500–750 mg	1000 mg	1000 mg
Kanamycin (Km): 1 g vial	15–20 mg/kg daily	500–750 mg	1000 mg	1000 mg

Amikacin (Am): 1 g vial	15–20 mg/kg daily	500–750 mg	1000 mg	1000 mg
Capreomycin (Cm): 1g vial	15–20 mg/kg daily	500–750 mg	1000 mg	1000 mg
GROUP 3: FLUOROQUINOLONES				
Ofloxacin	15-20 mg/kg daily	800 mg	800 mg	800–1000 mg
Levofloxacin (Lfx): 250, 500 mg tabs	7.5-10 mg/kg daily	750 mg	750 mg	750–1000 mg
Moxifloxacin (Mfx): 400 mg tabs	7.5-10 mg/kg daily	400 mg	400 mg	400 mg
GROUP 4: ORAL BACTERIOSTATIC SECOND-LINE ANTITUBERCULOSIS DRUGS				
Ethionamide (Eto): 250 mg tabs	15–20 mg/kg daily	500 mg	750 mg	750–1000 mg
Protionamide (Pto): 250 mg tabs	15–20 mg/kg daily	500 mg	750 mg	750–1000 mg
Cycloserine (Cs): 250 mg tabs	15–20 mg/kg daily	500 mg	750 mg	750–1000 mg
Terizidone (Trd): 300 mg	15–20 mg/kg daily	600 mg	600 mg	900 mg
P-aminosalicylic acid (PAS): 4 g tabs	150 mg/kg daily	8 g	8 g	8-12 g
Sodium PAS	Dosing can vary with manufacture and preparation: check dose recommended by the manufacturer			
GROUP 5: AGENTS WITH UNCLEAR ROLE IN DR-TB TREATMENT (NOT RECOMMENDED BY WHO FOR ROUTINE USE IN MDR-TB PATIENTS). OPITMAL DOSES FOR DR- NOT YET ESTABLISHED				
Thioacetazone (Th)	Usual dose is 150 mg for adults			
Clofazimine (Cfz)	Usual adult dose is 100 mg to 300 mg daily. Some clinicians begin at 300 mg daily and decrease to 100 mg after 4 to 6 weeks.			
Linezolid (Lzd)	Usual adult dose is 600 mg twice daily. Most reduce the dose to 600 mg once a day after 4 to 6 weeks to decrease side effects			
Amoxicillin/Clavulanate (Amx/Clv)	Dosages for DR-TB not well defined. Normal adult dose 875/125 mg twice a day or 500/125 mg three times a day. Dosages of 1000/250 have			
Thioacetazone (Thz)	Usual adult dose is 150 mg			
Imipenem/cilastatin (Ipm/Cln)	Usual adult dose is 500-1000 mg IV every 6 hours			
Clarithromycin (Clr)	Usual adult dose is 500 mg twice daily			
High-dose isoniazid (High-dose H)	16-20 mg/kg daily			

Table 30*:* Symptom based approach to the management of 2nd line Anti-TB drugs induced adverse-effects

ADR	Suspected agent	Management	Remarks
Nausea, vomiting	**Eto/Pto, PAS**, H, E, Z, Cfz	1. Assess for dehydration; and rehydrate if indicated. 2. If mild symptoms and no signs of dehydration, o Advise patient to take drugs with porridge. o Initiate antiemetic therapy if needed (Metoclopromide) o Encourage patient to continue treatment o Encourage patients to increase fluid intake(water, juice, tea) 3. If there is dehydration or persistence of symptoms, • Initiate rehydration accordingly • Refer patient to treatment initiating centre	1. Nausea and vomiting is very common in early weeks of therapy and usually abate with time and adjunctive therapy. 2. Electrolytes should be monitored and replaced if vomiting is severe. 3. Reversible upon discontinuation of suspected agent. 4. Clofazimine can cause severe abdominal pain and acute abdomen. This is rare, but if occurs, clofazimine should be suspended.
Gastritis	**PAS, Eto/Pto**	1. Give antiTb drugs with small food, avoid caffeine, cigarettes and assess for signs of severity 2. If mild symptoms give H2-blockers, proton-pump inhibitors, or antacids. 3. If severe (severe persistent dyspepsia, hematemesis/coffee ground vomitus, black tarry stool, initiate rehydrationand refer.	1. Severe gastritis, as manifested by haematemesis, melaena or haematechezia, is rare. 2. Dosing of antacids should be carefully timed so as to not interfere with the absorption of antituberculosis drugs (take 2 hours before or 3 hours after antituberculosis medications). 3. Reversible upon discontinuation of suspected agent(s).
Hearing loss	**Km, Am, Cm**	1. Confirm that this is not due to ear wax or other conductive problems. 2. Check whether patient has history of hearing loss previously 3. Document hearing loss and compare with baseline audiometry if available. 4. Refer if it is new event or worsening of complaint.	1. Patients with previous exposure to aminoglycosides may have baseline hearing loss. In such patients, audiometry may be helpful at the start of MDR-TB therapy. 2. Hearing loss is generally not reversible. 3. The risk of further hearing loss must be weighed against the risks of stopping the injectable in the treatment regimen. 4. While the benefit of hearing aids is minimal to moderate in auditory toxicity, consider a trial use to determine if a patient with hearing loss can benefit from their use
Electrolyte disturbance (Low K and Mg) Manifesting as fatigue, muscle	**Cm**, Km, Am,	1. Check potassium (if available). 2. If potassium is low also check magnesium (and calcium if hypocalcaemia is suspected). 3. Initiate potassium supplement	1. If severe hypokalaemia is present, consider hospitalization. 2. Amiloride 5–10 mg QD or Spironolactone 25 mg QD

cramp, muscle spasm		if K+> 3.0meq/L) and monitor Potassium weekly 4. Correct if there are contributing causes of hypokalemia (Vomiting, diarrhea) 5. Refer if K+<3.0meq/L	may decrease potassium and magnesium wasting and is useful in refractory cases. 3. Oral potassium replacements can cause significant nausea and vomiting. Oral magnesium may cause diarrhoea.
Peripheral neuropathy	**Cs, H**, Km, Am, Cm, Eto/Pto	1. Increase pyridoxine to maximum daily dose (200 mg per day). 2. Initiate therapy with tricyclic antidepressants such as amitriptyline. Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs or acetaminophen may help alleviate symptoms. 3. If no improvement refer	1. Patients with co-morbid disease (e.g. diabetes, HIV, alcohol dependence) may be more likely to develop peripheral neuropathy, but these conditions are not contraindications to the use of the agents listed here. 2. Neuropathy may be irreversible; however, some patients may experience improvement when offending agents are suspended
Seizure	**Cs**, H, FQs	1. Suspend suspected agent pending resolution of seizures. 2. Initiate anticonvulsant therapy (e.g. Phenytoin, Valproic Acid). 3. Increase pyridoxine to maximum daily dose (200 mg per day). 4. Refer after controlling seizure	1. Anticonvulsant is generally continued until MDR-TB treatment is completed or suspected agent discontinued. 2. History of previous seizure disorder is not a contraindication to the use of agents listed here if a patient's seizures are well controlled and/or the patient is receiving anticonvulsant therapy. 3. Patients with history of previous seizures may be at increased risk for development of seizures during MDR-TB therapy
Psychosis	**Cs, H**, FQs, Eto/Pto	1. Stop suspected agent (usually cycloserine) immediately 2. Initiate antipsychotic therapy. 3. Refer to TIC	1. Some patients will need to continue antipsychotic treatment throughout MDR-TB therapy. 2. Previous history of psychiatric disease is not a contra-indication to the use of agents listed here but may increase the likelihood of psychotic symptoms developing during treatment. 3. Psychotic symptoms are generally reversible upon completion of MDR-TB treatment or cessation of the offending agent.
Jaundice/Hepatitis	**Z, H, R**, Eto/Pto,	1. Stop all therapy pending	1. History of previous hepatitis

	PAS, E, FQs	resolution of hepatitis. 2. Eliminate other potential causes of hepatitis. 3. Refer to the TIC	should be carefully analysed to determine most likely causative agent(s); these should be avoided in future regimens. 2. Generally reversible upon discontinuation of suspected agent
Nephrotoxicity (body swelling, decreasing urine, new onset or worsening hypertension)	**Km, Am, Cm**	1. Discontinue Injectable. 2. Refer to the TIC	1. History of diabetes or renal disease is not a contraindication to the use of the agents listed here, although patients with these co-morbidities may be at increased risk for developing renal failure. 2. Renal impairment may be permanent
Depression	**Cs**, FQs, H, Eto/Pto	1. Improve socioeconomic conditions. 2. Group or individual counseling. 3. Initiate antidepressant therapy. 4. Refer if severe depression	1. Socioeconomic conditions and chronic illness should not be underestimated as contributing factors to depression. 2. Depressive symptoms may fluctuate during therapy and may improve as illness is successfully treated. 3. History of previous depression is not a contraindication to the use of the agents listed but may increase the likelihood of depression developing during treatment.
Hypothyroidism (swelling, slowing, fatigue, day time sleepiness)	**PAS, Eto/Pto**	Check TFT if available to confirm, Refer to TIC	1. Completely reversible with discontinuation of the drug 2. More frequent with combination drug therapy
Blurring of vision	**E, Eto**	Refer	
Arthralgia	**Z, FQ**	• Initiate therapy with non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs(e.g Ibuprofen) • Refer if sever or no improvement.	

Medical Referrals and Indications for Hospitalization

Referral of TB patients

A TB and/or leprosy patient is said to be **referred** when they are sent to another health facility temporarily for better diagnosis, consultation & management and/or other programmatic reasons.

Reasons for Patient referral:

- For diagnosis (X-ray, histo-pathology, etc)
- For better management (serious side effect management, comorbid conditions, in-patient care, MDR-TB, etc)
- Programmatic (to initiate treatment after diagnosis, patient preference, etc)

Indications for Admission of TB patients

In the majority of cases, admission is not necessary for TB patients. However, admission may be indicated when there is:

- Severe clinical deterioration of the patient's condition
- Tuberculosis related complications like massive hemoptysis, pneumothorax, empyema
- Serious side-effects such as jaundice or severe allergic skin reaction
- Severe comorbid conditions diseases such as uncontrolled or complicated diabetes, kidney failure, chronic liver diseases

Prevention of Tuberculosis

INH prophylaxis (IPT)

- Isoniazid is given to individuals with latent infection with *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* in order to prevent progression to active disease.
- Screening for exclusion of active TB in HIV infected persons, is the single most important step that should precede the decision to initiate IPT.

23. Typhoid Fever

Typhoid fever is an acute febrile illness caused mainly by *Salmonella typhi*. The mode of transmission is via contaminated food or water.

Clinical features

- Gradual increase in body temperature associated with headache, malaise and chills.
- Physical findings include fever, splenomegaly and hepatomegaly.
- Sometimes it may cause outbreaks.

Investigations

- Clinical
- Serological examination, such as the Widal test may be used as an adjunt to diagnosis in the proper clinical setup particularly in children less than 10y and travelers from non-endemic areas. The Widal test is, however, characterized by false positive results.

Treatment

Objectives

- Treat the infection

- Prevent chronic carriage

Non pharmacologic

None

Pharmacologic

Symptomatic treatment: Use of antipyretics, e.g. paracetamol to control fever.

(For ADRs, C/Is, P/Cs, D/Is and dosage forms, see page 109)

First line

Ciprofloxacin, 500 mg P.O., BID for 14 days

(For ADRs, C/Is, P/Cs, D/Is and dosage forms, see page 354)

Alternative

Amoxicillin, 1g, P.O.QID., for children: 20 – 40 mg/kg/day P.O. in 3 divided doses for 14 days (For ADRs, C/Is, P/Cs, D/Is and dosage forms, see page 187)

OR

Chloramphenicol, 500mg P.O. QID, for 14 days: For children: 25mg/kg.

OR

Sulfamethoxazole+trimethoprim, 800 mg/160 mg P.O. BID for 14 days.

For children 6 weeks – 5 months, 100/20 mg; 6 months – 5 yrs, 200/40 mg; 6 – 12 years, 400/80 mg BID

(For ADRs, C/Is, P/Cs, D/Is and dosage forms, see page 85)

OR

For severe cases: These patients may need referral to Hospitals for better care and support!

Ciprofloxacin, 400 mg I.V., BID for 14 days

(For ADRs, C/Is, P/Cs, D/Is and dosage forms, see page 354*)*

OR

For severe cases which are fluoroquinolone resistance:

Ceftriaxone, 2g QD as a single dose OR in 2 divided doses I.M. OR I.V. for 7-10 days.

(For ADRs, C/Is, P/Cs, D/Is and dosage forms, see page 86)

OR

Chloramphenicol, 1g, IV bolus QID until 48 hrs after fever has settled, followed by 500 mg P.O., QID for a total of 14 days. For children: 25mg/kg, IV bolus QID, until 48 hrs after fever has settled, followed by 525 mg/kg P.O., QID for a total of 14 days.

Adjunct Corticosteroid treatment: This is recommended only for patients with evidences of CNS involvement (delirium, coma) or shock

First line

Dexamethasone, 3mg/kg IV initially, followed by 1mg/kg IV Q 6hrs for 48hrs total

(This is prefered in patients with severe disease)

(For ADRs, C/Is, P/Cs, D/Is and dosage forms, see page 386)

OR

Prednisolone, 20-40mg po (or equivalent) once daily for the first three days of antibiotic treatment. (For ADRs, C/Is, P/Cs, D/Is and dosage forms, see page 192)

24. Typhus

Typhus is a disease caused by *rickettisial organisms.* There are two types of epidemiologically distinct typhus. One caused by R.prowazekii is transmitted by a body louse and is known to casue epidemic typhus and the other caused by R.typhi is transmitted by tick and causes endemic typhus.

Clinical features

The clinical presentation of both types is similar and cause an acute febrile illness characterized by:

- an abrupt onset of fever, severe headache and prostration.
- Important differential diagnosis includes relapsing fever, bacterial meningitis, and typhoid fever.
- It is a disease commonly seen among destitute individuals with poor personal hygiene.

Investigation

- The Weil Felix serology test with demonstration of a rising/high titer.

Treatment

Objectives

- Treat the infection and prevent complications

Non pharmacologic

- delousing

Pharmacologic

First line

Doxycycline, 200mg P.O. in a single or 2 divided doses for 7-10 days

(For ADRs, C/Is, P/Cs, D/Is and dosage forms, see page 125)

OR

Tetracycline, 250mg, P.O.QID for 7-10 days

(For ADRs, C/Is, P/Cs, D/Is and dosage forms, see page 188)

Alternatives

Chloramphenicol, 500mg po QID for 7 days. For children: 25mg/Kg

25. Varicella (Chicken Pox)

The varicella virus causes two distinct syndromes in humans: a primary illness called chicken pox, which most often occurs in children and is relatively benign, and a second distinct syndrome called herpes zoster, which occurs in older adults or immunecompromized hosts and is due to reactivation of the dormant virus in the nerves. Herpes zoster causes significant morbidity due to the intense and sometimes long-standing pain that it causes. It has become more significant in recent years due to its propensity to affect patients with HIV infection. Herpes zoster in a young person is highly predictive of HIV infection and is a WHO clinical stage 2 condition.

Clinical features

- Prodrome of fever, malaise, nausea, "flu-like" illness. 2–5 days later a generalized, itchy rash appears.
- Crops of papules-vesicles, then crusted lesions appear all over, sparing the palms and soles.
- Lesions co-exist in different stages of progression, i.e. new papules appear when older lesions are already crusted. Intense itching occurs.

Complications are more often seen in patients who acquire the infection as adults, and particularly in pregnant women. Complications may include pneumonia,encephalitis,hepatitis or hemorrhagic syndromes.

Varicella in pregnancy carries a high risk of complications. If acquired before 28 weeks gestation, it will cause congenital abnormalities in the child (also called congenital varicella syndrome). If acquired around the time of birth, it can cause neonatal varicella, which carries a high rate of pneumonia and other complications.

Treatment

Objectives

- Prevent complications

Non pharmacologic

- None

Pharmacologic

In adults including pregnant women with rash and no evidence of diseminated disease including pneumonia and encephalitis:

Oral acyclovir, 800 mg 5 times daily for 7 days.

(For ADRs, C/Is, P/Cs, D/Is and dosage forms, see page 355)

Treatment should be started as early as possible, ideally less than 24 hours after the start of symptoms. For oral treatment, the value of starting after 24 hours is not well established

In immunocompromised adults or those with disseminated disease, refer to Hospitals for better treatment!

NB: The rash can be pruritic and this can be treated with appropriate anti-histamines.

Herpes zoster

Clinical features

- Painful vesicular rash in a dermatomal distribution of a nerve supply that does not cross the midline.
- Pain sometimes comes before the appearance of the rash.
- Vesicles form in groups and progress to crusted lesions after a few days.
- Most common areas: trunk, particularly the fl anks, and forehead.
- Can involve the eye and cause corneal scarring and blindness.
- HIV patients have more frequent multidermal involvement, involvement of the trigeminal nerve, presence of systemic symptoms, and have a higher risk of disseminated disease.
- Myelitis, meningitis, and encephalitis with headache, fever, neck stiffness, altered motor and sensory function.
- Guillain-Barre syndrome.

Complications

- Blindness due to corneal involvement.
- Post-herpetic neuralgia: chronic pain in the area where the lesions occurred that can last for months to years after the acute episode.

Treatment

Objectives

- Prevent post herpetic neuralgia

Non pharmacologic

- Local lesion care with daily bathing with soap and water.
- Isolation of the patient to avoid spreading the virus. Contact should be avoided until all lesions are crusted over.

Pharmacologic

- **Aciclovir** 800 mg 5 times daily for 7 days can be considered for all adults, and is recommended for all HIV-positive adults. Start acyclovir within 72 hours from the onset of symptoms.
- **Paracetamol** for fever
- **Antihistamines or calamine lotion** may be used to reduce itching
- **Amitriptyline** 25–50 mg before bed for neuropathic pain and post-herpetic neuralgia.Secondary bacterial infections may require antibiotics.

N.B. For ophthalmic involvement, topical acyclovir, 3% eye ointment applied into the eye every 4 hours should be given.

CHAPTER VII: KIDNEY AND GENITOURINARY TRACT DISORDERS

1. Acute Kidney Injury

Acute kidney injury (AKI) has now replaced the term acute renal failure and a staging system has been proposed to allow earlier detection and management of AKI. The new terminology enables healthcare professionals to consider the disease as a spectrum of injury than only the end of the spectrum i.e. failure.

Acute kidney injury is diagnosed when one of the following criteria is met

- Serum creatinine rises by ≥ 0.3mg/dl within 48 hours **or**
- Serum creatinine rises ≥ 1.5 fold from the baseline, which is known or presumed to have occurred within one week **or**
- urine output is < 0.5ml/kg/hr for >6 consecutive hours

The causes of AKI have traditionally been divided into three broad categories:

1) **Prerenal azotemia**- Hypovolemia, Heart failure, liver failure, altered renal autoregulation (NSAIDS, ACE inhibitors)
2) **Intrinsic renal** – Ischemic acute tubular necrosis (ATN), nephrotoxic ATN (aminoglycoside, intravenous iodinated contrast, Rhabdomyolsis, Hemodialysis), Acute glomerulonephritis, Acute interstitial nephritis
3) **Post renal**- Bladder outlet obstruction, bilateral pelviureteral obstruction

Whenever a diagnosis of AKI is made the specific etiology/etiologies should be carefully searched.

Clinical features

- The clinical features of AKI are dominated by those of the underlying cause unless the AKI is severe.
- Oliguria/Anuria
- Fatigue
- Peripheral edema, pulmonary edema, pleural effusion or ascites
- Pericardial effusion
- Decreased appetite, nausea and vomiting
- Hiccups

- Mucocutaneous bleeding
- Change in mental status/flapping tremor/seizure

Investigations and treatment- do the following and refer

- Urinalysis
- Correct hypovolemia
- Insert indwelling urinary bladder catheter
- Discontinue nephrotoxic medications(NSAIDS, ACEI, Gentamycin)

2. Urinary Tract Infection

Urinary tract infection (UTI) refers to the presence of microorganisms in higher number to cause invasion of the urinary tract (UT) epithelium and inflammation that cannot be accounted for by contamination.

UTI is classified in different important ways that have implication to treatment and outcome

- According to anatomic site of involvement:
    - **Lower UTI**: cystitis, urethritis, prostatitis
    - **Upper UTI**: pyelonephritis, involving the kidneys
- According to the presence of structural urinary tract problems
    - **Uncomplicated UTI**: UTI that occurs in individuals who lack structural or functional abnormalities in the UT that interfere with the normal flow of urine.Mostly in healthy females of childbearing age.
    - **Complicated UTI**: UTI that occurs in individulas with structural or functional abnormalities in the UT that can interefere with normal flow of urine such as congenital distortion of the UT, a stone, a catheter, prostatic hypertrophy, obstruction, or neurological deficit. UTI in men are usually complicated.
- **Recurrent UTI**- referes to multiple symptomatic UTIs with asymptomatic periods in between. It is considered significant when there two or more symptomatic episodes per year or it interferes with patient's quality of life. It is usually a reinfection than a relapse
- **Asymptomatic bacteriuria**- Bacteiruria > 10^5 bacteria/ml of urine without symptoms. It is very common in elderly women and men.
    - **Symptomatic bacteriuria**: Symptoms of urinary frequency and dysuria in the absence of significant bacteriuria

The vast majority of acute symptomatic infections occur in young women. *Escherichia coli* cause approxmatley 80 % of acute infections in patients without catheters, stone or other urologic abnormalities. On the other hand, organisms like *klebsiella*, *enterobacteria*, *proteus*, *serratia* and *psuedomonas* assume greater importance in complicated and nosocomial UTIS.

Clinical features

- The range of possible symptoms caused by UTI is extremely broad, from no symptoms to symptoms referable to the lower urinary tract (e.g. dysuria and frequency), to symptoms indicative of an upper UTI (e.g. loin pain, fever, chills andcosto-vertebral angle tenderness), to full-blown urosepsis.

Investigations

- Urine analysis and Gram stain showing pyuria and bacteriuria

Treatment

Objectives

-Treat the infection.

Non pharmacologic

- Postcoital voiding and liberal fluid intake for women with recurrent UTI

Pharmacologic

A. Acute ,Uncomplicated UTI in women

First line-

Ciprofloxacin, 500mg P.O. BID, for 3 days

(For ADRs, C/Is, P/Cs, D/Is and dosage forms, see page 354)

OR

Norfloxacin, 400mg P.O.BID, for 3 days.

Alternatives –

Cotrimoxazole (Trimethoprim-sulphamethoxazole) 160/800mg P.O, BID for 3 days

(For ADRs, C/Is, P/Cs, D/Is and dosage forms, see page 85)

B. Acute uncomplicated Pyelonephritis in non-pregnant women:

- **Mild and moderate acute uncomplicated pyelonephritis** (able to tolerate oral therapy with no vomiting, no dehydration, no evidence of sepsis):

First line

Ciprofloxacin 500mg P.O, BID, oral for 7-10 days

(For ADRs, C/Is, P/Cs, D/Is and dosage forms see page 354)

Alternative

Cotrimoxazole (Trimethoprim-sulphamethoxazole) 160/800mg P.O, BID for 14 days

(For ADRs, C/Is, P/Cs, D/Is and dosage forms, see page 85)

- **Severe acute uncomplicated pyelonephritis** (high fever, high white blood cell count, vomiting, dehydration, or evidence of sepsis) or fails to improve during an initial outpatient treatment period – intreavenous therapy should be started and continued until the patient improves (usually at 48–72 hours). On discharge oral therapy is continued to complete 10 -14 days course. Antibiotics should be started after urine culture sample is collected.

First line

Ciprofloxacin 400mg, I.V**,** BID till patintient improves and continue oral Ciprofloxacin 500mg, PO, BID to complete 10 -14 days course

Alternatives

Ceftriaxone 2gm, I.V, daily or 1gm, I.V, BID till patintient improves and continues oral **Ciprofloxacin** 500mg, PO, BID to complete 10 -14 days course.

If no response in 48 -72 hrs ultrsasound is warranted therapy to evaluate for obstruction, abscess, or other complications of pyelonephritis. If no obstruction or complication is not found gram positive organisms such as enterococci and S. saprophyticus should be covered with Penicillins and aminoglycoside combination

C. Complicated UTIs and UTI in men- refer

D. Recurrent UTI in women- refer

CHAPTER VIII: MUSCULOSKELETAL DISORDERS

1. Osteoarthritis

This is a degenerative joint disease that damages the articular cartilage leading to reactive new bone formation. Osteoarthritis (OA) is described as progressive joint failure where all structures involved in joint function undergo pathologic changes.Weight bearing joints (hips, knees), cervical and lumbar spine and the metacarpo-phalangeal and distal interphalangeal joints of the hands are commonly affected. The wrist, elbow and ankle joints are chacterstically spared or very raely involved. It is more common in females than males. Risk factors include old age, trauma and Obesity. Osteoarthritis has traditionally been subdivided by etiology into either **idiopathic or secondary forms**. Seconary OA rsults from other primary joint pathologies suchas trauma, crystal induced arthritis, rheumatoid arthritis, neuropathic arthropathy, acromegaly, DM, hypothyroidism etc.

OA can be categorized into localized or generalized forms of the disease. Generalized OA consists of involvement of three or more joint sites.

OA is generally a non inflammatory type of arthritis but some patients can have predominantly inflammatory arthritis charachterized history of swelling, night pain, morning stiffness greater than 30 minutes, warm and tender joints on physical examination.

Clinical features

- Pain at initiation of exercise (walking)
- Morning stiffness which improves with exercise
- Diminution of joint movement
- Crepitus on moving affected joint(s)
- Heberden's nodes and deformed joints in the hands
- Joint swelling, warmth and effusions (knee especially)
- Osteoarthritis of cervical and lumbar spine may lead to muscle weakness in hands and legs respectively (myelopathy)

Investigations

- CBC
- ESR

Treatment

Objectives

- Relieve pain
- Prevent and manage deformities
- Educate patient

Non pharmacologic

- Encourage weight reduction if obese or over weight
- Increase physical activity, specific exercise, physiotherapy
- Weight supports (crutches, walking sticks or frames)

Pharmacologic – start NSAIDS and refer, see options below

Ibuprofen, 200-400 mg p.o. TID

Diclofenac, 50- 75 mg p.o. BID or rectal suppository 100mg/daily

Indomethacin, 25-50 mg, p.o, 2-3 times/day; maximum dose is 200 mg/day or rectal suppository 100mg/daily. Avoid indomethacin in hip OA.

PLUS- GI protection for high risk individuals: a history of peptic ulcer disease, on antiplatelet therapy, concomitant anticoagulant therapy, or have more than one of othr risk factors (Age ≥60 years, Corticosteroid use, Dyspepsia or GERD symptoms)

First line- PPIs see options below

Omeprazole, 20 mg P.O, once daily or BID

Alternative- H2 blockers, see options below

Cimetidine, 400 mg P.O. BID

Ranitidine, 150mg, P.O, BID

(For ADRs, C/Is, D/Is, P/Cs and dosage forms, see page 62)

2. Pyogenic Osteomyelitis

Pyogenic Osteomyelitis is an acute infection of the bone and its structures caused by bacteria. Osteomyelitis occurs as a result of hematogenous spread, contiguous spread from adjacent soft tissues or direct infection from trauma or surgery. Hematogenous osteomyelitis is usually monomicrobial, while osteomyelitis due to contiguous spread or direct inoculation is usually polymicrobial. Staphylococcus aureus is the most common causative organism.Coagulase-negative staphylococci and aerobic gram-negative bacilli are also common causes. Streptococci, enterococci and anaerobes are also implicated.

Clinical features

- Gradual onset varying from few days to weeks of local bone pain, swelling, low grade fever, malaise and weight loss.

Investigations

- CBC and ESR

Treatment

- Give analgesics and antipyretics and refer

3. Rheumatoid Arthritis (RA)

RA is a chronic systemic autoimmune inflammatory disease characterized mainly by symmetrical inflammation of the synovial tissue of joints resulting in destruction of the joints and peri-articular tissues. It occurs more commonly in young and middle-aged women. The symptoms fluctuate widely with periods of remission and exacerbation. Other organs such as the lungs, kidneys, eyes and the hematopoietic system may occasionally be affected.

Clinical features

See Table 1.

Table 1: 1987 American College of Rheumatology revised classification criteria for rheumatoid arthritis

Criterion	Description
Morning stiffness.	Morning stiffness in and around the joints, lasting at least one hour before maximal improvement.
Arthritis of 3 or more joint areas	At least 3 joint areas (out of 14 possible areas; right or left PIP, MCP, wrist, elbow, knee, ankle, MTP joints) simultaneously have soft- tissue swelling or fluid as observed by a physician
Arthritis of hand joints	At least one area swollen in a wrist, MCP, or PIP joint

Symmetric arthritis	Simultaneous involvement of the same joint areas on both sides of the body (bilateral involvement of PIPs, MCPs, or MTPs, without absolute symmetry is acceptable)
Rheumatoid nodules	Subcutaneous nodules over bony prominences or extensor surfaces, or in juxta-articular regions as observed by a physician
Serum rheumatoid factor	High serum rheumatoid factor by any method for which the result has been positive in <5 % of normal subjects
Radiographic changes).	Radiographic changes typical of RA on PA hand or wrist radiographs, which must include erosions or unequivocal bony decalcification localised in, or most marked adjacent to, the involved joints.

Note: RA diagnosed if at least four of these criteria are satisfied (the first four must have been present for at least six weeks)

The major drawback of the criteria is insensitivity in identifying early disease which subsequently develops in to typical RA.

Investigations and treatment- Start NSAIDS and refer

Ibuprofen, 800 mg, p.o.TID with meals. If not tolerated: 400 mg 8 hourly

OR

Diclofenac, Immediate or delayed release tablet: 150-200 mg/day p.o. in 2-4 divided doses. Rectal suppository , Insert 50 mg or 100 mg rectally as single dose to substitute for final daily dose (maximum combined dose [rectal and oral]: 150 mg/day

OR

Indomethacin, 25-50 mg p.o. BID TO TID; maximum dose: 200 mg/day**.**

Rectal suppository, insert 100mg, BID or once, at bed time

4. Septic Arthritis

The term septic arthritis refers to bacterial infection of a joint. Septic arthritis is dangerous and destructive to the joint. It may occur secondary to haematogenous spread (80-90%), contiguous spread (10-15%), and direct penetration of microorganisms secondary to trauma, surgery or injection. Old age, Diabetes mellitus, skin infection, alcoholism, intra-articular injections are some of the common risk factors. S. aureus is the most common cause. Streptococci and other gram positive are also frequent causes. Gram-negative bacilli are found as causes in specific situations such as trauma, immunosuppression and very elderly.

Clinical features

- Septic arthritis presents acutely and mostly with a single swollen and painful joint.

Investigations and treatment- if suspected refer urgently after giving analgesics and antipyretics.

CHAPTER IX: NEUROLOGICAL DISORDERS

1. Meningitis

Acute Bacterial Meningitis

Acute Bacterial meningitis is an inflammation of the meninges in response to bacterial infection. It is mainly caused by *N. meningitides***,** *S. pneumoniae, and H. influenzae*. The disease is characterized by an intense headache, fever, vomiting, and photophobia with nuchal pain or rigidity and positive meningeal signs.

The only bacterial pathogen with a potential to cause epidemics is *N. meningitidis* and therefore it is a **reportable disease**. Ethiopia is one of the countries in the so called "meningitis belt" of the Sub-Saharan Africa which spans from Gambia in the West to Ethiopia in the East of Africa. In the past century, several devastating epidemics have occurred cycling on an average of 8-12 years in this Geographic area. One striking feature of the epidemic has been its seasonality by which it tends to occur during the dry and windy season of the years between January and May.

Clinical features

- **Headache (HA), Stiff neck** ,**Fever,** P**hotophbia**
- **Change in mental status**(defined as GCS <14),
- S**eizures**
- 2 of 4 (fever, HA, stiff neck, change in MS) present in 95%
- Presentation may be *atypical* (eg,lethargy without fever) in the elderly and immunosuppressed
- **Physical examination**: **Nuchal rigidity** (Se 30%), **Kernig's sign** (Patient supine, hip flexed at 90, knee flexed at 90; + if passive extension of knee results in resistance), **Brudzinski's sign** (P supine and limbs supine;+ if passive neck flexion if followed by involuntary hip and/or knee flexion). Kernig's and Brudzinski's signs are + in only 5% of Pts, but will be very specific for meningeal irritation if present.
- Some patients may have focal neuro findings (about 30%; hemiparesis, aphasia, visual field cuts, CN palsies)
- Funduscopic findings: papilledema, absent venous pulsations
- Skin rash : maculopapular, petechial, or purpuric

Patients suspected of acute bacterial meningitis should be referred urgently to hospitals for better investigation and treatment.

2. Migraine

Migraine is a paroxysmal recurrent headache unilateral or bilateral lasting 4-72 hours, often preceded by aura and accompanied by nausea and/or vomiting. Migraine is thought to have a polygenetic and multifactorial etiology. Migraine is about three times more common in women than men.

Clinical features

- Headache
- Nausea and/or vomiting

Investigations

- Clinical

The International Headache Society (IHS) diagnostic criteria for migraine are as follows:

- Headache attacks last 4 to 72 hours
- Headache has at least two of the following characteristics: unilateral location; pulsating quality; moderate or severe intensity; aggravation by routine physical activity
- During headache at least one of the following occurs: nausea and/or vomiting; photophobia and phonophobia
- At least five attacks occur fulfilling the above criteria. History, physical examination, and neurologic examination do not suggest any underlying disease

Danger signs of headache - if these signs are present urgent evaluation is needed

- New headache in patients under the age of five or over the age of 50
- Sudden onset headache that reaches maximal intensity within seconds or minutes
- The "first" or "worst" headache
- Progressively worsening pattern of headache
- Focal neurologic symptoms other than typical visual or sensory aura
- Fever associated with headache
- Any change in mental status, personality, or fluctuation in the level of consciousness.
- New headache type in a patient with HIV
- Headache during pregnancy

Treatment

Objectives

- Relieve pain
- Prevent recurrences
- Improve quality of life

Non pharmaclogic

- Patients should be reassured that this is a benign condition.
- They should attempt to identify foods or drinks and other situations, which precipitate the attack and try to diminish patterns of tension.

Pharmacologic

1) **Acute treatment, mild attacks:**

First line- Asiprin, Paracetamol, NSAIDS. Individual response is variable to each agent hence if one agent does not work another NSAID can be tried.

Acetylsalicylicacid, soluble, 600-900 mg P.O. once, followed by 300 mg half hourly up to a maximum dose of 1800 mg

(For ADRs, C/Is, P/Cs, D/Is and dosage forms, see page 109)

OR

Paracetamol, 1000 mg P.O. 4-6 hourly > 4gm/day is associated with liver toxicity.

Initiate therapy during the attack or at the very onset of the headache.

(For ADRs, C/Is, P/Cs, D/Is and dosage forms, see page 109)

OR

Ibuprofen, 600-1,200 mg/day P.O. in 2-3 divided doses

OR

Diclofenac 50 -100mg PO or IM per day

2) **Moderate to severe attacks :** refer after giving the medications mentioned on management of mild attack(see above**)**

3) **Long term prophylaxis-** refer

3. Seizure and Epilepsy

Epilepsy is a paroxysmal neurologic disorder characterized by a sudden onset of sensory perception or motor activity with or without loss of consciousness due to abnormal, excessive, hypersynchronous electrical discharges from the cortex. Its etiology is often unkown.

Secondary causes include congenital, perinatal injuries, intra cranial tumors, vascular, metabolic and others.

Clinical features

- Focal Involuntary non synchronizes movement of the body
- Generalized tonic clonic convulsion
- Loss of conciousness

Investigations

- Random blood glucose

N.B. Diagnosis is often clinical.

Treatment

Objectives

- Stop seizure
- Reduce frequency of attacks
- Treat underlying cause (if any)

Non pharmacologic

- Advice on a healthy lifestyle with good sleep habits and avoidance of excessive alcohol and caffeine.
- The patient should know the name and the dose of his/her medication and should be warned of the consequences of poor compliance

N.B.

- Epileptics are not allowed to drive a vehicle unless the patient has had a two-year attack-free period.
- They should not swim.
- Refer all adult onset epilepsy, complicated or atypical epilepsy, and if there is a progressive increase in uncontrollable attacks.
- Pregnancy is better avoided in patients with difficult to control epilepsy.

Pharmacologic

Table 2- Antiepleptic drugs used for treatment of different types of epilepsy together with their dosage regimens

Seizure type	First line	Dose	Alternative	Dose
Primarly generalized tonic clonic	Valproic acid	750- 2000mg/day or 20 – 60mg/Kg/day divided in 2 to 3 doses	Phenytoin	300-400mg/day or 3-6mg/kg/day Once per day or divided in 2 doses
			Phenobarbitone	60-200mg/day, once daily
			Carbamazepine	600- 1800mg/day divided in 2 to 4 doses
Partial(simple, complex or secondarily generalized)	Carbamazepine	600- 1800mg/day divided in 2 to 4 doses	Phenobarbitone	60-200mg/day, once daily
	Phenytoin	300-400mg/day or 3-6mg/kg/day	Valproic acid	750- 2000mg/day or 20 – 60mg/Kg/day divided in 2 to 3 doses
Absence	Valproic acid	750- 2000mg/day or 20 – 60mg/Kg/day divided in 2 to 3 doses	Ethosuximide	750 -1250 mg/day. Once per day or divided in 2 doses
Atonic, Myoclonic or atypical absence	Valproic acide	750- 2000mg/day or 20 – 60mg/Kg/day divided in 2 to 3 doses	Clonazepam	1-12mg/day. Once per day or divided in 2 -3 doses

Table 3- Dosage forms and common side effects of commonly used antiepileptic drugs

Drug	Available dosage forms	Common side effects
Carbamazepine	Syrup- 100mg/5ml Tablet-100mg, 200mg	Nausea, vomiting, rash, hyponatremia, drowsiness, dizziness, blurred or double vision, lethargy, headache
Clonazepam	Tablet, 0.5mg, 1mg, 2mg	Amnesia, ataxia, behavioral problems, confusion, depression, dizziness, drowsiness
Ethosuximde	Capsule-250mg Syrup- 250mg/5ml	Nausea, vomiting,sleep disturbance, drowsiness, hyperactivity
Phenobarbitone	Tablet-15mg, 30mg, 60mg, 100mg Elixir-20mg/5ml	Nausea, rash ,alteration of sleep cycles, sedation, lethargy, behavioral changes, hyperactivity, ataxia, tolerance, dependence
Phenytoin	Tablet/capsule- 50mg, 100mg	Gingival hypertrophy, rash, confusion, slurred speech, double vision, ataxia
Valproic acid	Syrup- 200mg/5ml Tablet -200mg, 500mg	Weight gain, nausea, vomiting, hair loss, easy bruising, tremor, dizziness

Principles of therapy

- Therapy should not be initiated after 1 attack only and only if evidence of epilepsy has been established.
- The aim is to use monotherapy i.e. a single anticonvulsant, until the seizures are controlled or intolerable side effects occur.
- If seizure is not well controlled with maximum tolerated dose of the first drug or if the first one is not tolerated, a second drug trial should be attempted.
- Except in case of a serious adverse event, the second drug is started and dose increased without discontinuation of the first drug to avoid seizure recurrence. After the second drug is increased to optimal the first is gradually tapered and discontinued.
- Combination therapy- When possible try to maintain a patient on a singledrug. If trial of changing to a second agent is not successful a second drug can be added but drug –drug interaction between the drugs is a serious concern
- Many of the antiepileptic drugs induce their own metabolism (auto induction) hence their dose needs to be increased gradually to achieve therapeutic serum levels.
- Many antiepileptic drugs induce the metabolism of other antiepileptic drugs as result patients on combination of drugs needs to closely monitor.
- Anti-convulsants may make oral contraceptives ineffective.

Antiepleptic drugs should not be discontinued even if the seizure is well controlled unless decided by specialist after complete control of seizures for years

Status epilepticus - refers to continuous seizures or repetitive, discrete seizures with impaired consciousness in the interictal period. The duration of seizure activity sufficient to meet the definition of status epilepticus is about15 minutes .Status epilepticus has two main subtypes- generalized convulsive status epilepticus and nonconvulsive status epilepticus. See the diagram below for treatment of status epilepticus.

Secure airway ,give oxygen , assess breathing and circulation, secure IV access in large veins. Determine blood glucose.

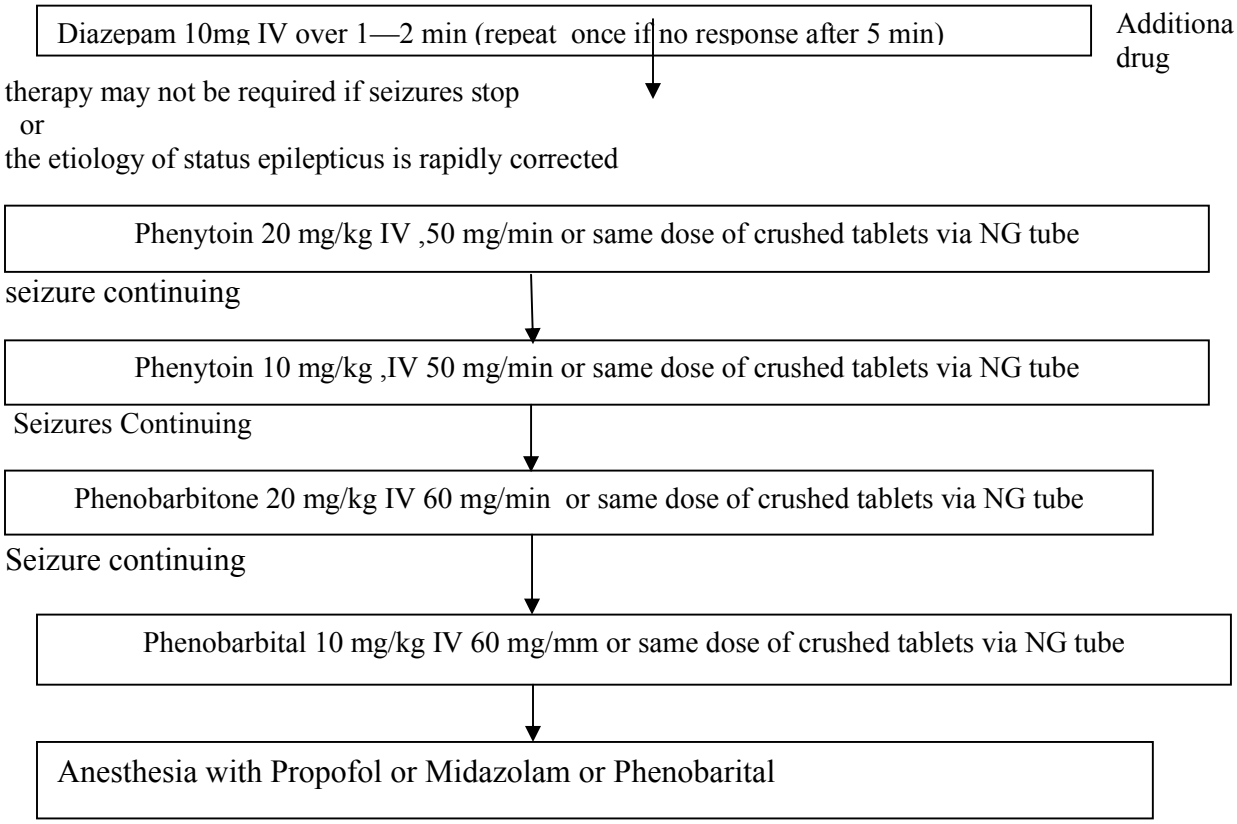

Diazepam 10mg IV over 1—2 min (repeat once if no response after 5 min)
Additiona drug
therapy may not be required if seizures stop
or
the etiology of status epilepticus is rapidly corrected
Phenytoin 20 mg/kg IV ,50 mg/min or same dose of crushed tablets via NG tube
seizure continuing
Phenytoin 10 mg/kg ,IV 50 mg/min or same dose of crushed tablets via NG tube
Seizures Continuing
Phenobarbitone 20 mg/kg IV 60 mg/min or same dose of crushed tablets via NG tube
Seizure continuing
Phenobarbital 10 mg/kg IV 60 mg/mm or same dose of crushed tablets via NG tube
Anesthesia with Propofol or Midazolam or Phenobarital

Fig 1- Management of status epilepticus.

CHAPTER X: ONCOLOGY

1. Breast Cancer

Breast cancer is the leading cancer in females worldwide. Early detection and treatment markedly improve mortality from Breast cancer. Most Breast cancer patients in Ethiopia are relatively younger. Hence, it is important to consider Breast cancer even in younger patients and exclude the diagnosis by doing appropriate investigations.

Clinical Features

Early stage Breast cancer

- Lump in the breast
- Discharge or bleeding from nipple

Locally Advanced Breast cancer

- Axillary lymph node enlargement
- Nipple retraction, Ulceration and Pain

Metastatic Breast cancer

- Symptoms depend on the site of metastasis

Bone metastasis – back pain is a danger sign

Lung metastasis – cough, shortness of breath, chest pain

Liver metastasis– right upper quadrant pain, poor appetite, weighs loss

Brain metastasis – headache, focal neurologic deficit

In young patient age <30 yr, and with no family history of Breast cancer, Breast lump are usually mobile suggestive of benign lesion. Follow patients for change in size, character and refer for FNA if there is slightest suspicion of Breast cancer.

Patients who develop Breast lump after age of 30yr and patients with strong family history of Breast cancer should be referred for specialist evaluation.

Investigations and Treatment

- Refer for evaluation by surgeon

2. Colorectal Cancer

Colorectal cancers are by far the most frequent malignancies of the GI tract and account for the most deaths worldwide. In most parts of the world colorectal cancer occurs after the age of 50. In Ethiopia, hospital based data indicate that 50% of the patients are below the age of 45 yr and most patients present with large bowel obstruction as emergency.

Clinical Features

- The usual presentation is change in bowel habit, abdominal pain, bleeding per rectum and tensmus. Because of delay in making the diagnosis most patient present with large bowel obstruction. Consider colo-rectal cancer and refer for colonoscopy when patient present with the above symptoms in order to make the diagnosis early and improve outcome.

Investigations

- Refer patient with suspected colorectal

Treatment

- The treatment depend on the stage if the cancer. Most patients in Ethiopia present with advanced stage and require surgery followed by chemotherapy and radiotherapy depending on the anatomic site and stage.

3. Head and Neck Cancer

Carcinomas of the head and neck region are frequently considered together as most patients share similar demographic and epidemiologic risk factors. The incidence of head and neck cancers increases with the use of alcohol and tobacco. About 90 % of these cancers are squamous cell carcinoma.

Clinical Features

Symptoms depend on the exact site and stage

- Nasopharynx – Epistaxis, nasal blockage, headache
- Oropharynx - pain and difficulty of swallowing
- Hypopharynx/Larynx – hoarseness of voice, dysphagia, cervical lymph node enlargement

Physical Examination

- Visible mass or ulcer in any part the oral cavity, nostrils.
- Palpable cervical lymph nodes

Investigations and Treatment

- Refer patient to ENT specialist

4. Ovarian Cancer

Epithelial cancer is by far the most common of the three types. The incidence of epithelial ovarian cancer increases steadily, with peak in the 7^{th} and 8^{th} decades of life. Germ cell ovarian cancer occurs at younger age and is associated with excellent treatment outcome.

Clinical Features

- Early stage ovarian cancer
- Incidentally discovered on routine ultrasound examination
- Non specific abdominal discomfort, irregular menses (in premenopausal women)
- Urinary frequency and constipation caused by enlarged pelvic mass.
- Advanced stage ovarian cancer
- Abdominal swelling, early satiety, vomiting and constipation,poor appetite and weight loss
- Metastatic Disease – emaciated, jaundice, palpable liver, sign of plural effusion

N.B. **Adenexal mass in post menopausal women is most likely pathological and needs further investigation and follow up.**

Investigations and treatment

Refer any patient with suspected ovarian tumor to Gynecologist

CHAPTER XI: PSYCHIATRIC DISORDERS

1. Mood Disorders

Mood disorders are characterized by a disturbance in the regulation of mood, behavior, and affect. Mood disorders are subdivided into

I. Depressive disorders

II. Bipolar disorders

III. Depression in association with medical illness or alcohol and substance abus

I. Depressive disorders

Major depression — A major depressive syndrome or episode manifests with **five or more** of the following symptoms, present most of the day nearly every day for a minimum of **two consecutive weeks**. At least one symptom is either depressed mood or loss of interest or pleasure.The symptoms should cause clinically significant distress impairment in social, occupational, or other important areas of functioning and should not due to the direct physiologic effects of a substance

The nine symptoms of major depression

- Depressed mood
- Loss of interest or pleasure in most or all activities
- Insomnia or hypersomnia
- Change in appetite or weight
- Psychomotor retardation or agitation
- Low energy
- Poor concentration
- Thoughts of worthlessness or guilt
- Recurrent thoughts about death or suicide

Investigations

1) Primary depressive disorders are diagnosed by syndrome criteria so diagnosis depends on clinical history and mental examination**.**

2) Assessment should include evaluation for suicide risk, a comprehensive medical history, exploration of comorbid psychiatric disorders including substance use, and family history**.**

3) When depression secondary to medical disorders is suspected thefollowing investigation could be helpful

Treatment- if diagnosis is suspected refer or transfer care to phychiatric nurse in the health center

II. Bipolar disorders

- Bipolar I disorder- have episodes of sustained mania, and often experience depressive episodes.
- Bipolar II disorder- has one or more major depressive episodes, with at least one hypomanic episode.
- Recognition of bipolar disorder is important; untreated it is associated with substantial morbidity and mortality, and treatment differs from that of unipolar depression.

Clinical features

Bipolar disorder is characterized by unpredictable swings in mood from mania (or hypomania) to depression. In bipolar II disorder the full criteria for mania are lacking, the recurrent depressions are separated by periods of mild activation and increased energy (hypomania)**.**

Diagnostic criteria for manic episode

A. Distinct period of abnormally and persistently elevated, expansive, or irritable mood, lasting at least 1 week (or any duration if hospitalization is necessary).

B. During the period of mood disturbance, three (or more) of the following symptoms have persisted (four if the mood is only irritable) and have been present to a significant degree:

1) Inflated self-esteem or grandiosity
2) Decreased need for sleep (e.g. feels rested after only 3 hours of sleep)
3) More talkative than usual or pressure to keep talking
4) Flight of ideas or subjective experience that thoughts are racing
5) Distractibility (i.e. attention too easily drawn to unimportant or irrelevant external stimuli)
6) Increase in goal-directed activity (either socially, at work or school, or sexually) or psychomotor agitation
7) Excessive involvement in pleasurable activities that have a high potential for painful consequences (eg, engaging in unrestrained buying, sexual indiscretions, or foolish business investments)

C. The symptoms do not meet criteria for a mixed episode.

D. The mood disturbance 1) is sufficiently severe to cause marked impairment in occupational functioning, usual social activities, or relationships with others, 2) necessitates hospitalization to prevent harm to self or others, or 3) has psychotic features.

E. The symptoms are not due to the direct physiological effects of a substance (eg, a drug of abuse, a medication, or other treatment) or a general medical condition (eg, hyperthyroidism).

Treatment – if diagnosis is suspected refer urgently

2. Schizophrenia

Schizophrenia is a severe psychiatric disorder disorder with chronic or recurrent psychosis ans marked functional impairment. It is the most disabling and economically catastrophic disorders.

Psychosis is a break with reality with delusions, hallucinations, disorganized or illogical thinking, and chaotic behavior. Although psychosis is a hallmark of schizophrenia, it is not pathognomonic for the disorder.

Clinical features

'Positive' symptoms

- Hallucinations
- Delusions
- Incoherent speech or illogicality
- Odd or disorganized behavior
- Disorders of thought possession

'Negative' symptoms

- Poverty of speech or of content of speech
- Apathy
- Reduced social contact or withdrawal
- Flattened effect (showing little facial expressive responses)
- Delusions may be persecutory (undue suspicion) or bizarre
- Hallucinations – of any sense auditory ones are most common
- Disorders of thought possession include feeling of the patient's thoughts being accessible to others.

Treatment –if diagnosis is suspected refer urgently

3. Suicide /Self-Harm

Suicide is the act of deliberately killing oneself. It is a psychiatric emergency which requires urgent evaluation and management.

Self-harm is a broader term referring to intentional self-inflicted poisoning or injury, which may or may not have a fatal intent or outcome.

Any person over 10 years of age experiencing any of the following conditions should be asked about thoughts or plans of self-harm in the last month and about acts of self-harm in the last year:

- Depression, bipolar disorder, psychosis, alcohol and drug use disorders
- Chronic pain

- Acute emotional distress

Asking about self-harm DOES NOT provoke acts of self-harm. It often reduces anxiety associated with thoughts or acts of self harm and helps the person feel understood. However, try to establish a relationship with the person before asking questions about self-harm. Ask the person to explain their reasons for harming themselves

.

Evaluation and treatment

I. Observe for evidence of self-injury and emergency conditions

- Look for evidences of poisoning or intoxication,bleeding from self-inflicted wound, loss of consciousness, extreme lethargy- if present provide emergency treatment

II. Assess for an imminent risk of self-harm / suicide- the presence of one or more of the followings indicate the risk

- Current thoughts or plan to commit suicide or self-harm
- History of thoughts or plan of self-harm in the past month or act of self-harm in the past year
- Severe emotional distress, hopelessness, extreme agitation,violence, uncommunicative behavior, social isolation

If there is a risk of imment self-harm/suicide, take the following measures:

- Remove means of self-harm.
- Create secure and supportive environment; if possible, offer separate, quiet room while waiting.
- Do not leave the person alone.
- Supervise and assign a named staff member or a family member to ensure safety.
- Attend to mental state and emotional distress.
- Offer and activate psychosocial support
- Maintain regular contact and follow

III. Assess for the presence of mental illness, chronic medical illness, neurologic illness , chronic pain or drug use disorders

- Depression, bipolar disorder, alcohol or drug use disorders, psychosis, behavioural disorders, epilepsy, chronic medical illness. If any of these predisposing disorders are present, manage them accordingly.

IV. Assess for the presence of severe emotional that warrant clinical management

- Difficulty carrying out usual work, school, domestic or social activities
- Marked distress or repeated help-seeking
- Repeated self-medication for emotional distress or unexplained somatic symptoms
    - In case of bereavement: support culturally appropriate mourning /adjustment and reactivate social networks.
    - In case of acute distress after recent traumatic events: offer basic psychological support i.e., listen without pressing the person to talk; assess needs and concerns; ensure basic physical needs are met; provide or mobilize social support and protect from further harm.
    - **AVOID** psychological debriefing (i.e., **DO NOT** push the aperson to recount perceptions, thoughts, and emotional reactions experienced during a recent, stressful event)

CHAPTER XII: RESPIRATORY SYSTEM DISORDERS

1. Acute Bronchitis

Acute Bronchitis is an infection of the trachea and the bronchi which is often caused by viruses. Therefore, treatment is often symptomatic. Anti-microbial treatment is indicated when patients develop high-grade fever and purulent sputum or when they have an underlying illness like diabetes mellitus, chronic bronchitis, HIV/AIDS

Clinical features

- Productive cough, symptoms of upper respiratory infection, like rinorrhea.
- There may be crepitations and rhonchi on chest auscultation

Investigations

- Full blood count
- Sputum gram stain and culture

Treatment

Objectives

- Relieve symptoms
- Eradicate suspected bacterial infection

Non pharmacologic

- Avoid confounding factors like smoking

Pharmacologic

Should not be routinely employed

a. For Dry Cough

First line

Dextromethorphan hydrobromide, 15 – 30 mg P.O. TID to QID for adults. For children: 6-12 yrs, 7.5-15 mg; 2-6 yrs, 7.5 mg TID or QID

ADRs: mild dizziness, mild drowsiness, nausea or vomiting, stomach pain

C/Is: respiratory failure, acute asthma, in children up to two years of age

P/Cs: asthma; chronic, persistent, or productive cough, renal impairment

Dosage forms: Tablet, 15mg; Syrups, 5mg/5ml, 7.5mg/5ml, 15mg/5ml

Drops, 15mg/m*l*

Alternative

Codeine phosphate, 10 - 20 mg P.O TID or QID. For children: 0.5 mg/kg P.O. QID

ADRs: constipation, dizziness, nausea, vomiting; difficulty with micturation; ureteric or biliary spasm; dependence, sedation, respiratory depression,

C/Is: children under 1 year old, productive cough, elderly, respiratory depression, head injury, acute alcoholism, acute asthma

P/Cs: asthma, hepatic and renal impairment, history of drug abuse

D/Is: alcohol, CNS depressants, buprenorpine, monoamine oxidase inhibitors, naltrexone, antidiarrhoeal agents

Dosage forms: Tablet, 30 mg; Linctus, 15 mg/5ml

b. For productive cough

Guaifenesin, 200- 400 mg P.O. QID; for children: 6-12 yrs, 100-200 mg; 2-Yrs, 50-100 mg P.O. QID

ADRs: diarrhoea, drowsiness, nausea or vomiting, stomach pain

C/Is: hypersensitivity

P/Cs: persistent or chronic cough

D/Is: heparin

Dosage forms: Tablet, 100mg, 200mg; Capsules, 200mg; Syrup, 100mg/5ml

c. For infection

Antibiotic treatment is indicated when bronchitis is complicated by bacterial infections. In general, the choice of antibiotics should be based on gram stain result of the sputum.

First line

Amoxicillin, 250- 500 mg P.O.TID for adults. For children: 20 – 40 mg/kg/day P.O. in 3 divided doses.

ADRs: allergic reaction, GI disturbances

C/I: known hypersensitivity (allergy) to any penicillines.

P/Cs: renal impairment, erythematous rashes, chronic lymphatic leukaemia

D/Is: probenecid, allopurinol, oral contraceptives, methotrexate, warfarin.,

Dosage forms: Tablet, 500 mg; Capsule, 250 mg, 500 mg;
Injection, 250 mg, 500 mg in vial; Syrup, 125mg/5ml, 250 mg/5ml

Alternatives

Ampicillin, 500 mg P.O. QD, in 4-divided dose for 5-7 days

Dosage form*s :* Capsule, 250 mg, 500 mg ; Oral suspension; 125 mg/5ml, 250 mg/5ml ; Drop, 100 mg/ml Injection, (sodium), 250 mg, 500 mg, 1 g in vial. (For ADRs, C/Is, P/Cs and D/Is, see under amoxicillin and see page 382)

OR

Sulfamethoxazole+trimethoprim, 800mg/160 mg. P.O.BID for 7 days.

For children 6 weeks – 5 months, 100/20 mg; 6 months – 5 yrs, 200/40 mg; 6 – 12 yrs, 400/80 mg BID.

(For ADRs, C/Is, P/Cs, D/Is and dosage forms, see page 85)

OR

Erythomycin, 250-500 mg P.O. QID for 7 days. For children: 30-50 mg/kg/day P.O. in 4 divided doses; 15-20 mg/kg/day IV over 5 minutes in 3-4 divided doses.

ADRs: GI disturbances, reversible loss of hearing, recurrent fainting, hypersensitivity, cholestatic, inflammation or phlebitis at injection site

P/Cs: pregnancy and breast-feeding, renal and hepatic function impairment, cardiac arrhythmias, porphyria, in neonates less than two weeks risk of hypertrophic pyloric stenosis.

D/Is: carbamazepine, chloramphenicol, itraconazol, terfenadin, warfarin, methyl xanthines.

Dosage forms: Tablet (stearate), 250mg, 500mg; Capsule, 250mg; Oral suspension, 125mg/5ml, 200mg/5ml, 250mg/5ml; Injection, 50mg/ml in 2ml ampoule

OR

Tetracycline, 250-500 mg P.O.QID, for 5-7 days

ADRs: GI disturbances, photosensitivity, skin discoloration, blood dyscrasias.

D/Is: aluminium and/or magnesium containing antacids, laxatives, calcium (e.g. milk or other dairy products, eggs) and/or iron supplements, penicillines, or streptomycin.

P/Cs: renal function impairment

C/Is: pregnant or nursing women, infants and children under 8 years of age

Dosage forms*:* Tablet, 250 mg, 500 mg (coated) Capsules, 250mg, 500mg

Injection, 100 mg, 250 mg, 500 mg in vial

OR

Azithromycin, 500 mg p.o. on day 1 followed by 250 mg/day on days 2- 5

ADRs: diarrhea, nausea, abdominal pain, cramping, vomiting, acute renal failure, allergic reaction, aggressive behaviour, anaphylaxis, angioedema, arrhythmia, cholestatic jaundice, headache, hearing loss, hepatic necrosis

C/Is: hypersensitivity to azithromycin

P/Cs: hepatic and renal dysfunction, prolonged cardiac repolarization.

D/Is: pimozide, phenytoin, ergot alkaloids, alfentanil bromocriptine, carbamazepine, cyclosporine, digoxin, disopyramide, triazolam; nelfinavir, aluminium and magnesium containing antacids.

. **Dosage forms:** Capsule, 250 mg; Powder for oral suspension, 200 mg/5ml

2. Bronchial Asthma

Asthma is a clinical syndrome that is characterized by recurrent or persistent symptoms of shortness of breath, wheezing, cough and chest tightness which are usually reversible with bronchodilator treatment or spontaneously. It is associated with variable airflow limitation and airway hyperresponsiveness to endogenous and exogenous stimuli.

Clinical features

- Wheezing—high-pitched whistling sounds during expiration. Wheezes are usually recurrent. Lack of wheezes does not exclude asthma.
- Cough - worse particularly at night
- Shortness of breath(breathlessness)
- Chest tightness
- Tenacious mucus - difficult to expectorate
- Symptoms occur or worsen at night
- Tachypnea (fast breathing)
- Wheeze/Rhonchi

- Use of accessory muscles of respiration

Danger signs during acute attacks:

- Paradoxical breathing
- Profound diaphoresis
- Cyanosis
- Exhaustion Arrhythmia
- Silent chest on auscultation
- Drowsiness or confusion
- -Agitation·
- $SPO_2 < 90$ %

Investigations

- The diagnosis of bronchial asthma is mainly clinical.

i. Treatment of acute asthma attack

Objectives

- Prevent respiratory failure
- Relieve symptoms promptly
- Shorten hospital stay

Non-pharmacologic

1) **Hospital admission**- Admit patients with any feature of a severe attack persisting after initial treatment in the emergency room to wards. Admit patients with life threatening attacks directly to ICU.

2) **Oxygen**- give supplementary oxygen via face mask or nasal cannula to all hypoxic patients with acute asthma to maintain a SpO2 level of >90%. Lack of pulse oximetry should not prevent the use of oxygen.

3) **Positioning**- sitting upright and/or leaning.

4) **Hydration**- most patients need IV hydration.

CAUTION! ***Do not give any form of sedatives during acute attacks***

Pharmacologic

First line

Salbutamol, 4 to 6 puffs every 20 minutes in the first 1-4 hours. Then the same dose every 1-4 hours depending on the patient need.

OR

Salbutamol, 2 –5 mg every 20 minutes for 3 doses, then 2.5–10 mg every 1–4 hours as needed, or 10–15 mg/hour continuously

ADRs: headache, nervousness, dizziness, palpitation, tachycardia, fine tremor, muscle cramp, paradoxical broncho-spasm.

C/Is: cardiac arrythmias

Dosage forms: Oral inhalation (aerosol) preparation, 100mcg per dose; tablet, 2 mg, 4mg; syrup, 2 mg/5ml; nebulizer solution, 5 mg/5 ml, 20 ml ampoule.

Alternative

Aminophylline, IV**,** 250 mg IV bolus slowly over 20 minutes

Maintenance: 0.5mg/kg/hour (maximum: 900 mg/day). For patients' cardiac decompensation, cor pulmonale, hepatic dysfunction, Multiorgan dysfunction decrease dose by 50%. Old patients (>60 years): 0.38 mg/kg/hour (maximum: 400 mg/day).

ADRs: Arrhythmia, GI disturbances, headache, irritability, nervousness, insomnia, and tremor.

C/Is: Ischemic heart disease, epilepsy, hyperthyroidism, Heart failure

Dosage form: 250mg/10ml in 10 and 20 ml ampoule

N.B. Should not be first line therapy in the presence of inhaled SABA.

Adding it on top of inhaled SABA does not have significant benefit.

Caution !

When giving Aminophylline to adults who have been on Theophylline tablets, avoid bolus injection as there is a high risk of cardiac arrhythmias, seizures.

When there are no other options:

Adrenaline, 1:1000, 0.5ml sc. Repeat after ½ if patient doesn't respond.

ADRs: Arrythmias, headache, nervousness, dizziness, cardiac

C/Is: cardiac arrythmias

Dosage forms: injection, 0.1% in 1 ml ampoule

PLUS

Systemic steroids

Hydrocortisone, 200 mg IV as a single dose. Further IV doses are needed only if oral dosing is not possible (100 mg, IV, 3-4 X per day).

ADRs: GI disturbances, hyperglycemia, headache, and psychiatric reactions

P/C: hypertension, infection, diabètes, osteoporosis

Dosage forms: Tablet (acetate), 5mg, 10mg,; powder for injection; 25mg/ampoule, 500mg vial; injection (sodium succinate), 50mg/ml in 2ml ampoule, 125mg/ml

Followed by

Prednisolone, 40-60 mg P.O. should be started immediately, for 5-7 days.

Discontinuation does not need tapering.

ADRs: GI disturbances, osteoporosis, proximal myopathy; adrenal suppression, Cushing's syndrome, immunosuppression, psychiatric complications, glaucoma.

C/Is: systemic infection; use of live vaccines

P/C: Use the lowest effective dose for the shortest period possible; withdraw gradually after systemic use.

Dosage forms: Tablet, 1 mg, 3.5 mg, 5 mg, 10 mg;

Maintenance therapy for chronic asthma in adults

Objectives

- Prevent chronic and troublesome symptoms
- Minimize use of inhaled SABA for quick relief of symptoms
- Maintain (near) normal pulmonary function.
- Maintain normal activity levels.
- Prevent recurrent exacerbations
- Minimize adverse effects of therapy

Non pharmacologic

- Avoid identified allergens and smoking

Pharmacologic

- Depends on the severity of asthma
- Assess the severity of asthma and scale up or down treatment based on the severity.

ii. Intermittent asthma

First line

Salbutamol, inhaler 200 microgram/puff, 2 puffs to be taken as needed but not more than 3-4 times a day, or tablet, 2-4mg 3-4 times a day

(For ADRs, C/Is and dosage forms, see page 191)

Alternative

Ephedrine + Theophylline, 11mg + 120mg P.O. BID OR TID

ADRs: GI disturbances, headache, irritability, nervousness, insomnia, tremor

C/Is: hypertension, ischemic heart disease, epilepsy, hyperthyroidism, congestive cardiac failure

Dosage forms: Tablet, 120 mg theophylline + 11 mg ephedrine; Elixir, 6mg + 30mg in each 5ml; Syrup, 2.24% + 0.30%

iii. Persistent mild asthma

Salbutamol, inhaler, 200 micro gram/puff 1-2 puffs to be taken, as needed but not more than 3-4 times/day, or tablet, 2-4mg 3-4 times a day)

(For ADRs, C/Is, P/Cs, D/Is and dosage forms see page 191)

PLUS (Inhaled corticosteroid)

Beclomethasone, oral inhalation 200 µg, bid. Decrease the dose to 100µg, BID if symptoms are controlled after three months.

ADR: GI disturbances, hyperglycemia, headache, and psychiatric reactions

C/Is: hypertension, infection, diabetes, and osteoporesis

Dosage forms: oral inhalation (aerosol), 50 mcg/dose, and 100 mcg/dose

iv. Persistent moderate asthma:

Salbutamol, inhalation 200/puff 1-2 pµg/puffs as needed PRN not more than 3-4 times a day. (For ADRs, C/Is, P/Cs, D/Is and dosage forms see page 191)

PLUS (Inhaled corticosteroid)

Beclomethasone, oral inhalation 200 µg, bid. Decrease the dose to 100µg, BID if symptoms are controlled after three months.

(For ADRs, C/Is, P/Cs, D/Is and dosage forms see page 359)

PLUS (if required)

Ephedrine + Theophylline, 11mg + 120mg P.O. BID OR TID

(For ADRs, C/Is, P/Cs, D/Is and dosage forms see page 193)

v. Severe persistent asthma: Refer

3. Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease (COPD)

Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) is characterized by chronic air flow limitation that is not fully reversible and a range of pathological changes in the lung. The chronic airflow limitation characteristic of COPD is caused by a mixture of small airway disease and parenchymal destruction, the relative contributions of which vary from person to person. COPD is generally a progressive disease. Cigarette smoking is the most common risk factor for COPD. Indoor air pollution, especially from burning biomass fuels in confined spaces, is associated with increased risk for COPD in developing countries, especially among women. Occupational dusts and chemicals (vapors, irritants, and fumes) are known to be risk factors for COPD.

COPD is staged based on the severity of airflow limitation and clinical feature

Clinical features

- Dyspnea : Progressive, worse with exercise, persistent (present every day)
- Chronic Cough - intermittent and may be nonproductive.
- Chronic sputum production: production may indicate COPD
- Wheezes and chest tightness
- Cyanosis
- Expiratory wheezes and decreased breath sounds on auscultation
- Raised JVP, enlarged liver and edema when right side heart failure develops

Investigations

- CBC
- Spirometry

Treatment

Objectives

- Relieve symptoms and improve exercise tolerance
- Prevent disease progression

- Prevent and treat complications
- Prevent and treat exacerbations
- Reduce mortality

Pharmacologic- start the following treatment and refer

1. **Inhaled ß2 agonist** –

   Salbutamol, MDI, 200 mcg 6 hourly as needed is using a spacer.

   (For ADRs, C/Is, P/Cs, D/Is and dosage forms see page 191)

   PLUS

2. **Inhaled corticosteroids and long acting inhaled beta -2 agonist**

   Beclomethasone, oral inhalation 200 µg, bid. Decrease the dose to 100µg, BID if symptoms are controlled after three months.

   (For ADRs, C/Is, P/Cs, D/Is and dosage forms see page 359)

   OR (Preferred if symptoms are more severe or if response is not optimal to Beclomethasone)

Management of Acute exacerbation- starts short-acting beta2 agonists and refers

Salbutamol, MDI, 200 mcg 6 hourly as needed using a spacer

(For ADRs, C/Is, P/Cs, D/Is and dosage forms see page 191)

4. Pneumocystis Carinni (P. Jiroveci) Pneumonia

PCP frequently causes pneumonia among immuno-compromised individuals. It is caused by the fungus *Pneumocystis jiroveci*. The onset is typically suba-cute over 2 to 4 weeks, with prominent symptoms of fever, non-productive cough, progressive dyspnoea, and fatigue. Patients will have an increasing tachypenia, tachycardia and cyanosis as the disease progresses.

Clinical features

- The clinical presentation of PCP is non-specific. Therefore, it should always be considered in those patients with evidence of moderate to severe immuno-suppresion who come up with Cough, progressive dyspnea or fatigue.

Investigations

- Demonstration of the organism in secretions or tissue by using appropriate stain (sputum).

Treatment

Patients suspected of PCP should be referred to Hospital.

5. Pneumonia

Pneumonia refers to acute inflammation of the distal lung-terminal airways, alveolar spaces, and interstisium. The clinical presentation and the etiology vary greatly depending on the age of the patient, the infecting organism, the site/s the infection has involved, and the immune status of thepatient and the place of acquisition of infection.

Microbiology of Pneumonia

Community acquired - *S. pneumoniae* *Mycoplasma*, *Chlamydia,* viral (espec. in young & healthy), *H. influenzae*, *M. catarrhalis* (espec. in COPD'ers), *Legionella* (espec. in elderly, smokers, T immunity), *Klebsiella* & other GNR (espec. in alcoholics & aspirators), *S. aureus* (espec. post-viral infection), Influenza A & B et al. (see "Viral Respiratory Infections"), (no organism identified in 40–60% cases)

Hospital acquired - GNR including *Pseudomonas*, *Klebsiella*, *E. coli, Enterobacter*,*Serratia*, *Acinetobacter*, & *S. aureus* (including MRSA), Acid suppression may c risk of acquiring PNA

Immunosuppressed *Above* + PCP, fungi, *Nocardia*, atypical mycobacteria, CMV, HSV

Aspiration *Chemical pneumonitis* due to aspiration of gastric contents, *Bacterial pneumonia* _24–72 h later, due to aspiration of oropharyngeal microbes. Outpatients: typical oral flora (*Strep*, *S. aureus,* anaerobes); Inpatients or chronically ill: GNR and *S. aureus*

Clinical features

"Typical": acute onset of fever, cough with purulent sputum, dyspnea, consolidation on CXR

"Atypical" (originally described as culture negative): tends to present with insidious onset of dry cough, extrapulm symptoms (N/V, diarrhea, headache, myalgias, sore throat), patchy interstitial pattern on CXR, and elevated transaminases & low serum Na with *Legionella.*

Signs, symptoms & imaging do *not* reliably distinguish between "typical" (*S. pneumo*, *H. flu*) and "atypical" (*Mycoplasma*, *Chlamydia, Legionella,* viral)

Investigations

Sputum Gram stain: Utility debated and is not routinely recommended. Is it a good sample (ie, sputum or spit)? Should be <10 squamous cells/low power field. Is it a purulent sample? Should be >25 PMNs/lowpower field

Sputum bacterial culture: In selected situations particularly in the inpatient setup. Should be transported to lab with in 1–2 h of collection. In select situations, consider respiratory viral testing (DFA or PCR), rarely viral culture.

Blood cultures (*before antibiotics!*): Positive only in about 10% of inpatients, depending on pathogen

CXR (PA & lateral): This is the most important investigation for the diagnosis of PNA.

Pleural fluid analysis: If >5 cm or severe PNA

Other labs: **SaO2** or PaO2, CBC with diff, electrolytes, BUN/Cr, serum glucose, LFTs; etc.

MTB: expectorated/induced sputum for AFB stain and mycobacterial culture (*empiric respiratory isolation while pending*); avoid quinolones if considering TB;

Induced sputum for PCP if HIV+ or known T cell-mediated immunity; HIV test

Bronchoscopy: available only in specialized hospitals. Useful in patients with difficulty of producing sputum samples and when other alternative diagnosis is considered.

Treatment

Objectives

- Treat the infection.
- Prevent complications.

Identify those that are at high risk and may require hospitalization. The "CURB-65" scoring systems suggested evaluating the prognosis and determining subsequent management:

CURB-65:

C-Confusion=1point

U-Uremia: BUN >19mg/dL=1point

R-RR >30/min= 1point

BP <90/60=1point

Age≥65=1point

If score is 1point, it is ok to give outpatient treatment. If the score is greater than 1 point, the patient needs hospitalization. The higher the score the higher the mortality.

Non pharmacologic

- Bed rest
- Adequate hydration

Pharmacologic

I. Community acquired ambulatory patients (Mild Pneumonia):

First line

No recent antibiotic use:

Clarithromycin, 500 mg P.O. BID for 5-7 days

OR

Azitromycin, 500mg P.O first day then 250mg P.O. for 4d.

OR

Doxycycline, 100 mg P.O. BID for 7-10 days.

(For ADRs, C/Is, P/Cs, D/Is and dosage forms, see page 125)

If recent antibiotic use within 3months:

Clarithromycin 500 mg P.O. BID for 5-7 days

OR

Azitromycin, 500mg P.O first day then 250mg P.O. for 4d.

PLUS

Amoxicillin, 1000 mg P.O. TID for 5 to 7 days

(For ADRs, C/Is, P/Cs, D/Is and dosage forms, see page 187)

OR

Amoxicillin-clavulanate 625mg P.O. TID for 5-7days

II. Community acquired severe Pneumonia should be referred urgently to a Hospital where they can get appropriate level of care.

III. Aspiration Pneumonia and Lung Abscess

Aspiration pneumonia is a pulmonary reaction resulting from the abnormal entry of fluid, particulate exogenous substances, or endogenous secretions into the lower airways. Most cases arise following gross "aspiration" of microorganisms from the oral cavity or nasopharynx. If untreated, pneumonia may complicate to lung abscessnecrotizing pneumonia, or empyema secondary to a bronchopleural fistula.

Lung abscess refers to a localized area of destruction of lung parenchyma, which results in tissue necrosis and suppuration. Anaerobic bacteria such as *Peptosterptococci, Fusobacterium nucleatum, and Prevotella melaninogenica* are found in about 90% of lung abscesses and are the only organisms present in about half of cases. Pathogens that commonly produce pneumonia,

such as *Streptococcus pneumoniae, Haemophilus influenzae, gram-negative bacilli, and Staphylococcus aureus* may cause lung abscess.

Clinical features

- Fever
- Cough with expectoration of copious malodorous sputum

Investgations

- Gram stain and culture help to identify the specific causative agent.
- AFB and KOH examination of sputum should be done if TB or fungal causes are considered.

Treatment

Such patients are usually very sick or may have other major co-morbidities and therefore will have to be managed in an inpatient setting. They have to be referred to a hospital.

CHAPTER XIII: EMMERGENCY CONDITIONS

1. Anaphylaxis

An acute allergic reaction or anaphylaxis is a life-threatening but rapidly reversible condition if treated promptly. Anaphylaxis can develop within minutes of injection or ingestion of medicines or contact with trigger factors. Common causes are drugs, intravenous contrast media, vaccines and antisera (e.g. TAT), insect bites, foods (e.g. sea foods, nuts)

Clinical features

- Severe itching,
- Urticarial rash
- Difficulty in breathing
- Collapse
- Facial edema
- Angio-edema causing difficulty in breathing due to laryngeal edema and obstruction
- Bronchospasm with wheeze
- Shock with severe hypotension
- Tachycardia
- Cyanosis

Investigation

- Diagnosis is clinical

Treatment

Objectives

- Remove the offending cause if possible
- Maintain airways, breathing and circulation

Non pharmacologic

Airway: Immediate intubation if evidence of impending airway obstruction from angioedema; delay may lead to complete obstruction; cricothyrotomy may be necessary

Oxygen: Give 6 to 8 liters per minute via face mask

Circulation: All patients with anaphylaxis should receive intravenous fluids.

Some patients may require large amount of intravenous fluids due shift of intravascular fluid to the interstitial space.

Adults - 1 to 2 liters NS fast, then depending on the patient response to adrenaline and the initial bolus of NS.

Position - recumbent position, if tolerated, and elevate lower extremities

Remove- the offending agent, if possible

Pharmacologic

AdrenalineIM, 0.5 ml (500microgram) of 1:1000 at mid-anterolateral thigh; can repeat every 3 to 5 minutes as needed. If symptoms are not responding to epinephrine injections, prepare IV adrenaline (2 to 10 micrograms per minute by infusion)

(For ADRs, C/Is, D/Is, P/Cs and dosage forms, see page191)

PLUS

Hydrocortisone, IV, 200 mg, IV, stat; then 100 mg 6-8 hourly for 3 – 4 days and discontinue without tapering.

(For ADRs, C/Is, D/Is, P/Cs and dosage forms, see page 192)

PLUS

Promethazine hydrochloride, IM, 25 mg 8-12 hourly. Then cetirizine 10mg. p.o, once/ day OR Loratadine 10mg, p.o. once /day OR Chlorpheniramine 4mg, p.o, QID

(For ADRs, C/Is, D/Is, P/Cs and dosage forms, see page 375)

PLUS

If wheeze develops **Salbutamol**, aerosol, 100 μg/dose, 2-4 puffs every 4-6 hr.

(For ADRs, C/Is, D/Is, P/Cs and dosage forms, see page191)

2. Animal Bites

Dog bites- cause a range of injuries from minor wounds (scratches, abrasions) to major complicated wounds (deep open lacerations, deep puncture wounds, tissue avulsions)

Cat bites -scratches typically occur on the upper extremities or face. Deep puncture wounds are of particular concern because cats have long, slender, sharp teeth. When the hand is the target of such a puncture wound, bacteria can be inoculated below the periosteum or into a joint and result in osteomyelitis or septic arthritis.

Human bites – human bites cause a semicircular or oval area of erythema or bruising that is usually visible; the skin itself may or may not be intact.

The predominant organisms in animal bite wounds are the oral flora of the biting animal (notable pathogens include Pasteurella, Capnocytophaga, and anaerobes) as well as human skin flora (such as staphylococci and streptococci**)**

Clinical features

- Pain
- Bleeding
- Swelling
- Teeth impression on bitten site
- Foreign body
- Fever
- Tenderness

Investigations

- CBC

Treatment

Objectives

- Treat associated infections
- Prevent tissue loss

Non pharmacologic

1. **Wound care**
   - The surface should be cleaned with 1% povidone iodine
   - Irrigate the depths with copious amounts of saline using pressure irrigation.
   - Debridement of devitalized tissue
   - Explored to identify injury to underlying structures & presence of a foreign body
2. **Primary closure**
   - Nearly all cats, human and most dog bites are left open (to heal by secondary intention).
   - When primary closure is strongly considered because of cosmetic reasons the wound should be
     - Clinically uninfected,
     - Less than 12 hours old
     - NOT located on the hand or foot

Pharmacologic

1. Antibiotic prophylaxis

Indications

- Deep puncture wounds
- Associated crush injury
- Wounds on the hand(s) or in close proximity to a bone or joint
- Wounds requiring closure
- Bite wounds in compromised hosts (eg, immunocompromised and adults with diabetes mellitus**)**

First line

Amoxycillin- clavulanate500/125mg, PO, TID for 3-5 days

Alterantive

Doxycycline, 100mg, PO, BID for 3-5 days

(For ADRs, C/Is, D/Is, P/Cs and dosage forms, see page 125)

OR

Cotrimoxazole 960mg, PO, BID for 3-5 days

(For ADRs, C/Is, D/Is, P/Cs and dosage forms, see page 85)

OR

Cefuroxime 500mg, PO, BID for 3-5 days

PLUS

Metronidazole 500mg, PO, TID for 3-5 days

(For ADRs, C/Is, D/Is, P/Cs and dosage forms, see page 82)

Cloxacillin and cephalexin should be avoided in human, dog or cat bites

2. Infection treatment

For infected wound use the above antibiotics mentioned for prevention but for prolonged duration 10 -14 days

3. Tetanus and Rabies prevention

- **Tetanus toxoid (TT**), I.M.0.5ml once, for primary or booster immunization
- **TAT** (tetanus anti toxin) , 3000 units, sc,stat, for all adults with animal or human bites except for those with clean and minor wounds after skin test

ADRs: Allergic reactions (rarely, may include anaphylaxis), fever, lymph adenopathy, neurologic reaction (confusion, headache, seizures, sleepiness, vomiting, irritability); redness or lump at site of injection

- **Rabies prophylaxis**- both passive administration of rabies immune globulin (with as much of the dose as possible infiltrated into and around the wound) and active immunization – for the details see section on Rabies

Snake Bites

The majority of snakebites are non–poisonous; only few species are venomous (poisonous).Most common venomous snakes are the pit vipers (vasculotoxic) and the elapidae and hydrphidae (primarily neurotoxic).

Children, because of their smaller body size, are far more likely to have severe envenomination.

Clinical features

- Cranial nerve paralysis - ptosis, opthalmoplegia, slurred speech
- Bulbar respiratory paralysis - drooling, and inability to breath properly
- Impaired consciousness, seizures
- Meningism
- Tender and stiff muscles
- Rapid progression of swelling to more than half of bitten limb
- Blistering ,necrosis and bruising
- Fascial compartmentalisation on bitten digits.

Investigations

- CBC
- BUN and Creatinine, electrolytes
- 20 minutes whole blood clotting test (leave 2-5 ml of blood in dried test tube. Failure to clot after 20 minutes implies incoagulable blood)
- Liver function test

N.B. Avoid venopuncture in state of generalised bleeding

Treatment

Objectives

- Relieve pain and anxiety
- Rupport the respiration or circulation if indicated
- Counteract the spread and effect of the snake venom
- Prevent secondary infection

Non pharmacologic

First Aid

- Immobilization/splinting of the affected limb.
- Do not move the limb
- Carry the person on a stretcher and tie the limb to a straight piece of wood.
- If ice is available, wrap pieces in cloth and place it around the bite.
- Clean the wound and reassure the patient.

At the hospital

- Bed rest, reassure, keep warm
- Assess patient's airway, breathing and circulation (ABC of resuscitation)
- For probable venomous bites:
    - Clean site of bite with antiseptic lotion or soap and water
    - Do not attempt to suck or make any incisions at the site of the bite
    - Leave wound open; punctured wounds are especially likely to be infected.
    - If the snake is identified as non-poisonous or there is absence of swelling or systemic signs after 6 hours reassure the patient
    - Surgical debridement when required

Pharmacologic

Secondary infection:

First line

Amoxicillin/clavulanic acid, oral, 500/125 mg, TID for 5-7days

Immunization, primary or booster:

Tetanus toxoid vaccine, IM, 0.5 mL immediately

Analgesia

For mild pain:

Paracetamol, 1 g 4–6 P.O. hourly when required to a maximum of 4 doses per 24 hours.

(For ADRs, C/Is, D/Is, P/Cs and dosage forms, see page 109)

For severe pain:

ADD

Tramadol , 50-100mg, 2-3X per day

(For ADRs, C/Is, D/Is, P/Cs and dosage forms, see page 368)

N.B. The use of an NSAID is not recommended due to the potential danger of Acute Kidney Injury in a hypotensive patient.

Polyvalent antivenom

Indications for polyvalent antivenom:

- Any sign of systemic toxicity or extensive swelling
- All patients with confirmed mamba bites before symptom onset
- Patients with confirmed puff adder or Gaboon adder bites should receive antivenom at the onset of any symptoms

NB

- In most cases patients do not need and should not be given antivenom.
- The dose of antivenom is the same for adults and children.
- Serum sickness is a relatively common adverse event.
- Even after the administration of antivenom, patients with neurotoxic snakebites may need ventilation.

Polyvalent snake antivenom, slow IV infusion. Dilute 100 mL in 300ml of NS.

- Have resuscitation tray ready (adrenaline1: 1000)
- Test dose-0.2 ml, subcutaneous, to test for anaphylaxis
- Administer slowly for the first 15 minutes, as most allergic reactions will occur within this period.
- Increase the flow rate gradually to complete the infusion within one hour.

- Repeat if there is no clinical improvement after the infusion.
- Mild hypersensitivity reactions should not be a reason not to give.

3. Burn

Burn is a traumatic injury to the skin or other tissues caused by thermal, chemical, electrical, radiation or cold exposures. Burns are acute wound and pass through series of healing steps .The most common type of burn in children is from a scald injury; in adults, the most common burn occurs from a flame.

Table 1. **Classification of burns based on the depth of injury** *(Adapted from, Med Clin North Am 1997 and Am Fam Physician 1992)*

Depth	**Appearance**	**Sensation**	**Healing time**
First degree (Superficial)	Dry (no blister) Erythematous Blanches with pressure	painful	3-6 days
Second degree (partial-thickness)- superficial	Blisters Moist, red, weeping Blanches with pressure	Painful (even to air)	7 to 21 days
Second degree (partial-thickness)- deep	Blisters (easily unroofed) Wet or waxy dry Variable color (cheesy white to red) Does not blanch with pressure	Senses pressure only	Perceptive >21 days - requires surgical treatment
Third degree(full thickness)	Waxy white to gray or black Dry and inelastic No blanching with pressure	Deep pressure only	Rare, unless surgically treated
Fourth degree(extending beyond the skin)	Extends into fascia and/or muscle	Deep pressure only	Never, unless surgically treated

A thorough and accurate estimation of burnt surface area is essential to guide therapy.

Table 2. Burn injury severity grading (*modified from the American Burn Association burn injury severity grading system. J Burn Care Rehabil 1990*)

Burn type	Criteria	Disposition
Minor	<10% TBSA burn in adults <5%TBSA burn in young or old <2 % full-thickness burn	Outpatient
Moderate	10 - 20%TBSA burn in adults 5 - 10% TBSA burn in young or old 2 - 5 % full-thickness burn High voltage injury Suspected inhalation injury Circumferential burn Medical problem predisposing to infection (eg, diabetes mellitus)	Admit
Major	>20% TBSA burn in adults >10% TBSA burn in young or old >5 %full-thickness burn High voltage burn Known inhalation injury Any significant burn to face, eyes, ears, genitalia, or joints Significant associated injuries (fracture or other major trauma)	Refer after emergency management (Make sure the referral center provides burn services)

TBSA: total body surface area; Young or old: <10 or >50 years old; Adults: >10 or <50 years old

Treatment

Objectives

- Prevent ongoing burn
- Secure airway and maitain ventilation
- Correction of fluid and electrolyte deficits
- Prevetion and managemnt of infection
- Avoid or minimize permanent disablity

Non pharmacologic

1. **Emergency measures**
   - Remove clothing and jewelry.
   - Maitain adequate airway and give oxygen via face mask .
   - Establish an IV line Insert NG tube and avoid oral fluids in children with burns greater than 15% BSA.
   - Insert Foley catheter
   - Wrap all wounds with sterile towels unti further decision is made.
2. **Fluid resuscitation**
   - Ringer's lactate or NS 4mL/kg/% BSA burned: ½ the fluid is given over the first 8 hrs calculated from the time of onset of the injury and the remaining ½ is given at an even rate over the next 16 hrs
   - The rate of the infusion is adjusted according to the patient's response to therapy.
   - Adequacy of the resuscitation is reflected by vital signs, skin turgor ,adequate urine out put (1mL/kg/hr in children and 0.5 mL/kg in adults). Clinical signs of adequate perfusion are monitored every hour for the first twenty-four hours
   - During the 2nd 24 hr patients begin to reabsorb edema fluid and to diurese. ½ of the first day fluid requirement is needed as Ringer's lactate in 5% dextrose.
   - Oral supplementation may be started after 48hr post burn

Estimate body surface area of the burnt body- see annex 15

Pharmacologic management

Wound management

a. Minor burns

- Treated in an outpatient setting
- Debride all loose skin. Blisters are better not excised .
- Cleanse with mild soap and irrigate with isotonic saline.
- The wound is then covered with **Silver sulfadiazine** and properly dressed.
- The first dressing change and dressing evaluations are performed 24-48 hrs after injury

Silver sulfadiazine cream 1%, apply daily with sterile applicator

OR

Fusidic acid, thin films of 2% cream applied to skin 3-4 times daily

b. Moderate and Severe burns - refer

3. Tetanus prophylaxis

Tetanus immunization should be updated for any burns deeper than superficial-thickness..

4. Pain Management:

First Line- use depending on pain severity and response in step wise fashion

Paracetamol, 500-1000mg P.O. 4-6 times a day

(For ADRs, C/I sand dosage forms, see page 109)

OR

Tramadol 50-100mg, Slow IV or P.O, 3-4 times daily(maximum 400mg/day) (For ADRs, C/I sand dosage forms, see page 368)

5. Systemic antibiotics

- Not indicated for prophylaxis
- When there is evidence of infection (e.g. persitent fever, leukocytosis) take specimens for culture and start emperic antibiotics based on suspected site of infection. If wound infection is the suspected source of infection emperic antibiotics should cover *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, other gram negative bacterias and *Staphylococcus aureus*

4. Hypoglycemia

Hypoglycemia is a clinical syndrome in which low serum (or plasma) glucose concentrations leads to symptoms of sympathoadrenal activation and neuroglycopenia. Hypoglycemia can cause significant morbidity and may be lethal if not promptly recognized and managed.

Clinical features

Adrenergic symptoms:

- Sweating, sensation of warmth, anxiety, tremor or tremulousness, nausea, palpitations and tachycardia, and perhaps hunger.

Neuroglycopenic symptoms:

Fatigue, dizziness, headache, visual disturbances, drowsiness, difficulty speaking, inability to concentrate, abnormal behavior, loss of memory, confusion, and ultimately loss of consciousness or seizures.

The presence of **Whipple's triad** -

a. Symptoms consistent with hypoglycemia (see above)
b. A low blood glucose glucose (<55 mg/dl) level measured with a precise method (not a glucometer)
c. Relief of those symptoms after treatment the plasma glucose level is raised.

Hypoglycemia unawareness -absent symptoms (usually related to autonomic diabetic neuropathy

Major causes of hypoglycemia:

a. In patients with Diabetes Mellitus- Insulin and sulfonylureas excess dose or previous doses with unaccustomed exercise or omission of meals. Development of CKD.
b. In non-diabetic patients with critical illnesses – Hepatic or renal failure, adrenal insufficiency, sepsis, malaria.
c. Seemingly normal patients- endogenous hyperinsulinemia, accidental or surreptitioususe sulfonylureas or insulin.

Hypoglycemia caused by sulfonylureas can be prolonged for several days hence these patients should not be discharged with emergency room correction of hypoglycemia alone

Treatment

Objectives

- Quickly bring the level of blood glucose within the normal range to prevent serious brain damage.
- Maintain the level of blood glucose within the normal range until the patients begin eating normally.

Non pharmacologic

- 2-3 teaspoons of granulated sugar or 3 cubes of sugar or ½ a bottle of soft drink to individuals who are conscious.
- The above measures should be followed immediately by a meal or snack.

Pharmacologic

Dextrose 40%, IV, 40-60 ml over 1 to 3 minutes through a large vein, followed by 10% **dextrose**, IV, 500 ml, 4 hourly until the patient is able to eat normally.

5. Near Drowning

Drowning is death from suffocation (asphyxia) following submersion in a liquid medium. Near-drowning is survival, at least temporarily, after suffocation with/without loss of consciousness.

Risk factors of near-drowning:

- Inability to swim or overestimation of swimming capabilities.
- Risk-taking behavior.
- Use of alcohol and/or illicit drugs.
- Inadequate adult supervision.
- Hypothermia, which can lead to rapid exhaustion or cardiac arrhythmias.
- Concomitant trauma, cerebrovascular accident, or myocardial infarction.
- Undetected primary cardiac arrhythmia,
- Hyperventilation prior to a shallow dive which can lead to cerebral hypoxia, seizures, and loss of consciousness, which again can result in drowning

Suffocation by submersion leads to hypoxemia by means of either aspiration or reflex laryngospasm. Hypoxemia in turn affects every organ system, with the major being cerebral hypoxia.

Clinical features

- Shortness of breath, difficulty breathing, apnea
- Persistent cough, wheezing
- In stream, lake, or salt water immersion, possible aspiration of foreign material
- Level of consciousness at presentation, history of loss of consciousness, anxiety
- Vomiting, diarrhea
- Bradycardia or tachycardia, dysrhythmia

Clinical deterioration mostly develops within 7 hours of immersion.

Treatment

Objectives

- Prevent fluid and electrolyte problems related to burn

- Prevent/treat infections
- Prevent complications like contractures

Has three phases: prehospital care, emergency unit care, and inpatient care.

Prehospital care

- Cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) should be done as soon as possible without compromising the safety of the rescuer or delaying the removal of the victim from the water.
- High flow supplemental oxygen should be administered to the spontaneously breathing patient by facemask, while the apneic patient should be intubated.
- Rewarming all hypothermic patients with a core temperature <33ºC should be initiated, either by passive or active means as available.

N.B: The Heimlich maneuver or other postural drainage techniques to remove water from the lungs are of no proven value.

Emergency unit management

Rule out - injuries to the axial skeleton and internal injuries to the abdomen and chest.

In the symptomatic patient, indications for elective intubation include signs of neurologic deterioration and an inability to maintain a SPO2 >90 mmHg on high fractions of supplemental oxygen.

Inpatient management

Symptomatic patients require hospitalization for supportive care and treatment of organ specific complications..

Useful modalities of treatment:

- Elevate head of the bed, if potential cervical spine injuries are excluded.
- Diuretics to avoid hypervolemia
- Seizure activity should be controlled. Phenytoin is the preferred agent as it does not depress consciousness.
- Manage both hypoglycemia and hyperglycemia

Respiratory failure

- Bronchospasm is treated similarly to acute asthma; most cases rapidly improve with inhaled beta-adrenergic agonists.
- Antibiotics should be used only in cases of clinical pulmonary infection or if the victim was submerged in grossly contaminated water.

Hypotension- Persons with hypothermia can have significant hypovolemia and hypotension due to a "cold diuresis." Optimal fluid replacement and inotropic support.

6. Poisoning and Overdose

Poisoning represents the harmful effects of accidental or intentional exposure to toxic amounts of any substance. The exposure can be by ingestion, inhalation, injection, or through skin. The effects may occur immediately or several hours or even days after the exposure. The damage could be local or systemic.

Poisoning can be from household substances (e.g. bleach), industrial (e.g. methanol), pesticides e.g. organophosphates), therapeutic drug overdose (e.g. phenobarbitone, Amitriptyline), toxic plants (e.g. poisonous mushrooms, toxic herbal medications), bites and stings of venomous animals (e.g. snakes, bees)

Clinical features

- Clinical presentation is variable depending on the type of poison/drug, route and dose.
- Many of the manifestation are nonspecific.
- Toxidromes are sets of clinical findings which could help in guiding the possible class of the poison/drug
- It is very helpful to have a sample of the substance or the container in which it was stored as only few poisons can be identified instantly

Table 3: **Toxidromes** (*adapted from Hand book for the Mangement of poisioning and overodose, Singapore MOH, 2000)*

Toxidrome	Mental status	Pupil	Vital signs	Other	Examples of toxic agents
Cholinergic	ConfusionComa	Miosis	Bradycardiah Hypertension or Hypotension	Salivation, urinary & fecal incontinence, diarrhea, vomiting, lacrimation, bronchoconstriction, fasciculations,weakness, seizures	Organophosphate and carbamate insecticides, nerve agents,
Anticholinergic	Agitation, hallucinations, delirium with mumbling speech, coma	Mydriasis	Hyperthermia, tachycardia, hypertension, tachypnea	Dry skin & mucous membranes, decreased bowel sounds, urinary retention, myoclonus, choreoathetosis	Antihistamines, tricyclic antidepressants,antiparkinson agents, antispasmodics, phenothiazines, atropine
Tricyclic antidepressant	Confusion, agitation, coma	Mydriasis	Hyperthermia, tachycardia, hypertension then hypotension	Seizures, myoclonus, choreoathetosis, cardiac arrhythmias	Amitriptyline, nortriptyline, imipramine,
Sedative-hypnotic	CNS depression, stupor, coma	Miosis	Hypothermia, bradycardia, hypotension, hypopventilati-on	Hyporeflexia	Benzodiazepines, barbiturates, alcohols,
Opioid	CNS depression, coma	Miosis	Hypothermia, bradycardia, hypotension, hypopneventi-lation	Hyporeflexia pulmonary edema, needle marks	Opiates (eg, heroin, morphine, methadone, oxycodone)
Sympathomimetic	Hyperalert, agitation, hallucinations, paranoia	Mydriasis	Hyperthermia, tachycardia, hypertension, widened pulse pressure, tachypnea,	Diaphoresis, tremors, hyperreflexia, seizures	Cocaine, amphetamines, ephedrine, pseudoephedrine, phenylpropanolamine, theophylline, caffeine

Investigations

- CBC

Treatment

Objectives

- Maintain airway, breathing and circulation
- Reduce absorption and enhance elimination
- Antagonize or neutralize the effects
- Relieve symptoms
- Prevent organ damage or impairment

Non pharmacologic- see table 2 below

Table 4: Fundamentals of poisoning management (*adapted from Harrison's principles of Internal Medicine, 18th edition,Mc Graw Hill*)

Supportive Care	
-Airway protection -Treatment of hypoxia - correct hypotension/arrhythmia	-Treatment of seizures - Correction of temperature abnormalities -Correction of metabolic derangements
Prevention of Further Poison Absorption	
- Gastric lavage - Activated charcoal	-Decontamination of eye, skin decontamination
Enhancement of elimination	
-Multiple-dose activated charcoal -Urinary pH alkalization	- Hemodialysis - Hyperbaric oxygenation
Administration of Anti-dotes	
-Neutralization by antibodies	-Metabolic antagonism or Physiologic antagonism
Prevention of Re-exposure	
-Child-proofing	-Psychiatric referral

N.B- Induction of vomiting is contraindicated in patients who ingested caustic or corrosive substances and hydrocarbons, comatous patients and those with seizures.

Pharmacologic

Initial Management

a. **Hypoglycemia**

40% Dextrose, IV, 40-60 ml over 1-3 minutes

PLUS

b. Hypotension

Normal Saline, IV, 1000ml fast then according to response

c. Seizure management and drug-associated agitated behavior

Diazepam 10mg, IV, stat repeat doses as needed. CAUTION- respiratory depression

d. Activated charcoal, 50 gram, PO or via NG tube, diluted in 400–800 ml water

- Activated charcoal may reduce systemic absorption of a variety of substances.
- The greatest benefit is achieved if activated charcoal is given within one hour after ingestion.
- When mixing, add a small amount of water to charcoal in a container. Cap and shake container to make slurry and then dilute further

[redacted]

Table 5: Common antidotes (*adapted from Hand book for the Mangement of poisioning and overodose, Singapore MOH, 2000*)

Poison	Antidote(s)	Dose for adults
Carbon monoxide	Oxygen	high-flow oxygen by tight-fitting facemask or ventilator
Benzodiazepines	Flumazenil	Initial dose: 0.1-0.2 mg IV over 30-60 sec, repeat 0.1-0.2 mg IV every minute up to 1mg
Acetaminophen	N-acetylcysteine	Initial oral dose: 140 mg/kg, then 70 mg/kg q 4h x 17 doses
Heparin	Protamine sulfate	1 mg neutralizes 90-115 U heparin; Initial dose: 1 mg/min to total dose 200 mg in 2 h
Isoniazid	Pyridoxine (Vitamin B6)	Initial dose: 1 gm pyridoxine for every gm INH ingested or empiric 5 gm IV over 10 min if amount ingested unknown
Opiates	Naloxone	Initial dose: 0.1-2.0 mg IV push (opioid dependent patients should receive 0.1 mg IV every 30-60 sec until clinical response)
Ticyclic antidepressants	Sodium bicarbonate	Initial dose: 1-2 ampules (50-100 mEq) IV push, then IV infusion to maintain blood pH 7.45-7.55 (Preparation: 3 amps 50mEq of NaHCO3 in 1liter D5W infused at 200-

		250 mL/h)
Organophosphates **Carbamates** **Nerve agents**	Atropine	Initial dose: 0.5-2.0 mg IV; repeat q 3-5 min until sweat and secretions clear
	Pralidoxime	Initial dose: 1 gm IV over 15 min, then IV infusion of 3-4 mg/kg/h for 24-72 hrs

7. Shock

Shock is a state of circulatory collapse leading to reduction in delivery of oxygen and other nutrients to vital organs which if prolonged leads to irreversible multiple organ failure. Causes are classified as

- Hypovolemic
- Cardiogenic
- Septic shock
- Hypoadrenal
- Anaphylactic

Clinical features

- Palpitations/fatigue/dizziness/fainting
- Sweating
- Restlessness
- Clouding of consciousness
- Cold extremities
- Tachycardia
- Systolic BP < 90 mmHg

Treatment

Objectives

- Reverse shock
- Maintain airway, breathing and circulation

Non pharmacologic

- Raise foot end of bed
- Pericardiocentesis for cardiac tamponade

Pharmacologic

Infusion of fluid (Normal Saline or Ringer lactate) 1-2 liters fast; reassess the patient for adequacy of treatment; if needed repeat the bolus with maximum tolerated dose being 60 – 80 ml/kg with in the first 1 – 2 hr. After a trial of fluid refer urgently

8. Stroke (Cerebrovascular Accident)

Cerebrovascular accident (Stroke) is an acute event in/of the blood vessels of the brain resulting in ischemia or infarction and sudden loss of focal brain function. It is the major neurological disease of our times. The symptoms of brain ischemia may be transient; lasting seconds to minutes, or may persist for longer periods of time.

The causes may be intrinsic to the vessel, as in atherosclerosis, lipohyalinosis, inflammation, amyloid deposition, arterial dissection, developmental malformation, aneurysmal dilation, or venous thrombosis OR MAY originate remotely, as occurs when an embolus from the heart or extracranial circulation lodges in an intracranial vessel OR result from inadequate cerebral blood flow due to decreased perfusion pressure or increased blood viscosity OR result from rupture of a vessel in the subarachnoid space or intracerebral tissue.

Stroke can lead to transient brain ischemia (transient brain ischemic attack or TIA) or permanent brain infarction (ischemic stroke)-which account for80 % of strokes or may be due to subarachnoid hemorrhage or an intracerebral hemorrhage (primary hemorrhagic stroke) which constitute-20 % of all strokes.

Investigation and treatment - Provide emergency support (satblize vital signs, correct hypoglycemia) and refer

9. Sudden Cardiac Arrest

Sudden cardiac arrest (SCA)) refer to the sudden cessation of cardiac activity with hemodynamic collapse, typically due to sustained ventricular tachycardia/ventricular fibrillation when the event is reversed with intervention or spontaneously ; if it is not reversed it will be labeled as sudden cardiac death.

It usually occurs in individuals with structural heart disease but in the absence of detectable clinical findings. Acute myocardial ischemia, electrolyte abnormalities, antiarrhythmic drugs and worsening heart failure can precipitate sudden cardiac arrest.

Clinical features

- Instantaneous or abrupt onset collapse with or without prodrome
- Absent pulse
- Absent or gasping type of breathing
- Unresponsive

Investigations

- During the episode no work up is needed except having continuous ECG monitoring together with emergency management.
- Post SCA work up is needed- Troponin, Echocardiography, Electrolytes , RFT

Treatment

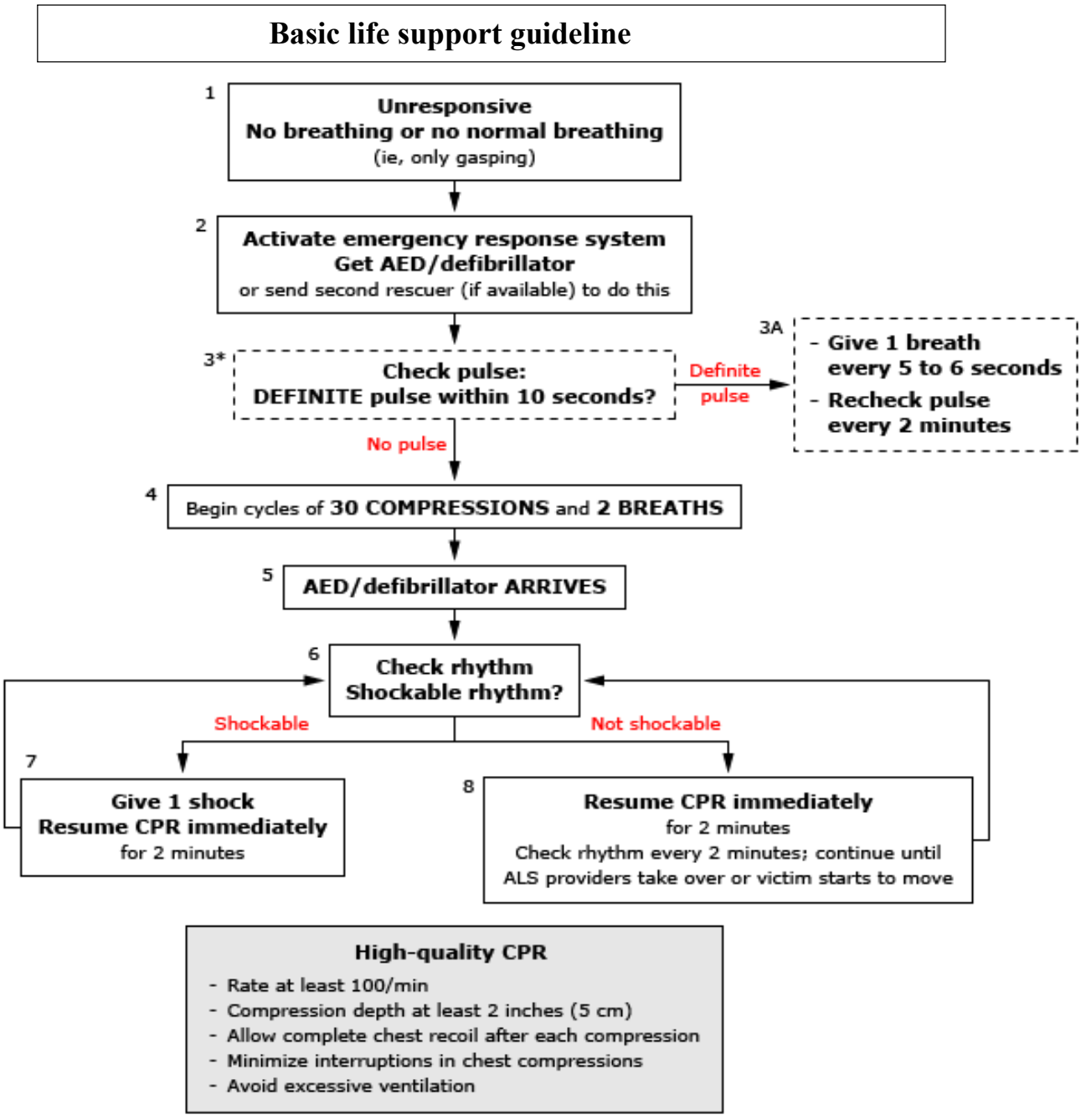
Objectives

- Achieve adequate ventilation
- Control cardiac arrhythmias
- Stabilize blood pressure and cardiac output
- Restore organ perfusion

Non pharmacologic

Provide Basic life support (BLS) and refer with escort

Fig 1: BLS guideline (*adapted from the 2010 American Heart Association Guidelines for Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation and Emergency Cardiovascular Care)*



10. Upper Gastrointestinal Bleeding (Acute)

Upper gastrointestinal (GI) bleeding is bleeding from the GI tract proximal to the ligament of Treitz. It commonly presents with hematemesis (vomiting of blood or coffee-ground like material) and/or melena (black, tarry stools). Hematochezia (frank blood per rectum) can also result from massive upper GI bleeding.

Causes: Bleeding PUD, esophageal varices, erosive gastritis, mucosal tears of the esophagus or fundus (Mallory-Weiss tear), Bleeding stress ulcer, erosive esophagitis, gastric varices, gastric cancer, and other rare vascular malformations.

Clinical features

- Hematemesis
- Dark/tarry stool
- Frank hematochezia in massive bleeding
- Abdominal pain
- Postural dizziness and fatigue
- History of liver disease, longstanding dyspeptic symptoms, NSAID use, preceding vomitng
- Tachycardia
- Hypotension
- Pallor
- Upper abdominal tenderness
- Features of portal hypertension(splenomegaly, ascites, dilated abdominal wall vessels)

Investigations and treatment- resuscitate with IV fluids and refer urgently

.

CHAPTER XIV: PEDIATRIC DISORDERS

1. Acute Post Streptococcal Glomerulonephritis

Acute post streptococcal glomerulonephritis is one of the non-suppurative complications of streptococcal throat or skin infection. It follows streptococcal throat infection by a latent period of 1 - 2 weeks and skin infection by 4 – 6 weeks. The condition is characterized by a sudden onset of hematuria, oliguria, edema and hypertension.

Clinical features

- Hematuria (usually described as smoky or cola colored)
- Edema (usually periorbital and pretibial, but may be generalized)
- Hypertension (may complicate to hypertensive encephalopathy or heart failure)
- Decreased urine output

Investigations

- Urinalysis: Macroscopic or microscopic hematuria, RBC casts, WBC, cellular casts
- Proteinuria: Rarely exceeding 3+
- ESR or C-reactive protein
- Complete Blood Count

Treatment

Objectives

- Avoid complications of hypertension and hyperkalemia
- Relieve edema
- Treat renal failure

Non pharmacologic

- Input and output monitoring chart and daily weight measurements
- Salt restriction
- Determine 24-hour fluid requirement (400ml/m^2/24hours + urine output+ any other losses)
- Giving maintenance fluid orally unless there is indication to give intravenously

Refer to a higher level for pharmacologic treatment.

2. Acute Rheumatic Fever

Acute rheumatic fever is a condition, generally classified as connective tissue disease or collagen vascular disease. It follows group a beta-hemolytic streptococcal throat infection by a latency period of about 3 weeks. It is the most common cause of acquired heart disease in children in the 3rd world countries. Acute rheumatic fever primarily affects the heart, the joints and the central nervous system. However, carditis is the only known long-term complication while all the others are self-limiting. It is rare before 5 years of age and the peak age for its occurrence is 5 – 15 years. Both sexes are equally affected. Proper treatment of streptococcal pharyngitis virtually eliminates the risk of rheumatic fever.

Clinical features

Clinical features are generally grouped in to major and minor as follows (Modified Jones criteria):

Major

- Carditis (occurs in about 50-60% of patients. It affects all the layers of the heart (endocardium, myocardium and pericardium).
- Migratory polyarthritis
- Sydenham's chorea
- Erythema marginatum
- Subcutaneous nodules

Minor

- Arthralgia
- Fever
- Elevated acute phase reactants (ESR, CRP)
- Prolonged PR-interval on ECG

Refer to a higher level for investigation and management.

3. Bronchial Asthma

Bronchial asthma is a disease characterized by reversible airway obstruction, airway inflammation and increased airway responsiveness to a variety of stimuli (hyper-reactive airway). Diagnosis of childhood asthma is entirely clinical symptoms such as intermittent dry

coughing and expiratory wheezes, which are severe at night. Older children may report shortness of breath or chest tightness. These symptoms are usually triggered or aggravated by viral infection of the respiratory tract or inhaled allergens.

Clinical features

- Intermittent dry cough
- Wheezing which is severe at night
- Shortness of breath or chest tightness, reported by older children
- Tachypnea

Danger signs during acute attacks:

- Paradoxical breathing
- Profound diaphoresis
- Cyanosis
- Silent chest on auscultation
- Drowsiness or confusion
- Agitation
- Exhaustion

Investigations

Diagnosis of childhood asthma is generally made on clinical grounds and investigations are no needed unless complication or concurrent chest infection is suspected.

Treatment

Treatment of acute asthmatic attack in children

Objectives

- Prevent respiratory failure
- Relieve symptoms

Non-pharmacologic

- Oxygen: Administer oxygen via mask or nasal cannula.
- Positioning: Upright or leaning position in older children.
- Treatment of comorbid conditions: Treat rhinitis, sinusitis or pneumonia as appropriate.
- Nutrition: Increase feeding and fluid intake as appropriate.

Pharmacologic

First-line

Salbutamol, 0.1-0.2mg/kg (1-2 puffs) 3-4 times a day or 0.075-0.1mg/kg P.O 3 times a day.

Dosage form: Metered Dose Inhaler or MDI 100mcg/puff.

(For ADRs and C/Is see page 191)

OR

Salbutamol Nebulizer, for 30 minutes (can be repeated every 20 minutes till relief of symptoms.

PLUS

Prednisolone, 1 – 2mg/kg/24hrs for 4 days in addition to the inhaled beta agonist.

(For ADRs, C/Is and dosage forms, see page 192)

Alternatives

Beclomethasone, 336 - 672µg (8 – 16puffs of 42µg/puff or >8puffs of 84µg/puff) daily in two divided doses**. (For ADRs, C/Is and dosage forms,** see page 359 **)**

OR

If a child does not improve after 3 doses of rapid acting bronchodilator given at short intervals plus oral prednisolone give:

Aminophylline – initial dose of 5 – 6mg/kg (up to maximum of 300mg), followed by a maintenance dose of 5mg/kg every 6 hours. Weigh the child carefully and give the intravenous dose over at least 20 minutes and preferably 1 hour**. (For ADRs, C/Is and dosage forms, see page 191)**

4. Croup (Acute Laryngo-Tracheo-Bronchitis)

Infectious croup is a syndrome caused by upper airway obstruction due to infection of the larynx and trachea. The spectrum of the syndrome ranges from laryngotracheobronchitis or epiglottitis to diphtheria and other bacterial tracheitis. Infants and young children develop more severe disease because of their narrow upper airway.

Clinical features

- Inspiratory stridor, Hoarseness of voice, Brassy cough, Dyspnea
- Symptoms and signs of upper respiratory tract infection

Danger signs

Severe stridor on inspiration and expiration

None or markedly reduced air entry

Change in sensorium (lethargic or unconscious)

Duskiness or cyanosis

Table 1: Modified Westley Clinical Scoring System for Croup

	0	1	2	3	4	5
Inspiratory Stridor	Not present	When agitated/active	At rest			
Intercostal recession		Mild	Moderate	severe		
air entry	Normal	Mild decreased	Severely decreased			
Cyanosis	None				With agitation/activity	At rest
level of consciousness	Normal					Altered

Total possible Score = 0 – 17.
<4= Mild Croup; 4 – 6= Moderate Croup; >6= Sevre Croup

Investigations

- The diagnosis of croup is generally clinical and investigations are seldom required.

Treatment

Objectives

- Prevent respiratory failure
- Relieve symptoms

Non-pharmacologic

a. Humidified air given by vaporizer or inhalation of steam at home or by croup**Error! Bookmark not defined.** tent in the hospital is the mainstay of therapy.
b. Severe cases need to be referred for intubation or tracheostomy.

Pharmacologic

First line

Dexamethasone, 0.6mg/kg IM, single dose (for severe cases)

(For ADRs and C/Is, see page 386)

Dosage forms: Tablet 0.5 mg, 1mg, 2mg; Injection 4mg/ml, 25mg/ml, 50mg/ml

Alternative

Epinephrine (nebulized), 0.5ml/kg of 1:1000 (1mg/ml) in 3ml NS (maximum dose is 2.5 ml for age ≤4years old, 5ml for age >4years old). Hospitalize the child if more than one nebulization is required

5. Diarrheal Disease (Acute)

Acute diarrheal disease is a common problem in infants and children and its complications - dehydration and malnutrition - are major causes of morbidity and mortality in developing countries. Clinically it is useful to distinguish two syndromes produced by gastrointestinal infection: watery diarrhea and bloody diarrhea. The leading cause of diarrhea in infants is the rotavirus followed by enteric adenoviruses. Shigella is most frequently a pathogen in children between 1 to 5 years with bloody diarrhea. Other bacterial pathogens include campylobacter, salmonella and Escherichia Coli.

Clinical features

I. Severe dehydration: If two or more of the following signs are present,

- Lethargic or unconscious,
- Sunken eyes
- Not able to drink or drinking poorly
- Skin pinch goes back very slowly

II. Some dehydration: if two or more of the following signs are present,

- Restless, irritable,
- Sunken eyes,

- Drinks eagerly, thirsty
- Skin pinch goes back slowly

III. **No dehydration: if there are no enough signs to classify as "some" or "severe" dehydration. N.B:- Diarrhea can also be classified as:**
    - **Severe persistent diarrhea:** If diarrhea lasts for 14 days or more and dehydration is present.
    - **Persistent diarrhea:** Diarrhea lasting for 14 days or more and there is no dehydration.

Dysentery: If there is blood in the stool**.** Dysentery can be an acute or persistent diarrhea and it can also be associated with dehydration.

Investigations

- Diagnosis is generally based on clinical profile.
- Stool examination or stool culture may be indicated in children with dysentery or persistent diarrhea but is not commonly needed for acute watery diarrhea.

Treatment

Objectives

- Prevent dehydration, if there are no signs of dehydration;
- Treat dehydration, when it is present;
- Prevent nutritional damage, by feeding during and after diarrhea; and
- Reduce the duration and severity of diarrhea, and the occurrence of future episodes, by giving supplemental zinc.

Non pharmacologic

Plan A

If no dehydration, treat diarrhea at home.

- Counsel the mother on the three components of home treatment.
- Give extra fluid, Continue feeding and Advise the mother when to return.
- Tell the mother to breastfeed frequently and for longer period at each feed.
- If the child is exclusively breastfed give ORS or clean water in addition to breast milk.
- If the child is not exclusively breastfed, give one or more of the following: ORS solution, food based fluids (such as soup, rice water, and yoghurt drinks or clean water).

- It is especially important to give ORS at home when the child has been treated with plan B or plan C during this visit.
- If the child cannot return to clinic, if diarrhea gets worse, teach the mother how to mix and give ORS and give the mother two packets of ORS to use at home.
- Show the mother how much fluid to give in addition to the usual fluid intake:
    - Up to two years - 50 to 100 ml after each loose stool
    - Two years or more -100 to 200 ml after each loose stool
- Tell the mother to give frequent small sips from a cup
- If the child vomits, wait 10 minutes, then continue but more slowly. Continue giving extra fluid until the diarrhea stops

Dangerous fluids not to be given

- Drinks sweetened with sugar # Commercial carbonated beverages
- Commercial fruit juices # Sweetened tea
- Fluids with stimulant, diuretic or purgatives effects (e.g., coffee)
- Some medicinal teas or infusions

Plan B: Treat some dehydration with ORS in Clinic

- Give the recommended amount of ORS over 4-hour period
- Use the child's age only when you do not know the weight. The approximate amount of ORS required (in ml) can be calculated by multiplying the child's weight (in kg) times 75.
- If the child wants more ORS than shown, give more.
- For infants less than 6 months who are not breastfed, also give 100-200 ml clean water during the 4-hour period.
- Show the mother how to give ORS solution
    - Give frequent small sips from a cup.
    - If the child vomits, wait 10 minutes. Then continue, but more slowly.
    - Continue breastfeeding whenever the child wants.

Table 2: Amount of ORS to be given during the first 4 hours depending on the age of the child

Age	Up to 4 Months	4 Months up to 12 months	12 months up to 2 years	2 years up to 5 years
Weight	6 kg	6-10 kg	10-12 kg	12-19 kg
ORS in ml	200-400	400-700	700-900	900-1400

- **After 4 hours:**
    - Reassess the child and classify the child for dehydration.
    - Select the appropriate plan to continue treatment.
    - Begin feeding the child in clinic.
- **If the mother has to leave before completing treatment**
    - Show her how to prepare ORS solution at home.
    - Show her how much ORS to give to finish 4-hour treatment at home
    - Give her enough ORS packets to complete rehydration. Also give her 2 packets as recommended in Plan A.
    - Explain the 3 components of Home Treatment

Treatment plan C: treat severe dehydration quickly.

Follow the arrows. If Answer is "Yes", go across. If "No", Go Down

START HERE

Can you give intravenous (IV) fluid immediately

Yes →

- Start IV fluid immediately. If the child can drink, give ORS by mouth while the drip is set up. Give 100 ml/kg Ringer's Lactate Solution (or, if not available, normal saline), divided as follows:

AGE	First give 30 ml/kg in:	Then give 70ml/kg in:
Infants (Under 12 months)	1 hour*	5 hours
Children 12 months up to 5 years)	30 minutes*	2 ½ hours

- Repeat once if radial pulse is still very weak or not detectable.
- Reassess the child every 1-2 hours. If hydration status is not improving, give the IV drip more rapidly
- Also give ORS (about 5 ml/kg/hour) as soon as the child can drink: usually after 3-4 hours (infants) or 1-2 hours (children).
- Reassess an infant after 6 hours and a child after 3 hours. Classify dehydration. Then choose the appropriate plan (A,B, or C) to continue treatment

No ↓

is IV treatment available nearby(within 30min) minutes)?

Yes →

- Refer URGENTLY to hospital for IV treatment
- If the child can drink, provide the mother with ORS solution and show her how go give frequent sips during the trip

No ↓

Are you trained to use a naso-gastric (NG) tube forrehydration?

No ↓

Yes →

- Start rehydration by tube (or mouth) with ORS solution give 20 ml/kg/ hour for 6 hours (total of 120 ml/kg).
- Reassess the child every 1-2 hours:
  - If there is repeated vomiting or increasing abdominal distension, give the fluid more slowly.
  - If hydration status is not improving after hours, send the child for IV therapy
- After 6 hours, reassess the child. Classify dehydration. Then choose the appropriate plan (A, B, or C) to continue treatment.

Can the child drink?

No ↓

Refer URGENTLY TO hospital for IV or NG treatment

NOTE:

- If possible, observe the child at least 6 hours after rehydration to be sure the mother can **maintain** hydration giving the child ORS solution by mouth.

Severe persistent diarrhoea

- Treat dehydration before referral

Pharmacologic

Vitamin A, 50,000 IU for children less than 6 months of age, 100,000 IU for 6 – 12 months and 200,000 IU for those older than 12 months **.**

ADRs: diarrhea, vomiting, irritability, drowsiness

C/Is: renal impairment

D/Is: cholestyramine or colestipol reduces its absorption

Dosage forms: capsule, 25,000 IU, 50,000 IU, 100,000 IU; oral suspension, 150,000 IU/ml(concentrate), 50,000 IU/ml: tablet, 50,000 IU, 100,000 IU, 200,00 IU; injection, under 200,000 IU/ml

6. Foreign Body Aspiration

Foreign body aspiration is a common problem in children aged 6 months to 4 years. Commonly aspirated materials include: nuts, seeds, or other small objects. The foreign body commonly lodges in the bronchus, usually the right one. The obstruction can lead to collapse or consolidation of portion of the lung distal to the site of obstruction.

Clinical features

- Choking at the time of aspiration followed by symptom free interval
- Chronic cough
- Persistent wheeze, usually unilateral
- Localized area of decreased air entry which is either dull or hyper resonant
- Deviation of trachea and/or apex beat to one side of the chest
- Symptoms/signs of pneumonia, which fail to respond to antibiotic treatment
- If a large foreign body is aspirated, it may lodge in the trachea and may lead to asphyxia and sudden death.

Danger signs

- Severe stridor on inspiration and expiration
- None or markedly reduced air entry
- Change in sensorium (lethargic or unconscious)
- Duskiness or cyanosis

Investigations

- Diagnosis of foreign body aspiration is generally clinical based on a classic history of choking episode or high index of suspicion.

Treatment

Non pharmacologic

Attempt to dislodge and expel the foreign body as an emergency first aid for the choking child.

For infants:

- Lay the infant on one arm or on the thigh in a head down position.
- Strike the infant's back five times with the heel of the hand.
- If the obstruction persists, turn the infant over and give five chest thrusts with two fingers, one finger's breadth below the nipple level in the midline.
- If the obstruction persists, check the infant's mouth for any obstruction which can be removed.
- If necessary, repeat this sequence with back slaps again.

For older children:

- While the child is sitting, kneeling or lying, strike the child's back five times with the heel of the hand.
- If the obstruction persists, go behind the child and pass your arms around the child's body; form a fist with one hand immediately below the sternum; place the other hand over the fist and thrust sharply upwards in to the abdomen. Repeat this up to five times.
- If the obstruction persists, check the child's mouth for any obstruction which can be removed.
- If necessary, repeat the sequence with backslaps again.

Once this has been done, it is important to check the patency of the airway by:

- Looking for chest movements.
- Listening for air entry, and
- Feeling for breath.

If the above measures are unsuccessful,

- Refer the child to a center that can make correct diagnosis and remove the foreign body through bronchoscopy.

Pharmacologic

If there is evidence for pneumonia start antibiotics (see section on treatment of pneumonia)

7. Heart Failure in Children

Heart failure in infants and young children is usually manifested by respiratory distress making it usually difficult to differentiate it from pneumonia. However, presence of marked Hepatomegaly and absence of fever may help in making the diagnosis. Older children with heart failure usually present with clinical features that are more or less similar to the adult with heart failure.

Underlying causes of heart failur in children include: congenital heart diseases (usually in the first year of life), acute rheumatic fever with carditis, infective endocarditis, Myocarditis, cardiomyopathies, pericarditis, glomerulonephritis, severe anemia etc.

Clinical features

The most common signs of heart failure, on examination, are:

- Feeding difficulty (exhaustion during breast feeding with interruption of feeding, diaphoresis and sleep)
- Failure to gain weight
- Recurrent lower respiratory infections
- Exercise intolerance in older children
- Tachycardia (heart rate>160/min in a child under 12 months of age; >120/min in a child aged 12 months to 5 years).
- Gallop rhythm
- Basal rales

- Enlarged, tender liver.
- Edema of the feet, hands or face, or distended neck veins – in older children.
- Severe palmar, buccal mucosa or conjuctival pallor, if severe anemia is the cause of heart failure.

Investigation and management

Refer to a higher level for work up and treatment.

8. HIV/ AIDS in Children

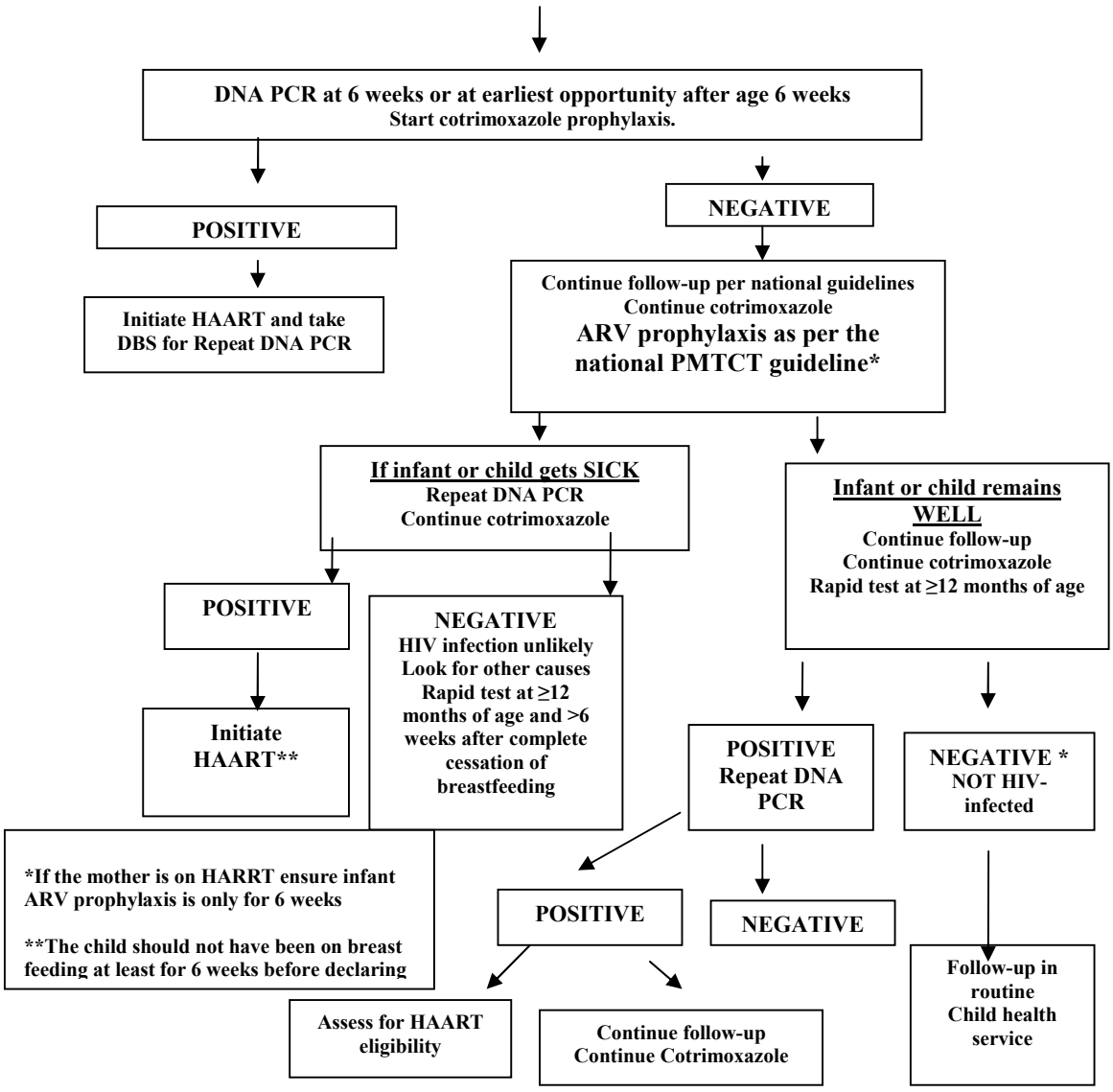
HIV/AIDS has created an enormous challenge to mankind since its recognition; close to 65 million people are infected and about 33 million people are living with HIV, out of which about 2.1 million are children under 15 years of age. Of these children, 90% live in sub-Saharan Africa and about 182,813 live in Ethiopia.

Mother-to-child transmission is the primary mode of HIV acquisition in children accounting for about 90% of cases; therefore, the most efficient and cost-effective way to tackle pediatric HIV globally is to reduce mother-to-child transmission (MTCT). Despite ongoing efforts to prevent transmissions, there are nearly 1200 new infections each day, indicating a critical need to provide antiretroviral treatment for HIV-infected children

ART has radically changed the natural course of HIV infection in countries where it has been successfully implemented and HIV-infected infants and children now survive to adolescence and adulthood.

Antiretroviral therapy in children

HIV Testing in HIV-exposed Infants <12 months Where Virologic Testing is Available


DNA PCR at 6 weeks or at earliest opportunity after age 6 weeks
Start cotrimoxazole prophylaxis.
POSITIVE
Initiate HAART and take DBS for Repeat DNA PCR
NEGATIVE
Continue follow-up per national guidelines
Continue cotrimoxazole
ARV prophylaxis as per the national PMTCT guideline*
If infant or child gets SICK
Repeat DNA PCR
Continue cotrimoxazole
Infant or child remains WELL
Continue follow-up
Continue cotrimoxazole
Rapid test at ≥12 months of age
POSITIVE
Initiate HAART**
NEGATIVE
HIV infection unlikely
Look for other causes
Rapid test at ≥12 months of age and >6 weeks after complete cessation of breastfeeding
POSITIVE Repeat DNA PCR
NEGATIVE * NOT HIV-infected
*If the mother is on HARRT ensure infant ARV prophylaxis is only for 6 weeks
**The child should not have been on breast feeding at least for 6 weeks before declaring
POSITIVE
NEGATIVE
Assess for HAART eligibility
Continue follow-up
Continue Cotrimoxazole
Follow-up in routine Child health service

Care of the HIV-Exposed Infant

- HIV-exposed infants need regular follow-up since it is difficult to exclude HIV infection at early age and as they are at higher risk of morbidity and mortality regardless of infection status.
- Goals of Care for the HIV-Exposed Infants are to:
- Recognize HIV infection early using age-appropriate testing
- Enroll early HIV-infected children into ART care
- Minimize risk of vertical transmission of HIV

Comprehensive Care for the HIV-Exposed Infant (HEI)

- Infants should be seen monthly for the first six months and then every three months.
- Infants with poor growth, failure to thrive, or recurrent illnesses should have more frequent close follow-up.
- Care for HIV exposed infants should start at birth.
- Mothers should be given appointment for the first postnatal visit at delivery.
- Mothers who do not deliver at a health facility should be given appointment at first contact with the healthcare system.
- Mothers should be counseled on infant prophylaxis
- Immunizations should be given according to the National Expanded Program on Immunization
- Counseling on infant feeding, maternal nutrition and support
- Follow-up Visit at 6 weeks of age
- Components of HEI care at this visit include:
- History: Including use of PMTCT, parental concerns, inter-current illnesses.
- Nutrition and growth assessment- plot weight, height and headcircumference on the growth chart
- Developmental assessment using developmental check list provided
- TB risk assessment:Screen for TB diseaseby using TB screening tool
- Physical examination: Giving special emphasis for symptoms and signs suggestive of HIV infection.

- Determination of HIV status **:**All HIV exposed infants should have the initial DNA PCR test done at six weeks of age
- Care givers should be counseled on the rationale for infant diagnosis; explain the possible test results, and need for additional testing to determine infection status definitely.
- Cotrimoxazole preventive therapy should be provided to all HIV- exposed infants starting at six weeks of age , and continued until HIV infection has been excluded and infant is no longer at risk from breastfeeding
- Infant for ARV prophylaxis **:**Ensure that ARV provision to the infant is per the nationalguideline for PMTCT
- Follow-up visit for HIV-exposed infants at two months:
- Infants should be assessed to ensure they are tolerating Cotrimoxazole.
- Results of the initial DNA PCR test should be made available to care giver.
- In every visit the above assessments should be done including inter- current illness evaluation.

For the management of pediatric HIV/AIDS, follow the national Pediatric ART guideline.

9. Jaundice in Neonates

About 60% of full-term and 80% of preterm infants may normally develop jaundice in the first week of life. The color usually results from the accumulation of unconjugated Bilirubin in the skin. Unconjugated bilirubin is neurotoxic, while the conjugated is not. The most important pathologic causes of unconjugated hyperbilirubinemia include: Rh incompatibility, ABO incompatibility, concealed hemorrhage etc. The most important danger of pathological jaundice in the newborn is Kernicterus (neurotoxicity resulting from unconjugated bilirubin)

"*Physiologic*" jaundice is a diagnosis made by exclusion when the following criteria are strictly met:

i. Jaundice first appears between the 2^{nd} and 3^{rd} day, peaking between the 2^{nd} and 4^{th} day and generally decreasing within the 1^{st} week of life;
ii. Peak Bilirubin level ≤ 12mg/dl in full term infants and ≤15mg/dl in preterm infants;
iii. Rate of rise of Bilirubin < 5mg/dl/24 hours;
iv. Jaundice not persisting beyond the first two weeks of life;

v. Direct reacting bilirubin <1mg/dl at any time;

PLUS

Absence of known causes of jaundice on the basis of history, physical examination and laboratory examination

Clinical features

- Yellowish discoloration of the eyes and skin
- Neurologic symptoms, if progressed to kernicterus

Refer to a higher level for work up and management.

10. Malnutrition (Severe)

Table 3: Definition for Severe acute Malnutrition (6 months old to adulthood)

Age	Criteria
6 months to 18 years	– Weight for height or length <70% OR – Mid upper arm circumference (MUAC)>110mm with a length >65cm OR – Presence of bilateral pitting edema of the feet
Infants <6 months or <3kg	▪ The infant is too weak or feeble to suckle effectively (irrespective of his/her weight-for-length, weight-for-age or other anthropometry). **or** ▪ The infant is not gaining weight at home (by serial measurement of weight during growth monitoring, i.e. change in weight-for-age) **or** ▪ W/L (Weight-for-Length) less than <-3 Z-score, **or** ▪ Presence of bilateral pitting oedema.

***T**he aim of treatment of these patients is to return them to full exclusive breast-feeding. Thus, the admission criterion is failure of effective breast-feeding and the discharge criterion is gaining weight on breast milk alone (anthropometry is not used as primary admission criterion). For details in the management of severe malnutrition in this group of infants, the reader is advised to refer to the Integrated Management of Newborn and Childhood illnesses, WHO, 2011.

Treatment

Objective

- Treat life-threatening complications
- Rehabilitate with nutrition
- Achieve catch-up growth

Phase I (Inpatient facility)

- Poor appetite and/or major medical complications.
- Formula used during this phase is F75.
- Weight gain at this stage is dangerous.

Transition phase

- Avoid a sudden change to large amount of diet before physiological function is restored.
- Patients start to gain weight as F100 is introduced.
- The quantity of F100 given is equal to the quantity of F75 given in phase I.

Phase II

- Good appetite
- No major medical complications
- Can occur at inpatient or outpatient setting
- F100 (inpatient only) or ready to use therapeutic feeding (RUTF).

Table 4: Criteria for admission to in-patient or outpatient care

Factor	Inpatient care	Outpatient care
Anthropometry	6 months to 18 yrs: - W/H or W/L <70% OR - MUAC <110mm with length >65cm	
Bilateral pitting edema	Bilateral pitting edema grade 3(+++) Marasmic – kwashiorkor	Bilateral pitting edema Grade 1 to 2 (+ and++)
Appetite	Poor appetite	Good appetite
Choice of caregiver	- Chooses to start, continue or transfer to inpatient treatment - No suitable or willing caregiver	- Chooses to start, continue transfer to outpatient treatment - reasonable home circumstance and a willing caregiver
Skin	Open skin lesions	No open skin lesions

Medical complications	− severe/intractable vomiting − hypothermia: axillary T° <35°C OR rectal <35.5°C − fever>39°C − fast breathing based on age − extensive skin lesions − very weak, lethargic, unconscious − fitting/convulsions − severe dehydration based on history & physical examination − Any condition that requires an infusion or NG – tube feeding. − Very pale (severe anemia), jaundice, bleeding tendencies	Alert with no medical complications

Non pharmacologic

PHASE I

Treatment of complications

- **Dehydration**
- "Therapeutic window" is narrow in a patient with severe acute malnutrition.
- Quickly go from having depleted circulation to over – hydration with fluid overload and cardiac failure.
- IV infusions should be avoided whenever possible.
- The standard protocol for the well-nourished dehydrated child should not be used.
- A supply of modified ORS or ReSoMal should never be freely available for the caretakers to give to the child whenever there is a loose stool.
- Ongoing loss replacement should not be given when there is no dehydration.
- **Marasmic patient**
- The usual signs of dehydration are not reliable.
- History is more important than physical examination.
- A definite history of significant recent fluid loss – usually diarrhea which is clearly like water (not just soft or mucus) and frequent with sudden onset within the past few hours or days.
- History of a recent change in the child's appearance.
- If the eyes are sunken then the mother must say that the eyes have changed to become sunken since the diarrhea has started.
- The child must not have any edema.

- Shock may be diagnosed when there is definite dehydration plus a weak or absent radial or femoral pulse, and cold hands and feet, and decrease in level of consciousness.

Treatment

- Rehydration should be oral whenever possible.
- IV infusions should be avoided except when there isshock or loss of consciousness from confirmed dehydration.
- Weight is the best measurement of fluid balance.
- Before starting any rehydration treatment, weigh the child; mark the edge of the liver and the skin with indelible pen and record respiratory rate.
- Start with 5ml/kg of Rehydration salt for malnourished (ReSoMal), (not in the National Drug List) every 30 minutes for the first 2 hours orally or by NG – tube and then adjust according to the weight change observed. If continued weight loss, increase the rate of administration of ReSoMal by 10ml/kg/hr.
- Weigh the child every hour and assess liver size, respiration rate, and pulse rate and pulse volume.

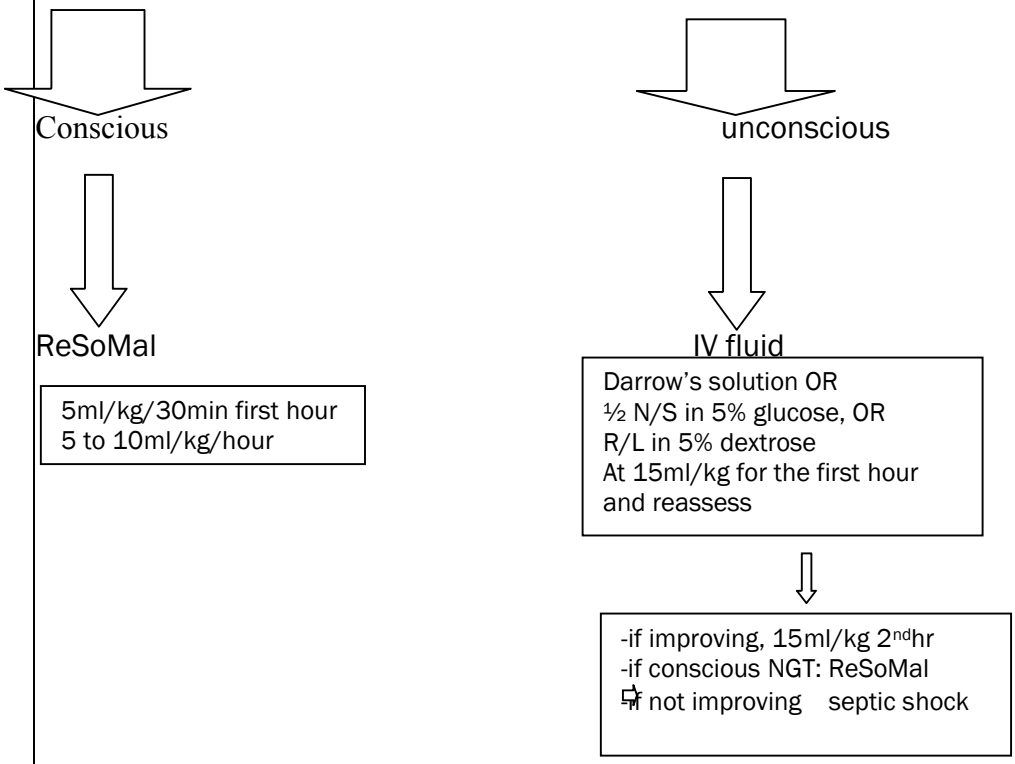
Table 5: Composition of ReSoMal, Standard WHO_ORS and reduced Osmolarity ORS

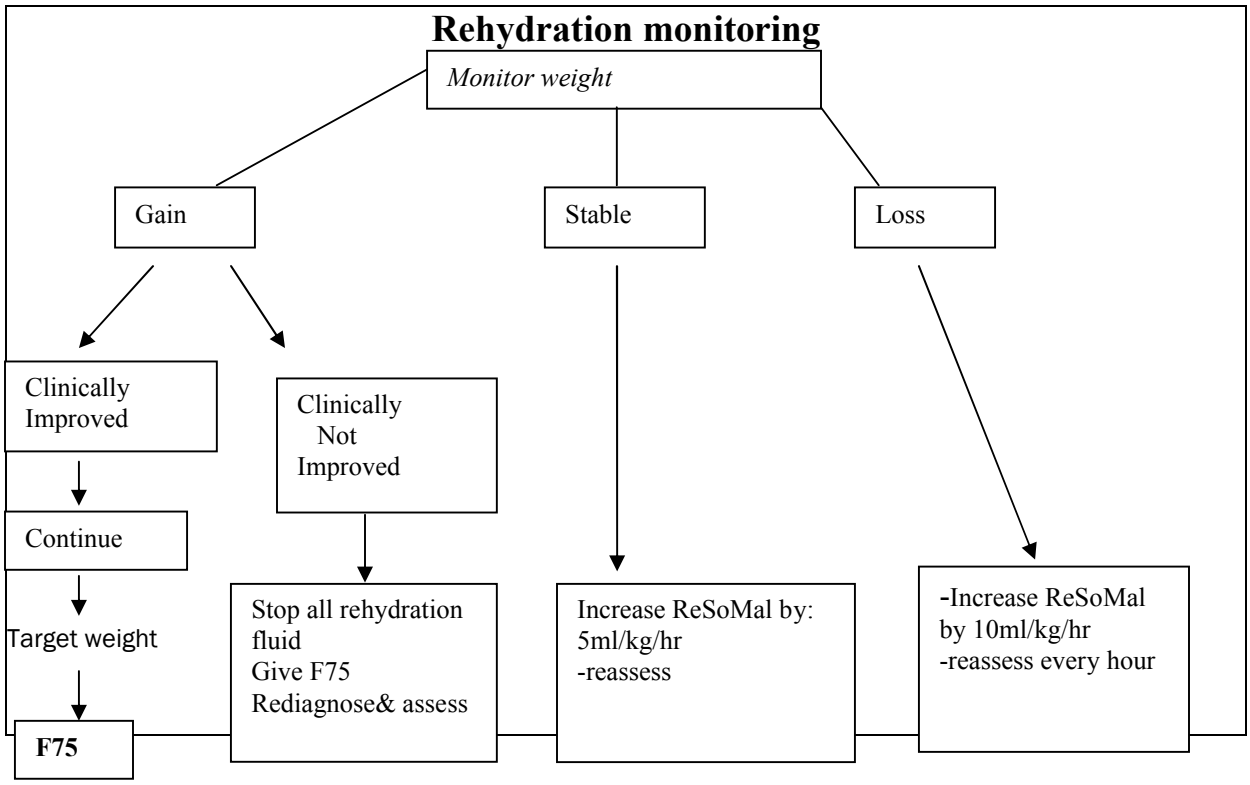
Composition	ReSoMal (mmol/L)	Standard ORS (mmol/L)	Reduced osmolarity ORS
Glucose	125	111	75
Sodium	45	90	75
Potassium	40	20	20
Chloride	70	80	65
Citrate	7	10	10
Magnesium	3	...	...
Zinc	0.3	...	...
Copper	0.045	...	...
Osmolarity (mOsm/L)	300	311	245

To make ReSoMal (45 mmol Na/L) from the new 75 mmol Na/L WHO-ORS, add 1.7 L of cooled boiled water to each 1-litre sachet of WHO-ORS, add 33 ml electrolyte mineral solution and 40 g sugar.

Non pharmacologic treatment of dehydration in the Marasmic patient

Only rehydrate until the weight deficit (measured or Estimated) is corrected and then stop – Do not give extra fluid To prevent dehydration.





Kwash patient

- All children with edemahave an increased total body water and sodium – they are over – hydrated.
- Edematous patients cannot be dehydrated although they are frequently Hypovolemic.
- If a child with kwashiorkor has definite watery diarrhea and the child is deteriorating clinically (excessive weight loss, more than 2% of the body weight per day), then the fluid lost can be replaced on the basis of 30ml of ReSoMal per day.

Septic shock

- A fast weak pulse with cold extremities
- Disturbed consciousness
- Give broad – spectrum antibiotics
- Keep warm to prevent or treat hypothermia
- Give sugar – water by mouth or nasogastric tube as soon as the diagnosis is made.
- Full blown septic shock – treat as in the Marasmic patient.
- Treat hypothermia, severe anemia, severe pneumonia and any major medical Complications

Diet

- F-75 (130ml=100kcal) should be used at this phase (see table for amounts).
- Use NG – tube for feeding if the child is taking <75% of prescribed diet per 24hrs or has pneumonia with a rapid respiratory rate or consciousness is disturbed.

Table 6: Amounts of F75 to give during Phase 1

Class of Weight (Kg)	8 feeds per day ml for each feed	6 feeds per day Ml for each feed	5 feeds per day Ml for each feed
2.0 to 2.1 Kg	40 ml per feed	50 ml per feed	65 ml per feed
2.2 – 2.4	45	60	70
2.5 – 2.7	50	65	75
2.8 – 2.9	55	70	80
3.0 – 3.4	60	75	85
3.5 – 3.9	65	80	95
4.0 – 4.4	70	85	110
4.5 – 4.9	80	95	120
5.0 – 5.4	90	110	130
5.5 – 5.9	100	120	150
6 – 6.9	110	140	175
7 – 7.9	125	160	200
8 – 8.9	140	180	225
9 – 9.9	155	190	250
10 – 10.9	170	200	275
11 – 11.9	190	230	275
12 – 12.9	205	250	300
13 – 13.9	230	275	350
14 – 14.9	250	290	375
15 – 19.9	260	300	400
20 – 24.9	290	320	450
25 – 29.9	300	350	450
30 – 39.9	320	370	500
40 - 60	350	400	500

Pharmacologic

Table 7: Routine medications

	Direct admission to in-patient (phase I)	**Direct admission to out patient (phase II)**
Vitamin A*	− One dose at admission − One dose on discharge	− One dose on the 4th week
Folic acid	One dose at admission if signs of anemia	One dose at admission if signs of anemia
Amoxicillin	Every day in phase I + 4 more days in Transition	One dose at admission + give Treatment for 7 days at home
Malaria	According to the national protocol	According to national protocol
Measles (in Those above 9 months Old	1. One vaccine at admission if no card 2. One vaccine at discharge	One vaccine on the 4th week
Iron	Add to F100 in phase 2	No. iron is already in all RUTF
Deworming	One dose at the start of phase 2	One dose on the 2nd week

*Do not give Vitamin A to edematous children (wait till edema disappears).

(For **ADRs, C/Is** and **Dosage forms of amoxicillin** and **iron** see pages 187 and 68 respectively)

Transition phase

Progress to from phase I to transitions phase when

- Appetite has improved
- Begins to loose edema and weight
- No IV line or NGT.
- The only change made to the treatment in phase I, is a change in the diet that is given from F75 to F100 or RUTF.
- The number of feeds, their timing and the volume of the diet given remains exactly the same as in phase I.

Table 8: Transition Phase: Amounts of RUTF to give

Class of Weight	Beza	Plumpy Nut	BP 100	Total
	Gram/day	Sachets/day	Bars/day	Kcal
3 – 3.4	90	1.00	1.5	500
3.5 – 3.9	100	1.00	1.5	550
4 – 4.9	110	1.25	2.0	600
5 – 5.9	130	1.50	2.5	700
6 – 6.9	150	1.75	3.0	800
7 – 7.9	180	2.00	3.5	1000
8 – 8.9	200	2.00	3.5	1100
9 – 9.9	220	2.50	4.0	1200
10 – 11.9	250	3.00	4.5	1350
12 – 14.9	300	3.50	6.0	1600
15 – 19.9	370	4.00	7.0	2000
25 – 39	450	5.00	8.0	2500
40 – 60	500	6.00	10.0	2700

The amounts given in the table are for the full 24hours period. The amounts represent an average increase in energy intake of about one third over the amount given during Phase I. However, this varies between an increment of 10% and 50% depending upon the actual weight and the product used.

Each of the RUTF products is nutritionally equivalent to F 100, with the exception that they have an appropriate amount of iron added during manufacture for children in Phase 2 (i.e. children who pass the appetite test).

If both F100 and RUTF are being given they can be substituted on the basis that about 100 ml of F100 = 20g of RUTF.

Table 9: Transition Phase: amounts of F100 to give

Class of Weight (Kg)	8 feeds per day	6 feeds per day	5 feeds per day
Less than 3Kg	F100 full strength should not be given – Only F100 diluted should be given		
3.0 to 3.4 Kg	60 ml per feed	75 ml per feed	85 ml per feed
3.5 – 3.9	65	80	95
4.0 – 4.4	70	85	110
4.5 – 4.9	80	95	120
5.0 – 5.4	90	110	130
5.5 – 5.9	100	120	150
6 – 6.9	110	140	175
7 – 7.9	125	160	200
8 – 8.9	140	180	225
9 – 9.9	155	190	250
10 – 10.9	170	200	275
11 – 11.9	190	230	275
12 – 12.9	205	250	300
13 – 13.9	230	275	350
14 – 14.9	250	290	375
15 – 19.9	260	300	400
20 – 24.9	290	320	450
25 – 29.9	300	350	450
30 – 39.9	320	370	500
40 – 60	350	400	500

The table gives the amount of F100 (full strength) that should be offered to the patients in Transition Phase. They should normally be taking 6 feeds during the day and none at night. The table below gives the amount of RUTF to give per feed if some of the feeds are being given as F100 and others as RUTF.

A common variation is to give 5 or 6 feeds of F100 during the day and then 3 or 2 feeds of RUTF during the night – this gives 8 feeds in total during the day. The volume of F100 is then read off from the previous table and the grams of RUTF from the next table, both using the 8 meals per day column and the appropriate class of weight.

Criteria to move back from transition phase to phase I

- Increasing edema.
- If a child who did not have edema develops edema.
- Rapid increase in the size of the liver.
- Any other sign of fluid overload.
- Tense abdominal distension.
- Significant refeeding diarrhea with weight loss.
- Develops medical complications.
- If NGtube is needed.
- If patient takes <75% of the feeds in transition phase even after interchange between RUTF and F100.

Phase II

Progress to Phase II from transition phase when:

- Good appetite (at least 90% of the RUTF or F100 prescribed in transition phase.
- No or minimal edema (+).

Table 10: Phase 2 amounts of F100 and RUTF to give at each feed for 5 or 6 feeds per day

Class of weight (Kg)	6 feeds/ day		5 feeds/ day	
	F100 ml/feed	RUTF g/feed	F100 ml/feed	RUTF g/feed
< 3kg	Full strength F100 and RUTF are not given below 3 kg			
3.0 to 3.4	110	20	130	25
3.5 – 3.9	120	22	150	30
4.0 – 4.9	150	28	180	35
5.0 – 5.9	180	35	200	35
6.0 – 6.9	210	40	250	45
7 – 7.9	240	45	300	55
8 – 8.9	270	50	330	60
9 – 9.9	300	55	360	65
10.0 – 11.9	350	65	420	75
12.0 – 14.9	450	80	520	95
15.0 – 19.9	550	100	650	120
20.0 – 24.9	650	120	780	140
25.0 – 29.9	650	140	900	160
30.0 – 39.9	850	160	1000	180
40 – 60	1000	180	1200	220

Table 11: Phase 2 (out-patients): amounts of RUTF to give

Class of weight (Kg)	RUTF Paste		PLUMPY'NUT ®		BP100 ®	
	Grams per Day	Grams per Week	Sachet per Day	Sachet per week	Bars per Day	bar per week
3.0 – 3.4	105	750	$1\ ^{1/4}$	8	2	14
3.5 – 4.9	130	900	$1\ ^{1/2}$	10	$2^{1/2}$	$17^{1/2}$
5.0 – 6.9	200	1400	2	15	4	28
7.0 – 9.9	260	1800	3	20	5	35
10.0 – 14.9	400	2800	4	30	7	49
15.0 – 19.9	450	3200	5	35	9	63
20.0 – 29.9	500	3500	6	40	10	70
30 – 39.9	650	4500	7	50	12	84
40 – 60	700	5000	8	55	14	98

11. Meningitis

1. Neonatal

Meningitis in the neonatal period may be caused by bacteria, viruses, fungi or protozoa. Meningitis may be associated with sepsis or present itself as a focal infection. The most common bacterial causes of neonatal meningitis are group B streptococcus *E. coli* and Listeria.

Clinical features

- Initially, non-specific, including fever or hypothermia, failure to feed, vomiting
- Lethargy
- Seizure
- Full fontanel
- Nuchal rigidity, generally rare.

Investigation and management

Refer to a higher level if this diagnosis is suspected.

2. Pyogenic meningitis beyond neonatal period or generally after 2-3 months

This is an acute and one of the most potentially serious infections in infants and children that affects the central nervous system. The usual etiologic agents in causing meningitis in children are: *H. influenzae, N meningitidis*and *S. pneumoniae.*The signs and symptoms of meningitis are variable and depend on the age of the patient.

Clinical features

In infants whose cranial sutures are still open,

- fever
- vomiting
- irritability
- lethargy
- convulsion
- bulgingof the anterior fontanel

In older children focal neurologic signs, such as:

- A sixth nerve palsy, may be more prominent

- Signs of meningeal irritation, such as nuchal rigidity, kerning's sign or Brudziniskisign are usually present.

Investigations and management

Refer to a higher level if this diagnosis is suspected after giving a first dose of ceftriaxone 100mg/kg IV.

12. Nephrotic Syndrome

Nephrotic syndrome is characterized by heavy proteinuria (40mg/m^2/hour on timed urine collection or spot urine protein to urine Creatinine ratio > 2, or dipstick on early morning urine sample of 3+ or 4+), hypoalbuminemia (<2.5gm/dl) hypercholesterolemia (> 200mg/dl) and edema. About 90% of children beyond one year of age and less than 12 years of age, with nephrotic syndrome have minimal change disease with steroid responsiveness. The commonest age at presentation is 2 – 6 years. After an apparent response to steroid treatment a patient may have relapse, which is defined as proteinuria of 2+ or more on dipstick for 3 consecutive days with or without edema.

Clinical features

- Periorbital and pedal edema
- Generalized edema, including ascites and pleural effusion in some patients
- Hypertension: Generally rare but can occur in some patients

Investigations

- Urine dipstick (protein, blood)
- Early morning spot urine protein to Creatinine ratio or urine albumin to urine Creatinine ratio
- Complete blood count

Treatment

Objectives

- Relieve symptoms
- Alleviate proteinuria
- Spare the kidney from damage by proteinuria

Non pharmacologic

- While the child is edematous, restrict salt and reduce maintenance fluid to 70% of the normal.
- Critical assessment of temperature, blood pressure, pulse, capillary refill time and weight changes
- Educate the child and family about the disease, its management and its prognosis.

Pharmacologic Refer to a higher level for pharmacologic treatment

13. Oral Trush

This is a condition caused by candida species and is a punctate or diffuse erythema and white pseudomembranous plaque affecting the oral mucosa. The lesions may become confluent plagues involving extensive regions of the mucosa. Plagues can be removed with difficulty to reveal a granular base that bleeds easily. After the neonatal period, the presence of oral thrush-without antibiotic treatment, or lasting over 30 days despite treatment or recurring is highly suggestive HIV infection.

Clinical features

- Pain and difficulty of feeding
- Fever, occasional
- Vomiting if extends to the esophagus
- Whitish curd-like plaques on the tongue and oral mucosa
- Bleeding upon removal of the plaque
- Evidence for immunosuppression usually present, especially beyond the neonatal period

Investigations

- Diagnosis of oral thrush is entirely clinical and investigations are not needed

Treatment

Objectives

- Alleviate symptoms and improve feeding
- Decrease the risk of complications
- Identify the underlying cause, if any

Non pharmacologic

- Support feeding (if admitted, use naso-gastric tube feeding, especially in severe cases

Pharmacologic

First line

Nystatin (100 000) units/ ml) suspension: Give 1-2 ml into the mouth 4 times a day for 7 days. **(For ADRs, C/Is and dosage forms, see page 88)**

Alternatives

Miconazole, apply thin films of 2% cream BID for four days or until lesion disappears (For ADRs, C/Is and dosage forms, see page 274)

OR

Ketoconazole, apply thin films of 2% cream BID until lesion disappears.

(For ADRs, C/Is and dosage forms, see page 90)

OR

Gentian violet, paint the mouth with half strength twice daily

14. Osteomyelitis

Infections of bones and joints in children are important because of their potential to cause permanent disability. Skeletal infections are more common in infants and toddlers than in older children. The risk of permanent disability is increased if the growth plate of bone or the synovium is damaged. Bacteria are the most common pathogens in acute skeletal infections with *S. aureus* being the most common cause in all age groups including newborns.

Clinical features

- Earliest signs and symptoms may be subtle
- Neonates may exhibit pseudoparalysis or pain with movement of the affected extremity
- Older infants and children may have fever, pain and localizing signs such as edema, erythema and warmth.

Investigations

- Diagnosis of osteomyelitis is generally clinical
- Definitive diagnosis is by aspirations of the infected site for gram stain and culture

Treatment

Objectives

- Alleviate symptoms
- Decrease the risk of complications
- Facilitate appropriate growth

Non-pharmacologic

- Immobilize and elevate the affected limb

Pharmacologic

Control pain with oral **paracetamol** 10mg/kg every 4 – 6 hours

(For doses regimens, ADRs, C/Is and dosage forms, see page 109)

Refer to a higher level for pharmacologic or invasive treatment.

15. Pertusis (Whooping Cough)

Pertusis or whooping cough is a highly contagious clinical syndrome caused by a variety of agents including *Bordetella pertussis*, other Bordetella species and adenovirus. History of similar illness in the vicinity is an important evidence for diagnosis. A course of Pertussis can be divided in to catarrhal, paroxysmal and convalescent stages. Appropriate and timely immunization is protective.

Clinical features

- The catarrhal stage is marked by nonspecific upper respiratory tract symptoms including runny nose and low grade fever.
- The characteristic paroxysmal stage follows during which repetitive coughs are followed by an inspiratory whoop
- The child is well and playful between paroxysms of cough
- Post tussive vomiting
- Cyanosis, occasionally after a paroxysm of cough
- The convalescent stage begins after 4-6 weeks.

Investigations

- Diagnosis of pertussis is entirely based on clinical grounds and presence of similar illness in the vicinity.
- White blood cell count may be elevated

Treatment

Objectives

- Relieve symptoms
- Avoid complications

Non pharmacologic

- Nutritional support

Pharmacologic

First line

Erythromycin, 12.5mg/kg P.O. QID for ten days

(For ADRs, C/Is and dosage forms, see page 268)

Alternatives

Clarithromycin, 15 – 20mg/kg/24hours, P.O. divided in to two doses for 7 days

OR

Azithromycin, 10mg/kg/24hours, P.O. for 5 days

16. Pneumonia in Children

Pneumonia defined as inflammation of lung parenchyma, is caused virtually by every class of microorganisms and a specific etiologic diagnosis is often difficult in children. Viruses and mycoplasma pneumoniae are the primary agents causing pneumonia followed by bacteria. WHO recommends diagnosis of pneumonia when children under five have acute on-set cough with tachypnea. A child presenting with cough or difficult breathing may be classified as follows:

Clinical features

According to the IMNCI classification, a child presenting with cough or difficult breathing is classified as having severe pneumonia, pneumonia or no pneumonia: cough or cold.

Severe pneumonia:

- Cough or difficult breathing
- Lower chest indrawing,
- Nasal flaring,
- Grunting in young infants.
- Fast breathing or abnormal breath sounds may also be present.

Pneumonia:

- Cough
- Fast breathing
- But no signs for severe pneumonia.

No pneumonia:

- Cough or cold**,** if no sign for pneumonia or severe pneumonia.

Investigations

- The decision to treat a child who has pneumonia is usually made clinically
- Antibiotic therapy is directed at the most likely pathogens as suggested by the child's age, clinical presentation (including severity of illness), and not on investigations.

Treatment

Objectives

- Alleviate symptoms
- Prevent respiratory failure
- Prevent complications

Non-pharmacologic

- Soothe the throat; relieve the cough with a safe remedy
- Safe remedies to recommend include;
- breast milk for exclusively breast-fed infants
- Home fluids such as tea with honey, fruit juices
- Give oxygen for those in respiratory distress via nasal cannula

Pharmacologic

Antipyretic
First line

Paracetamol, 10-15 mg /kg PO up to 4 times a day for the relief of high fever equal to or above 39 ^{0}C. **(For ADRs, C/Is and dosage forms,** see page 109)

Alternatives

Ibuprofen, 5 – 10mg/kg/dose every 6 – 8hr P.O. (max. 40mg/kg/24hours).

Antibiotic

First-line

Amoxicillin, 30-50 mg /kg/24hourss P.O. TID for 7 days

(For **ADRs** and **C/Is,** see page **187)**

Alternatives

Azithromycin, 10mg/kg/24 PO once daily for 03 days

Severe Pneumonia

Indication for admission (inpatient treatment)

- Respiratory distress (Apnea, grunting, nasal flaring,chest indrawing)
- Hypoxemia (<90% Oxygen Saturation) or cyanosis
- All infants under age 4 months
- Toxic appearance
- Dehydration with Vomiting or poor oral intake
- Immune-compromised patient
- Pneumonia refractory to oral antibiotics
- Unreliable home environment

Benzyl penicillin, 50,000units/kg/24hours IM OR IV QID for at least 3 days

N.B. When the child improves switch to oral Amoxicillin: 30-50mg/ kg/24 hours 3 times a day. The total course of treatment is 10 days. (For ARDs, C/Is and Dosage forms, see page 187).

If the child doesn't improve within 48 hours, switch to ceftriaxone 50mg/Kg/24 hours IM/IV for 5 days (For ADRs, C/Is and dosage forms, see page 86)

17. Rickets

Rickets is a disease caused by deficiency of vitamin D. It is a condition in which there is failure to mineralize growing bone or osteoid tissue. The early changes of rickets are seen radiographically at the ends of long bones, but evidence of demineralization in the shafts is also present. If rickets is not treated at this stage, clinical manifestations appear. Rickets can result from either inadequate intake of vitamin D caused by inadequate direct exposure to sunlight, the rays of which do not pass through ordinary window glass or inadequate vitamin D intake, or both. Rickets usually appears toward the end of the first and during the second year of life.

Clinical features

- Craniotabes: one of the earliest clinical sign of rickets caused by thinning of the outer table of the skull (ping-pong ball sensation when pressing firmly over the occiput or posterior parietal bones).
- Box like appearance of the head (caput quadratum)

- Delayed teeth eruption
- Palpable enlargement of the costochondral junctions (rachitic rosaries)
- Thickening of the wrists (wrist widening)
- Thickening of the ankles (double malleoli)
- Pigeon breast deformity (projecting forward of the sternum)
- A horizontal depression along the lower boarder of the chest (Harrison's groove)
- Bowing of the legs (genu varum deformity) or knock-knees (genu valgum deformity), are relatively late signs occurring after the child starts to bear weight.
- Deformed pelvis and retardation of linear growth
- Greenstick fractures (late signs)

Investigations

Prevention

- Regular exposure to direct sun light of infants and young children
- Oral administration of vitamin D especially to those breast-fed infants whose mothers are not exposed to adequate sunlight (supplemental dose of 400 IU Vitamin D daily, orally).

Treatment

Objectives

- Ensure proper physical growth of the child
- Avoid long term complications of bone deformity
- Avoid acute complications, including recurrent pneumonia, hypocalcaemia etc.
- Avoid pathological fractures

Non-pharmacologic

Regular exposure to direct sun light without clothing, without applications of any ointments and no glass windows

Pharmacologic

Mega dose of Vitamin D (600,000 IU intramuscularly as a single dose)

18. Seizures (Neonatal)

Seizures can be the most dramatic indication of neurologic abnormality in the newborn, yet most neonatal seizures are subtle or even silent. There are five types of neonatal seizures: Subtle seizures (presenting with apnea, starring, lip smacking, chewing or eye blinking); Focal clonic; Multifocal clonic; tonic, and Myoclonic seizures. The causes of neonatal seizures include metabolic, toxic, structural and infectious diseases.

Clinical Features

- Neurologic signs like abnormal focal movements,
- Subtle manifestations like sucking movements

Investigations

- Laboratory –blood glucose level, electrolytes (calcium ,magnesium),
  CSF analysis and CSF culture if meningitis is suspected,

Treatment

Objectives

- Terminate seizure
- Prevent brain damage
- Ensure appropriate brain development
- Prevent disability

Non pharmacologic

- Ensure patency of the airway
- Check breathing and circulation

Pharmacologic

Refer to a higher level for work up and treatment.

19. Sepsis (Neonatal)

Neonatal sepsis is defined as bacteremia with systemic manifestation in the absence of other primary systemic problems during the first 28 days of life' Neonatal sepsis can be divided into two subtypes:

Early onset sepsis: Occurs with in the first 72 hours of life. It is caused by organisms prevalent in the genital tract of the mother or in the labour room, which includes mainly group B streptococci, *E coli*, Coagulase-negative Staphylococcus and L. monocytogenes. Majority of the

neonates with early onset sepsis clinically manifest with respiratory distress due to intrauterine pneumonia. Early onset sepsis has usually fulminant course and high mortality.

Late onset sepsis: The onset is delayed for a minimum of four days in most cases symptoms appear by the end of first week of life. About 2/3 cases of late onset septicemia are caused by gram negative bacilli while the rest are contributed by gram positive organisms. Meningitis is more frequent.

Recognition of systemic sepsis signs are usually non-specific since other conditions cause similar clinical states (e.g., cardiac or respiratory failure, metabolic disorders)

Clinical features

- Pallor, lethargy, jaundice, feve, hypothermia
- temperature instability (note 1/3 of confirmed sepsis cases are normothermic)
- hypoglycemia, increased respiratory rate, apnea, grunting, cyanosis
- tachycardia , bradycardia episodes, poor perfusion, hypotension
- petechiae, bleeding from puncture sites
- poor feeding, vomiting, abdominal distension, feed intolerance
- bilious aspirates/vomitus and loose stools
- lethargy, irritability,seizures

Any baby who is unwell must be considered at risk of sepsis and appropriate antibiotics commenced as soon as possible after taking cultures. Inability to obtain cultures should not delay administration of antibiotics.

Investigations

- Laboratory:- complete blood count, CSF analysis, urinalysis, stool culture

Treatment

Objectives

- Alleviate symptoms
- Avoid life-threatening complications
- Prevent multi-organ failure

Non pharmacologic

- Maintenance of body temperature (Kangaroo mother care, radiant warmer, incubator)
- Adequate calorie and fluid maintenance
- Correction of associated metabolic abnormalities

Pharmacologic

Refer to a higher level for work up and treatment

20. Tuberculosis in Children

Tuberculosisis (TB) a chronic infectious disease caused in most cases by Mycobacterium tuberculosis. Occasionally it can be caused by Mycobacterium bovis or Mycobacterium africanum of TB in children is difficult because of the presence of a wide range of non-specific symptoms. It is important to make a clear distinction between infection and disease. In infection, only the Mantoux test may be positive (10mm), but the child is healthy and does not have any signs and does not, therefore, need anti TB treatment. If there is TB-disease there are clear signs and symptoms.

Clinical features

- Symptoms and signs may be confusing in children co-infected with HIV
- Fever
- Cough lasting for more than 2 weeks (sputum production uncommon in infants and young children)
- Dyspnea
- Recent weight loss or failure to gain weight
- Night sweats are uncommon in infants and young children
- Rales, wheezing and decreased air entry, more common in infants
- Extra-pulmonary involvement, more common in infants and young children

Investigations

- Sputum or gastric aspirate for acid-fast stain
- Erythrocyte Sedimentation rate (ESR)
- WBC and differential count

Table 12: Criteria for the diagnosis of tuberculosisin children

Suspected tuberculosis
An ill child with a history of contact with a confirmed case of pulmonary tuberculosis Any child: - Not regaining normal health after measles or whooping cough - With loss of weight, cough and wheeze not responding to antibiotic therapy for respiratory disease - With painless swelling of superficial lymph nodes
Probable tuberculosis
A suspect case and any of the following: - Positive (10 mm in diameter) induration on tuberculin testing (see appendix V) - Suggestive appearance on chest radiograph (e.g. unilateral hilar/mediastinal lymphnode enlargement with or without lobar or segmental opacity, miliary patter, pleural effusion, infiltrates and cavitation) - Suggestive histological appearance of biopsy material
Confirmed tuberculosis
- Detection by microscopy or culture of tubercle bacilli from secretions or tissues - Identification of tubercle bacilli as Mycobacterium, tuberculosis by culture

Treatment

Objectives

- Avoid complications and mortality
- Cure the infection
- Ensure adequate growth and development

Non-pharmacologic

- Nutritional support
- Emotional support for the child and family

Pharmacologic

Short course chemotherapy as Category III

The treatment regimen for this category is 2(RHZ)/6EH. This regimen consists of 8 weeks treatment with **Rifampicin, Isoniazid** and **Pyrazinamide** during the intensive phase followed by six months of **ethambutol** and **Isoniazid**

CHAPTER XV: DERMATOLOGICAL DISORDERS

1. Acne Vulgaris

Acne vulgaris is a chronic inflammatory disease of the pilosebaceous follicles, characterized by comedones, papules, pustules, nodules, and often scars. Acne typically begins at puberty. The disease is characterized by a great variety of clinical manifestations, non inflammatory or inflammatory.

Clinical features

- Comedones (black or white heads).
- Papules, pustules, nodules, cysts or scars.
- Lesions are mostly confined to the face, upper arm, chest and back.

Investigations

- Diagnosis is clinical.

Treatment

Objectives

- Improve cosmetic appearance
- Prevent complications particularly scarring.

Non pharmacologic

- Cleansing the face with oil-free cleansers twice daily
- Avoiding oil containing moisturizers and vaseline.
- Use oil free moisturize and alcohol containing toners instead.
- Avoiding squeezing
- Counselling of patient.

Pharmacologic

a. Mild Acne:

First line

Retinoic acid (Tretinoin) – start with 0.025% cream or 0.01% gel and gradually increase the concentration to 0.05% cream or 0.025% gel, then to 0.1% cream, then to 0.05% lotion. Start with every other day regimen and make twice daily based on tolerance of the skin for irritating effect of retinoids. Improvement is seen after 2 – 5 months.

ADRs: Transient burning, excessive redness, dryness, oedema or blistering, heightened susceptibility to sunlight

C/Is: hypersensitivity to retinoic acid

D/Is: sulphur, benzoyl peroxide, salicyclic acid, resorcinol, thiazides, tetracyclines, fluoroquinolones, phenothiazines, sulfonamides).

P/Cs: eczema.

Dosage forms: Cream, 0.025%; Gel, 0.01%, 0.025%; Lotion, 0.025%, 0.05%; Ointment, 0.05%

Alternatives

Clindamycin , 1% gel or lotion;

OR

Erythromycin 2-4% gel, lotion or cream,

(For ADRs, CIs and dosag**e forms,** see pages 268)

OR

Azelaic Acid 20% applied twice daily.

ADRs Skin irritation

Dosage form: Cream, 20%

b. Moderate Acne

First line

The above topical medications

PLUS

Doxycycline, 100mg po QD for a minimum of 6 months depending on clinical response

(For ADRs, C/Is and dosage forms, see pages 125)

OR

Tetracycline 250 – 500 mg two to four times daily for a minimum of six months

(For ADRs, C/Is and dosage forms**,** see page 188)

OR

Azythromycin, 250 -500mg three times weekly 12 weeks

c. Severe Acne

Refer patient to hospital.

2. Bacterial Folliculitis

Bacterial folliculitis (follicular pustules) is an infection usually caused by *Staphylococcus aureus*. Predisposing factors may be local or systemic impairment of the immune system, increased or changed bacterial flora of the follicles, systemic diseases e.g. diabetes mellitus, prolonged contact or treatment with fatty oils. It can progress to furuncles.

Clinical features

- Small, 1-4 mm pustules or crusted
- Papules on an erythematous base that heal without scarring.
- Frequently involved areas are the the face, chest, back, axillae or buttocks.

Investigations

- Diagnos is clinical

Treatment

N.B. Before treatment is started, evaluate the patient for systemic or local causes, underlying diseases or occupational exposure to oil and others.

Objectives

- Prevent complications like furuncles.

Non pharmacologic

- Frequent washing with detergents e.g. soap and water to reduce the bacterial flora.

Evacuate the pustules with sterile needle and apply a disinfecting solution.

Pharmacologic

For Localized: Topical antibiotics like **mupirocin**, 2% ointment, or **fusidic acid** cream applied twice daily to the affected area for 7-10 days.

(For ADRs, C/Is and dosage forms**,** see page 287)

For Generalized:

First line

Cloxacillin: Adults: 500 mg P.O. QID for 7 to 10 days

Children: 50 – 100 mg/kg /day P.O. for 7 to 10 days divided into four doses

ADRs: Hypersensitivity reactions, nausea, loose stools, increased transaminases

CIs: Hypersensitivity to penicillin

Dosage forms: Capsule, 250 mg, Syrup 250 mg/5ml and 125mg/5ml. Injection 500 ml vial

Alternatives

Erythromycin : Adults: 500mg PO QID for 7 to 10 days

Children: 30–50mg/kg/day for 7 to 10 days in 4 divided doses

ADRs: Hypersensitivity reactions, GI symptoms, Cholestatic jaundice

CIs: Liver disease, hypersensitivity to the drug

Dosage forms: Capsule 250mg. 500mg. Syrup 125 mg. & 250 mg/5 ml

OR

Cephalexin: Adults: 250 to 500mg QID for 7 to 10 days

Children: 25 to 100mg/kg in 4 divided doses for 7 to 10 days.

For Recurrent (Chronic S. ***aureus*** **carriage)**

Mupirocin 2% ointment applied twice daily to the nares, axillae/groin and/or sub mammary area for 5 days. (For ADRs, C.Is and dosage forms see page 287)

3. Candidiasis (Candidiasis, Moniliasis, Thrush)

Candidiasis is an infection caused by the yeast like fungus *Candida albicans*. Infection by this fungus may cause different types of lesions on the skin, nail, mucous membrane and viscera. The areas where warmth and maceration of the skin permit the organism to thrive are frequently affected. These are the perianal and inguinal folds, the interdigital areas and the axillae. It may be a normal inhabitant at various sites until there is some change in the state of the area, and then it becomes a pathogen. Abnormal moisture also promotes its growth, as in moist lip corner (perleche).

Clinical features and **investigations** depend on each specific site.

a. Balanoposthitis

- Refers to candida infection of the penis.

Clinical features

- Small papules or fragile papulopustules on the glans or in the coronal sulcus

Investigations

- Microscopic examination after KOH preparation

Treatment

Objectives

- Eradicate infection

Non pharmacologic

- Manage predisposing factors like maceration and underlying diseases like diabetes and immunosupprssion..

Pharmacologic

First line

Clotrimazole, thin film of 1% cream applied to the lesion BID for about 2-3 weeks (For ADRs and dosage forms, see page 274)

Alternative

Miconazole , thin film of 2% cream applied to the lesion bid for about 2-3 weeks. (For ADRs and dosage forms, see page 274)

b. Candidal Intertrigo

Usually involves the great folds of the body (groin, inframammary, axillae, and perianal areas). It also affects the area between the fingers and toes.

Clinical features

- Red, oozing band with a whitish macerated centre and a scaly border at the affected fold.
- Isolated, flaccid, satellite, vesiculo-pustules which, when they break, show collar of scale at the periphery.

Investigations

- Microscopic examination after KOH preparation

Treatment

Objectives

- Eradicate infection

Non pharmacologic

- Avoidance of chronic exposure to moisture.

Pharmacologic

Topical application of, **Clotrimazole, Miconazole,** (For dosage schedules, ADRs, C/Is and dosage forms, see pages 274)

In those suffering form diabetes mellitus, treatment consists of bringing the diabetes under control. (See under diabetes mellitus page 51)

c. Candidal paronychia

Chronic inflammation of the nail fold - This type of infection is usually caused by *C. albicans* but frequently is of bacterial causation. It is often seen individuals whose hands are constantly wet as a result of their occupation and in elderly diabetics.

Clinical features

- Chronic paronychia causes redness, swelling, and pain of the tissue around the nail.
- Pressure on the affected region may elicit malodorous pus.
- In chronic paronychia, the cuticle separates from the nail plate, leaving the region between the proximal nail fold and the nail plate vulnerable to infection.
- It can be the result of dish washing, finger sucking, aggressively trimming the cuticles, or frequent contact with chemicals.

Investigations

- Microscopic examination after KOH preparation

Treatment

Objectives

- Eradicate infection

Non pharmacologic

- Avoidance of chronic exposure to moisture is an important prophylactic measure.

Pharmacologic

Topical application of, **Clotrimazole, Miconazol,**

(For **dosage schedules, ADRs, C/Is** and **dosage forms**, see pages 274)

OR

Systemic treatment with

First line

Fluconazole 150 mg po qd for 4-6 weeks

(For ADRs, C/Is and dosage forms, see page 89)

Alternatives

Itraconazole, pulse dosing with 200 mg bid for 1 wk of each of 3 consecutive months. (For ADRs, C/Is and dosage forms, see page 276)

OR

T**erbinafine** (250 mg qd for 3 month) is recommended.

d. Genital Candidiasis (Vulvovaginitis)

- Refer page 417

e. Oral candidiasis (thrush)

- Refer page 254

4. Carbuncle

Carbuncle is a deep bacterial infection of the skin, usually a confluence of two or more furuncles with separate heads

Clinical features

- Painful smooth dome shaped lesion that increases in size to 3-10cm or occasionally more followed by suppuration in 5 -7days and pus discharge begins through multiple orifices.
- Affects nape of the neck, back, shoulder, hip, and thigh.

Investigations

- Gram stain and culture of pus

Treatment

Objectives

- Eradicate infection.
- Minimize scarring.

Non pharmacologic

- Incision and drainage is usually necessary

Pharmacologic- See treatment of furuncules on page 271

5. Cellulitis

Cellulitis is a diffuse inflammation of the subcutaneous tissue and the skin due to bacterial infections. It usually occurs through a breach in the skin surface especially if tissue edema is present, but may abruptly affect normal skin. Cellulitis is usually caused by *Streptococcus pyogenes* but other bacteria such as *Haemophilus influenzae* and gram–negative organisms can cause cellulitis especially in children.

Clinical features

- Fever and malaise
- Warmth, redness,tenderness of the affected site
- Enlarged and tender regional lymph nodes.

Investigations

- CBC
- Fasting blood glucose.
- Wound swab for culture and sensitivity, if there is pus
- Blood culture (in the seriously ill).

Treatment

Objectives

- Relieve pain.
- Control the infection
- Treat predisposing infection/s.

Non pharmacologic

- Bed rest
- Application of warm compresses.
- Elevation of an affected limb.

Pharmacologic

First line

Procaine penicillin: Adults, 1.2 million IU intramuscularly daily for 7 to 10 days. Children: 50,000u/kg/24 hrs in a single dose for 10 days. If no improvement occurs within a day, penicillinase resistant staphylococcus should be suspected and semi-synthetic penicillins (e.g. **Cloxacillin** 0.5 – 1gm every 4 hrs.) should be administered

intravenously until the fever subsides, (usually 2 – 3 days). Then **Cloxacillin** 500 mg. P.O QID should be continued for 7 days. (For **ADRs, C/Is and Dosage forms of Procaine penicillin and Cloxacillin,** see pages 282 and 347 respectively)

Hospitalized patients should be treated with **Crystalline Penicillin** 1.2-2.4 million units IV 4 hourly.

Alternative

Erythromycin, (For dosage schedule, ADRs, C/Is and dosage forms, see page 268)

N.B. In all children with facial or periorbital cellulitis, coverage for *Haemophilus* should be provided with **Chloramphenicol** 30 to 50mg/kg/d divided in two four doses

OR

Cephalexin 500 mg po qid

Dosage form: Capsule 250 mg, 500mg; syrup, 125 ml

6. Dermatophytoses

Superficial fungal infections (**Dermatophytoses**) usually affect all parts of the skin from head to toes. These include:

- Infection of the scalp - tinea capitis
- Infection of the skin of the trunk and extremities - tinea corporis
- Infection of the axillae or groin - tinea cruris
- Infection of the nails - tinea unguium (onychomycosis)
- Infection of the palms and soles - tinea palmo-plantaris
- Infection of the cleft of the fingers and toes - tinea interdigitalis

Clinical features

- Lesions with ring shaped scaly erythema with active margins.
- Deformed nails and onycholysis in case of nail infections.
- Hair loss and whitish scale in tinea capitis.

Investigations

- KOH mount

Treatment

Objectives

- Eradication of the infection.

Non pharmacologic

- Good basic hygiene
- Use of loose clothing

Pharmacologic

The application of topical antifungals is usually enough for tinea corporis and cruris whereas patients with tinea capitis, tinea unguium will require systemic treatment.

Topical*:*

First line

Clotrimazole, thin film of 1% cream applied BID for 2-3 weeks.

ADRs: skin irritation,

Dosage forms: Cream, 10%; solution, 1%

OR

Ketoconazole, thin film of 2% cream applied BID until the infection clears (Usually for 2-3 weeks).

ADRs: Occasionally, skin irritation or sensitivity

Dosage form: Cream, 2%; lotion, 2%; shampoo, 2%

OR

Miconazole thin film of 2% cream applied BID until the infection clears (Usually for 2-3 weeks). (For**ADRs,** see under ketoconazole page 90)

Dosage forms: Cream, 2%; lotion, 2%; tincture, 2%.

Table 1. Common Systemic Anti-fungal Drugs and Their Dosage schedules

First line			Alternatives	
Fungal infection	Griseofulvin (micronized)	Ketoconazole	Fluconazole	Itraconazole
Tinea corporis & cruris (only to those resistant to topical RX	Adult 500-1000 mg P.O.. daily Children: 15-25mg/kg/day Duration 2-6 weeks	Adult- 200-400mg/day P.O. Children-3mg./kg/day Duration: 3 weeks	Adult 200-400 mg once a week P.O. Children 8 mg/week Duration 3-4 weeks	200 mg. daily P.O. Duration : 1-2 weeks
Tinea capitis	Same dose as above Duration 6-8 weeks occasionally up to 12 weeks	Adult same dose as above duration 4 weeks Children same dose duration 4 weeks	Adult 150 mg. P.O. daily Duration: 4-6weeks Children 4-6mg/kg per day for 4-6 weeks	200 mg. P.O.daily Duration: 4-6 weeks
Tinea unguium (Onychomycosis)	Not recommended because long duration of treatment increases toxicity	Not recommended because long duration of treatment increases toxicity	400 mg. P.O. once a week Duration: Finger nails 6-9 months Toe nails 12-18 months Children 8 -10 mg po/kg/week	**Pulse therapy** 200mg BID one week per month Finger nails 2 pulse Toe nails 3 pulse
Tinea pedis	Adult 500-1000mgP.O. Daily Children:15-25 mg/kg/day Duration: 4-8 weeks	Adult: 200-400mg/day P.O.. Children:3mg./kg/day duration: 3 weeks	200-400 mg P.O. once a week or 150mg P.O. daily Duration: 3-4 weeks Children 4-6mg/kg per day for 3 weeks	200-400mg P.O. QD Duration 4 weeks

Table 2: ADRs, contraindications and dosage forms of common systemic antifungal drugs

Drug	ADRs	C/Is	Dosage forms
Griseofulvin	hypersensitivity reactions, neutropenia, headache, nausea, vomiting, rashes and photosensitivity	liver failure, prophyria, pregnancy and hypersensitivity	Tablet, 125mg, 250mg, 500mg; suspension, 125mg/5ml
Fluconazole	Nausea, vomting, headache, rash, abdominal discomfort, diarrhea	Hepatic damage	Capsule/tablet, 50mg, 100mg, 200mg; oral suspension, 50mg/5ml, 200mg/5ml
Ketoconazole	Nausea, vomiting, urticaria, abdominal pain, pruritis, articaria, rashes, headache	Hepatic impairment, pupurea	Tablet, 200mg; suspension, 100mg/5 ml
Itraconazole	Same but milder	Hepatic damage	Capsule, 100mg, 200mg; oral solution, 10mg/ml
Miconazole	nausea, vomiting abdominal pain, headache, rashes, urticaria, pruritus	hepatic impairment, porphyria	Tablet, :200 mg., suspension, 100ml./5ml.

7. Eczema

a. Atopic Dermatitis (AD)

AD is a Chronic, highly pruritic inflammatory skin disease, associated with remitting and flaring course, which starts during infancy and early childhood and persists into puberty and sometimes adulthood. AD may be exacerbated by social, environmental, and biologic factors and has association to the other atopic diseases (allergic rhinitis, bronchial asthma and allergic sinusitis).

Clinical features

Infant usually begins as erythema and scaling of the cheeks. The eruption may extend to the scalp, neck, forehead, wrists, and extensor extremities. Lesion may be papular or exudative.

Children:

- Lesions are apt to be **less exudative**.
- The classic locations are the antecubital and popliteal fossae ,
- Flexor wrists, eyelids, face and around the neck.
- Lesions are often lichenified, indurated plaques.

Adolescents & Adults:

- Localized erythematous, scaly, papular, exudative, or lichenified plaques.

In adolescents, the eruption often involves the classic:

- antecubital and popliteal fossae,
- front and sides of the neck,
- forehead, and area around the eyes.

In older adults, the distribution is generally less characteristic, and chronic hand eczema may predominate. Similar lesion with flexural distribution

Diagnostic features of atopic dermatitis as defined by Hanifin and Rajka

Major features (3 of 4 present)

1) pruritus
2) typical morphology and distribution of skin lesions
3) chronic or chronically relapsing dermatitis
4) personal or family history of atopy

Minor features (3 of 23 present)

1) xerosis
2) ichthyosis/palmar hyperlinearity/keratosis pilaris
3) immediate (type I) skin test reactivity
4) elevated serum IgE
5) early age of onset
6) tendency towards cutaneous infections/impaired cell-mediated immunity
7) tendency towards non-specific hand or foot dermatitis
8) nipple eczema
9) cheilitis
10) recurrent conjunctivitis

11) Dennie-Morgan infraorbital fold
12) keratoconus
13) anterior subcapsular cataracts
14) orbital darkening
15) facial pallor/erythema
16) pityriasis alba
17) anterior neck folds
18) itch when sweating
19) intolerance to wool and lipid solvents
20) perifollicular accentuation
21) food intolerance
22) course influenced by environmental/emotional factors
23) white dermographism/delayed blanch

Treatment

Objectives

- Alleviate the pruritus, and prevent scratching.
- Decrease triggering factors
- Suppress inflammation
- Lubricate the skin
- Manage complications

Non pharmacologic

- Atopic patients should bathe with cold or luke warm water once daily using mild soaps.
- Patient should dry quickly and immediately (with in 3 minutes) and lubricate the skin.
- **Emollients: Emollients: Emollients**

  (Vaseline cream OR **Liquid paraffin** applied liberally all over the body)

Pharmacologic

First line

Topical corticosteroids are the standard of care compared with other treatments:

- Eczematous lesions should be treated by mid-high strength topical steroids for up to 2 weeks except on the face, neck, breast, axillary, groin and perianal areas.

- For the face, neck, axillae and other soft areas of the body low-to-mild strength medications are preferred. Patients should apply the ointment after bath.
- The use of long-term intermittent application of corticosteroids appears helpful and safe.

  (For dosage regimen, ADRs, C/Is and dosage forms**,** see page 281)

N.B. Systemic steroids are preferably avoided.

PLUS

Cloxacillin (For dosage schedule, ADRs, C/Is and dosage forms, see page 347) if a superimposed bacterial infection is suspected.

Antihistamins

Diphenhydarmine: 25-50mg P.O. QD,

ADR: sedation

C/Is: driving, involvement in heavy physical activity

Dosage Forms: Capsule, 25mg, 50 mg; elixir, 12.5mg/5ml; injection, 50 ml in 1 ml ampoule

Alternative

Chlorpheniramine, 4-6mg P.O. QD

ADRs: sedation, dizziness

C/Is: active work such as driving

Dosage forms: Tablet, 2mg, 10mg; syrup, 2mg/5ml

N.B. for severe, recalcitrant and generalized cases, refer to dermatologist

b. Contact dermatitis

i. Allergic contact dermatitis (ACD)

Allergic Contact Dermatitis is an inflammatory response of the skin to an antigen that can cause discomfort or embarrassment.

Allergic contact Dermatitis can be classified as acute, subacute and chronic

Clinical features

- Acute contact dermatitis manifests by fluid filled vesicles or bullae on an edematous skin

- Subacute contact dermatits is characterized by less edema and formation of papules, excorations and scaling
- Chronic eczema is characterized by scaling, skin fissuring and lichenfication.

ii. Irritant Contact Dermatitis (ICD)

ICD is inflammation of the skin which manifests with edema and scaling and is non specific response to the skin by irritants and dirsct chemical damage (e.g. corrosive agents which cause chemical burn). The hands are the most important sites of ICD.

Clinical features

- Macular erythema, hyperkeratosis or fissuring
- Glazed, parched or scalded appearance of the epidermis
- Healing process on withdrawal

Table 3: Irritant versus Allergic contact dermatitis

	ICD	**ACD**
Symptom	Stinging, smarting→ itching	Itching →pain
Lesions acute Chronic	Erythema→vesicle→ erosion→ crust →scaling Papules, plaques, fissures, scaling,, crusts	Erythema→**papules** vesicle→ erosion→ crust →scaling Papules, plaques, fissures, scaling,, crusts
Mariginatio n,site & evolution	Sharp,strictly confined to site of exposure	spreading in the periphery; usually tiny papules; may become generalized
Causative agent	Dependent on concentration of agent and state of skin barrier	Relatively independent of amount agents and state of skin barrier
Incidence	May occur in practically everyone	Occurs only in the sensitized

Investigations

- KOH mount and culture to rule out fungal infection
- Patch testing can be done to rule out ACD
- Skin biopsy can help exclude other disorders such as fungal infection, psoriasis, cutaneous T-cell lymphoma

Treatment

Objectives

- Improve the quality of life by reducing symptoms.

Non pharmacologic

- Removal of the offending agent
- Lukewarm water baths (antipruritic)

Emollients:

(Vaseline cream OR **Liquid paraffin** applied liberally to affected area

For acute lesions

- Topical soaks with cool tap water plus saline (TSP/Pint)
- Oat meal bath

Pharmacologic

Topical steroids:

First line

Triamcinolone acetonide, thin films applied BID initially, reduce to once daily as lesions remit.

Alternative

Hydrocortisione, thin films applied on face, axillae, breasts, groins and perianal area twice daily initially, reduce as the lesions remits

Dosage forms: Cream, ointment, 1%

OR

Mometasone, thin films applied QD

Dosage forms: Cream, lotion, ointment, 0.1%

Systemic steroids (for severe, recalcitrant and generalized cases)

Prednisone, 0.5 mg/kg P.O. QD for 1 -2 weeks.

(For S/Es, C/Is and dosage forms, see page 112)

Antihistamines: (adjuncts)

First line

Diphenylhydramine, 25-50mg cap P.O. qd

(For ADRs, C/Is and dosage forms, see page 279)

Alternative

Chlorpheniramine, 4-6mg P.O. qd

ADRs: sedation, dizziness

C/Is: active work such as driving

Dosage forms: Tablet, 2mg, 10mg; syrup, 2mg/5ml

N.B. for severe, recalcitrant and generalized cases, refer to dermatologist

8. Erysipelas

Erysipelas is a bacterial infection of the skin and subcutaneous tissues. Predisposing factors include mechanical trauma, endogenous infection, venous and lymphatic system disorders (as in erysipelas recurrences). General susceptibility is increased by malnutrition, alcoholism and dysgammaglobulinemia. It is usually caused by Group A streptococci, and is contagious.

Clinical features

- Red, tender and erythematous skin without vesicles.
- Systemic symptoms like fever, chills and malaise are common.

Invstigations

- CBC

Treatment

Objectives

- Treat the infection.

Non pharmacologic

- Bed rest.
- Limb elevation and immobilization.
- Warm compresses.

Pharmacologic

First line

Procaine Penicillin: Adults, 1.2 million IU intramuscularly daily for 7 to 10 days.

Children, 50,000 IU/kg/d in single dose for 7 – 10 days.

Severe cases require intravenous therapy with crystalline penicillin in hospital until the fever subsides, at which time treatment is continued with procaine penicillin.

Relapsing erysipelas requires a small maintenance dose of penicillin or erythromycin for months or years.

ADRs: hypersensitivity reactions: urticaria, fever, joint pains, angioedema, and anaphylactic shock.

C/Is: known hypersensitivity to penicillin and cephalosporins

Dosage forms: Injection (Buffered), Vial of 4 million unitsIU

Alternative

Erythromycin, if the patient is penicillin allergic

(For **dosage schedule, ADR, C/Is** and **Dosage forms**, see under furunculosis see page 268)

Cephalexin 500 mg po qid

Dosage form: Capsule 250 mg, 500mg; syrup, 125 ml

OR

Cloxacilline 500 mg po qid For dosage regimen, ADRs and C/Is, see page 347)

Dosage form: Capsule 250 mg, 500mg; syrup, 125 ml

9. Erythema Multiforme, Stevens Johnson Syndrome, Toxic Epidermal Necrolysis

a. Erythema multiforme (EM)

An acute, self-limiting and commonly recurrent inflammatory skin eruption with variable involvement of the mucous membranes and without systemic symptoms

This condition is usually due to an infection, commonly herpes simplex or mycoplasma.

Clinical features

- Symmetrically distributed crops of targetoid lesions often involving palms and soles.

Investigations

- Diagnosis is clinical

b. Stevens Johnson Syndrome (SJS) & Toxic Epidermal Necrolysis (TEN)

An acute, systemic condition with vesico-bullous lesions involving the skin and mucous membranes. This condition is usually due to medication, e.g. sulphonamides, antiretrovirals (nevirapine), anti-epileptics (phenytoin, phenobarbitone, carbamazepine,) ,herbal medications

Clinical features

- start as a red morbilliform rash
- purple skin necrosis and blisters
- large areas of denuded skin
- Mucous membrane erosions are common and internal organ involvement may be present
- SJS when body surface area involvement is less than 10%
- SJS –TEN overlap 10-30 % body surface area involvement
- TEN when more than 30 % of body surface area affected.

Investigations

- Diagnosis is clinical

Treatment

Refer patient to hospital

10. Furuncle

Furuncle is a deep seated infectious folliculitis and perifolliculitis with a purulent core caused by *Staphylococcus aureus*. It affects mainly young men who are otherwise healthy but patients must be evaluated for predisposing factors: alcoholism, drug abuse, diabetes mellitus**Error! Bookmark not defined.**, leukemias and other malignancies, AIDS and chronic liver disease.

Clinical features

- Fever, Pain, swelling and erythema of the involved area.
- Occur mostly in areas subjected to maceration or friction,poor personal hygiene,acne or dermatitis; e.g.face,neck,axillae

Treatment

Objectives

- Eradication of the infection.

Local therapy is sufficient in most cases. In furuncles of the nose and upper lip, the infection may spread through the vena angularis with resultant sinus thromboses or meningitis and therefore require systemic treatment.

Non pharmacologic

- Bed rest for patients with systemic symptoms, impaired immunity and with involvement of the face.

Pharmacologic

Systemic therapy is required for furunclosis of the face or when generalized symptoms or impairment of the immune system are present. Penicillenase resistant antibiotics like cloxacillin or dicloxacillin are preferable.

First line

Cloxacillin: Adults: 500 mg P.O. QID for 7 to 10 days. Children: 50 – 100 mg/kg /day P.O. for 7 to 10 days divided into four doses

ADRs: Hypersensitivity reactions, nausea, loose stools, increased transaminases

CIs: Hypersensitivity to penicillin

Dosage forms: Capsule, 250 mg, Syrup 250 mg/5ml and 125mg/5ml. Injection 500 ml vial

Alternatives

Erythromycin : Adults: 500mg PO QID for 7 to 10 days. Children: 30–50mg/kg/day for 7 to 10 days in 4 divided doses

ADRs: Hypersensitivity reactions, GI symptoms, Cholestatic jaundice

CIs: Liver disease, hypersensitivity to the drug

Dosage forms: Capsule 250mg. 500mg. Syrup 125 mg. & 250 mg/5 ml

OR

Cephalexin: Adults: 250 to 500mg QID for 7 to 10 days. Children: 25 to 100mg/kg in 4 divided doses for 7 to 10 days.

11. Herpes Simplex (HS)

Herpes simplex skin lesion is characterized by painful grouped microvesicles which soon rupture to form yellow crust. The site of predilection is the adjacent areas of mucous membranes and skin. It has a tendency to recur. Infection with H.S. virus is common in man as to be regarded as almost universal and antibodies can be demonstrated in the plasma of

virtually in over 85 % of the adult population. A fetus may be infected in utero. It is caused by Herpes virus hominis.

The mode of transmission is probably by droplet infection. Infection takes place in two stages, during the first few years of life and after puberty.

Clinical features

- Painful grouped vesicles or blisters
- Fever, malaise and headache

Investigations

- Diagnosis is clinical.

Treatment

Objectives

- Relieve pain and discomfort
- Limit extent of disease spread in the immunocompromised and atopic eczema patients
- Prevent secondary infection

Non pharmacologic

- No specific measure.

Pharmacologic

Acyclovir, 200 mg P.O.5 times daily OR 400 mg P.O. three time daily for 7 days.

Children <2 years: half adult dose.

Children >2 years: adult dose.

(For **ADRs, C/I and dosage forms** see page 355).

Other antiviral therapy – STI section

N.B. Secondary bacterial infection can be treated by systemic antibiotics (see pyoderma).

PLUS

Paracetamol for pain

(For dosage Schedule, ADRs, C/Is and dosage forms, see page 109)

12. Impetigo

Impetigo is a contagious superficial infection of the skin. It is caused by S*treptococci* or

Staphylococci or by both organisms. Infection is acquired either from external sources by direct contact or through objects or from internal infection, e.g. nasopharyngeal sources. Impetigo contagiosa is highly infectious and is common in children. There are two forms, superficial or common impetigo and bullous impetigo.

Clinical features

- Superficial or common impetigo -lesions are thick, adherent and recurrent dirty yellow crusts with an erythematous margin.
- Bullous impetigo characterized by superficially thin walled bullous lesions that rupture and develop thin, transparent, varnish like crust.

Investigations

- Microscopy and culture of the exudate from the blisters (not routinely required except in recurrent cases)

Treatment

Objectives

- Treat infection.
- Break the cycle of transmission.

Non pharmacologic

- Careful removal of crusts by bathing with normal saline or Hydrogen peroxide ensures more rapid healing.

Pharmacologic

Topical: for localized

First line

Mupirocin, applied thin film of 2% cream/ointment 2-3 times a day for 10 days

ADRs: irritaion

Dosage forms: Ointment, 2%

Alternatives

Fucidic acid, applied thin film of 2% cream 2-3 times in a day for 10 days.

ADRs: irritation

Dosage form: Cream, 2%

N.B. Anti-bacterial ointments are usually applied after the wet lesion has dried.

Systemic: for extensive

First line

Cloxacillin, (For **dosage schedule, ADRs, C/Is** and **dosage forms**, see furuncles, see page 347)

Alternative

Cephalexin, 250mg to 500mg P.O. qid for 7 to 10 days for adults; 25 to 100 mg/kg P.O. in 4 divided doses for 7 to 10 days for children

Dosage forms: Capsule, 250mg, 500mg; Syrup, 125mg/5m

OR

Erythromycin (For dosage schedule, ADRs, C/Is and dosage forms see page 268)

13. Molluscum Contagiosum

Molluscum Contagiosum is a common childhood disease caused by Pox virus. Its second peak in incidence occurs in young adults because of sexual transmission.

Clinical features

- The typical lesion is a pearly, skin colored papule with central umblication.

Investigations

- Diagnosis is clinical

Treatment

Objectives

- Prevent autoinoculation and transmission to close contacts and sexual partners.

Non pharmacologic

Surgical**:** Curettage – with or without electrodessication under local anesthesia

- cryotherapy

Pharmacologic

First line

KOH 5-10% solution: first apply vasline perilesional area (to avoid normal skin irritation) then applied over the lesion with cotton tip applicator daily

Duration depending on clinical response

ADRs: Irritation erythema

OR

Iodine, applied 2-3 times per week by unroofing the top of the lesion and the procedure is continued until the lesions disappear (1-2 weeks).

ADRs: rare, complication of ulcer, skin hypersensitivity

Dosage forms: Solution, 2%

Alternative

Retinoic Acid (Tretinoin), thin films applied to the lesions daily.

ADRs: Irritation erythema, peeling, changes in pigmentation, photosensitivity.

C/Is: Pregnancy, eczema, broken or sunburned skin, personal or family history of epithelioma.

Dosage forms: Cream, 0.25% ; gel, 0.01%, 0.025%; lotion, 0.025%, 0.05%; ointment, 0.05%.

OR

Silver nitrate + Potassium Nitrate, thin film ointment applied 2 to 3 .

ADRs: Rare

Dosage forms: Ointment, 95% + 5%

N.B. Therapy based on physical removal of the lesions is considered best. Sexual partners should also be examined and treated. Treatment is aimed at removal of the lesions or at least the central core of each lesion. This is thought to initiate the lost immune response via injury to the epidermis and release of viral antigens.

14. Pediculosis Corporis and Capitis

It is a disorder due to lice infestations. It is caused by Human Ectoparasite**:** *Pediculus humanus corporis* - the body louse and *Pediculosis humanus capitis* - the head louse.
Sites of predilections are shoulders, trunks and buttocks. Bacterial infection is a typical complication in neglected cases. Untreated cases may persist indefinitely. Crowded population with inadequate sanitation, lack of opportunity to change clothes frequently, poor persons living in cold climate with heavier clothing contribute for this disease.

Clinical features

The primary bite lesion is a small red macule, or occasionally a papule with a characteristic central haemorrhagic punctum

Investigations

- Diagnosis is clinical

Treatment

Objectives

- Eradicate f the parasite from the clothing.

Non pharmacologic

- Boil the clothes with hot water or iron the clothes after washing with cold water
- Nits should be removed using fine comb

Pharmacologic

First Line

Malathion 1%, applied to the scalp and left for 2 hours before rinsing.

ADRs: Rare

P/C: when used for pregnant women, lactating women and infants

Dosage forms: Shampoo, 1%

OR

Permethrin , applied on the scalp for 10 minutes and washed off

ADRs: pruritis, stinging, transient burning

Dosage forms: Cream, 5%; lotion, 1%, 5%

15. Pityriasis Versicolor (PV)

PV is a chronic asymptomatic scaling dermatosis associated with the overgrowth of the hyphal form of Pityrosporum ovale, Malassezia furfur.. It is a common disorder seen in older children and adolescents around puberty and young adults. The lesions sometimes may involve other areas such as the abdomen, upper arms, thighs and face. The disorder is insidious in onset and persistent. After successful treatment recurrences are common.

Clinical features

- Well demarcated scaling patches with variable pigmentation.most commonly seen on the trunk.

Investigations

- KOH preparation and culture

Treatment

Objectives

- Eradicate infection.
- Prevent transmission.

Non pharmacologic

- Good personal hygiene
- Avoid sharing bath towels, sponges and clothing.

Pharmacologic

1. **Topical imidazoles** such as **Clotirimazole, Miconazole** and K**etoconazole** cream can be applied once or twice daily for four to six weeks. **Ketoconazole** shampoo can also be used to wash and left for 10 minutes to the affected areas daily for a period of 7 days. Similarly 2.5% selenium sulfide shampoo can be used.
2. **Systemic therapy**: in cases with extensive and long standing eruptions one of the following regimens can be used,

First line

Ketoconazole 400 mg single dose, repeated after a week.

OR 200 mg daily or 3-4 mg/kg/day for 7- 14 days

(For **ADRs, C/Is** and **dosage forms**, see table, page 90)

Alternative

Fluconazole, 400 mg single dose, repeated after a week.

(For **ADRs, C/Is** and **dosage forms**, see table, see page 89)

OR

Itraconazole, 400 mg po single dose OR 200 mg po bid on first day, then 200 mg P.O. daily for 5 days. (For **ADRs, C/Is** and **dosage forms**, see table, page 276)

3. Secondary prophylaxis

I. **Selenium sulfide** or **ketoconazole**shampoo once or twice a week

II. **Salicylic acid/ sulfur bar, zinc pyrithione** (bar or shampoo) can be used weekly.

16. Psoriasis

Psoriasis is a common, chronic, and recurrent inflammatory disease of the skin characterized by circumscribed, erythematous, dry scaling plaques of varying sizes often with predilection to certain parts of the body. Psoriasis is universal in occurrence. It is usually a life long disease. But most patients develop the initial lesion in the third decades of life.

Clinical features

- Skin lesion characterized by circumscribed plaques with erythematous base and, silivery - white dry scaling of varying sizes often with predilection to certain parts of the body
- The most common sites of involvement are the scalp, elbows and knees, followed by the nails, hands, feet and trunk (including the interglutealfold)

Investigations

- Clinical
- Histopathologic Examination

Treatment

Objectives

- Relieve symptoms

Non pharmacologic

- Explain regarding precipitating factors and chronicity
- Counselling the patient never to rub or scratch the lesions (to minimize Koebner's phenomenon)
- Advise frequent exposure to sunlight

Pharmacologic

Refer patient to hospital.

17. Scabies

Scabies is a persistent and intensely itchy skin eruption due to the mite *Sarcoptes scabiei.*

The disease is commonly seen in people with low socio- economic status and poor personal hygiene.

Clinical features

- Red papules and burrows in the axillae, groin and digital web spaces associated with complaints of nocturnal pruritus.
- In infants, the face, palms and soles are often involved and blisters may develop.

Treatment

Objectives

- Eradicate the mite
- Prevent transmission to family members and close contacts

Non pharmacologic

- Washing clothes in hot water or ironing clothes after normal washing.

Pharmacologic

Topical:

First line

Permethrin 5%, Thin films of cream applied to all areas of body from the neck down for 8-14 hrs then washed off. Repeat the same dose after aweek (For **ADRss** and **dosage forms**, see page 290)

Alternative

Benzyl Benzoate, applied to the entire body, neck to toe for 3 to 5 consecutive evenings. Bath should be taken before the first and after the last application.

ADRs: skin irritation, burning sensation especially on the genitalia, excoriations, occasionally rashes.

Dosage form: Lotion, 25%

OR

Sulphur ointment: Children 5%, Adult 10%**:** thinly applied to the entire body for 3 consecutive nights. The patient should wash thoroughly before each new application and 24 hours after the last treatment.

ADRs: skin irritation.

C/Is: pregnancy or lactation, children younger than 2 years.

P/C: avoid contact with eyes, mouth and mucous memberanes.

Dosage forms: Ointment, 5%, 10%.

Systemic:

Ivermectin, 200µg/kg as a single dose, for Norwegian (crusted scabies) and resistant forms of scabies.and it is ideal for institutional outbreaks.

(For **ADRs, C/Is** and **dosage forms**, see page 127)

PLUS

Antihistamines: (adjuncts)

First line

Diphenhydramine, 25-50mg cap P.O. qd

(For ADRs, C/Is and dosage forms, see page 279)

Alternative

Chlorpheniramine, 4-6mg P.O. qd

ADRs: sedation, dizziness

C/Is: active work such as driving

Dosage forms: Tablet, 2mg, 10mg; syrup, 2mg/5ml

N.B. Any person who has close contact with the infected patient should be treated.

18. Urticaria

Urticaria or hive is a common disorder affecting up to 25% of the population. Urticaria may be the presenting feature of other systemic diseases such as systemic lupus erythematous, cryoglobulinemia, autoimmune thyroid diseases, and urticarial vasculitis. Urticaria may present in the acute or chronic form.

Acute urticaria: Acute urticaria is defined as outbreaks of urticarial lesions that do not extend in duration beyond six weeks. The lesions of acute urticaria are characterized by a rapid onset and resolution within several hours and they can be recurrent. A presumptive trigger such as drug, food ingestion, insect bite, or infection can occasionally be identified.

Chronic urticaria: Chronic urticaria is defined by the presence of hives, usually on most days of the week, for a duration of longer than six weeks. The chronic form accounts for approximately

30% of cases of urticaria. A careful history should be performed to identify external triggers. However, in 80 to 90% of adults and children with chronic urticaria, no external cause can be identified.

Clinical features

- The usual urticarial lesion is an intensely pruritic, circumscribed, raised, erythematous plaque, often with central pallor.
- Individual lesion enlarges and coalesces with other lesions, and then typically will disappear over a few hours (< 24 hrs).

Investigations

- CBC
- Stool exam
- Skin prick testing

Treatment

Objectives

- Provide immediate relief
- Prevent complications such as shock or asphyxiation

Non pharmacologic

- Identification and removal of the offending trigger.

Pharmacologic

First line

Cetrizine:

6-12 months: 2.5 mg P.O. QD

12 months to 2 years: 2.5 mg P.O. once daily; may increase to 2.5 mg every 12hrs if needed

2 - 5 years: Initial: 2.5mg P.O. once daily; may be increased to 2.5 mg every 12 hours or 5 mg QD:

Greater than 6 years and adult dosing; 10mg P.O. QD initial dose (max 40mg/d)

Dosage forms: Tablet, 5mg, 10mg; oral solution, 1mg/ml

OR

Loratadine:

< 2 years 2.5 mg P.O. QD,

2 -5 years 5 mg daily P.O.

Above 5 years and adults 10mg P.O. QD (or BID)

Alternatives

Diphenhydramine:

From 2 to 6 years: 6.25mg every 4-6 hours; maximum: 37.5mg/day

From 6 to 12 years: 12.5-25mg every 4-6 hours; maximum: 150mg/day

Above 12 years and adult: 25-50mg every 4-6 hors; maximum: 300 mg/day

(For **ADRs, C/Is** and **dosage forms**, see page 279)

OR

Ranitidine:

Children 1 month to 16 years: 2 - 4 mg/kg/day P.O. QD; maximum treatment dose: 150mg/day

Adults; 150mg P.O. QD to BID

. (For **ADRs, C/Is** and **dosage forms**, see page 63)

OR

Cimetidin:

Children: 20-40 mg/day P.O. BID,

Adult 300 to 800 mg P.O.BID (For ADR**s, C/Is** and **dosage forms**, see page 62)

N.B. H_2 blockers should be used in combination with with H_1 blocker and also use the combination therapy when the first line not respond with maximum dose.

OR

Prednisone, 20-25 mg P.O alternate day or 10- 15 mg po /d.in a single early morning dose. After one week of treatment time taper by 5 mg every two to three days until the minimal dose that controls the urticaria is found.

(For **ADRs, C/Is** and **dosage forms**, see page 112)

19. Verruca Vulgaris (Common Warts)

Verruca Vulgaris is a benign epidermal overgrowths caused by human papilloma virus (HPV). It is transmitted by contact, often at small skin breaks, abrasions, or other trauma. The onset from exposure is variable with a range of 1-6 months. Duration is variable, spontaneous resolution with time is typical. In children, approximately two-thirds of

warts spontaneously regress within 2 years. Warts in immunocompromised persons can be widespread and chronic. Common sites are the hands, periungual skin, elbows, knees and planter surfaces.

Clinical features

- Flesh-colored papules that evolve into dome-shaped, gray-brown surface black dots and are usually few.

Treatment
Objectives

- Improve appearance

Non pharmacologic

- *Duct tape:* cut wart size and applied. Leave for 6 days, then remove, wash skin, gently debride.
- Reapply as required, up to one month.

Pharmacologic

Salicylic acid, thin films of ointment applied once a day. Occlusion with tape increases penetration. Treatment duration may be 8-12 weeks.

Dosage forms: Ointment, 5%, 10%, 20%

N.B. Multiple visits are often necessary when treating with ablative therapy.

CHAPTER XVI: SEXUALLY TRANSMITTED INFECTIONS (STI)

SYNDROMIC MANAGEMENT OF STI

STIs are serious and common problems worldwide. There are more than 20 types. Many of these are curable with effective treatment, but continue to be a major health problem for an individual and the community at large. Currently, with the emergence of HIV/AIDS the management of STIs makes more serious issue and calls for effective and urgent management. Patients presenting with STIs should be counseled to undergo HIV testing.

There are two basic approaches in the management of STIs namely **etiologic** diagnosis using laboratory tests to identify the causative agent and **syndromic** approach. The former approach is often regarded as the ideal way of diagnosing disease and the second one is the choice of resort when there are no laboratory facilities. However both classic approaches present with a number of problems. The syndromic case management which has the following key features:

It enables all trained first line health care providers to diagnose STI syndromes and treat patients on the spot, without waiting for laboratory results. This will help to offer treatment on the initial visit which is an important step to stop the spread of the disease.

- It is problem oriented (it responds to the patient's symptoms).
- It is highly sensitive and does not miss mixed infections.
- Uses flow charts that guide the health worker through logical steps.
- Provides opportunity and time for education and counseling.

A number of different organisms that cause STIs give rise to only a limited number of syndromes.

A syndrome is simply a group of symptoms a patient complains about and the clinical signs one can observe during examination of the patient. The aim of syndromic STI management is to identify one of the seven syndromes and manage accordingly. These are vaginal and urethral discharges, genital ulcer, lower abdominal pain, scrotal swelling, inguinal bubo and neonatal conjunctivitis.

The syndromes are relatively easy to identify and it is possible to devise a flowchart for each one.

A flow chart is a diagram or type of map representing steps to be taken through a process of decision making. A major benefit of the flow chart is that, once trained, service providers find them easy to use- so non-STI specialists at any health facility are able to manage STI cases.

Each flowchart is made up of a series of steps:

1. The clinical problem- the patient's presenting symptoms at the top; this is the starting point
2. A decision to make, usually by answering "yes" or "no" to a question
3. An action to take: what you need to do

1. Urethral Discharge

Treatment:

Objectives

- Prevent long term complications including urethral stricture, infertility
- Prevent recurrence

Non pharmacologic

- None

Pharmacologic

Treatment should target gonorrhea and chlamydial infections.

First line

Ciprofloxacin, 500mg PO stat (For ADRs, C/Is and dosage forms see page 354)

OR

Spectinomycin, 1gm IM as single dose

Dosage form: injection, 2g vial

PLUS

Doxycycline, 100 mg PO bid for 7 days

(For ADRs, C/Is and dosage forms see page 125)

OR

Tetracycline, 500mg PO QID for 7days

(For ADRs, C/Is and dosage forms see page 188)

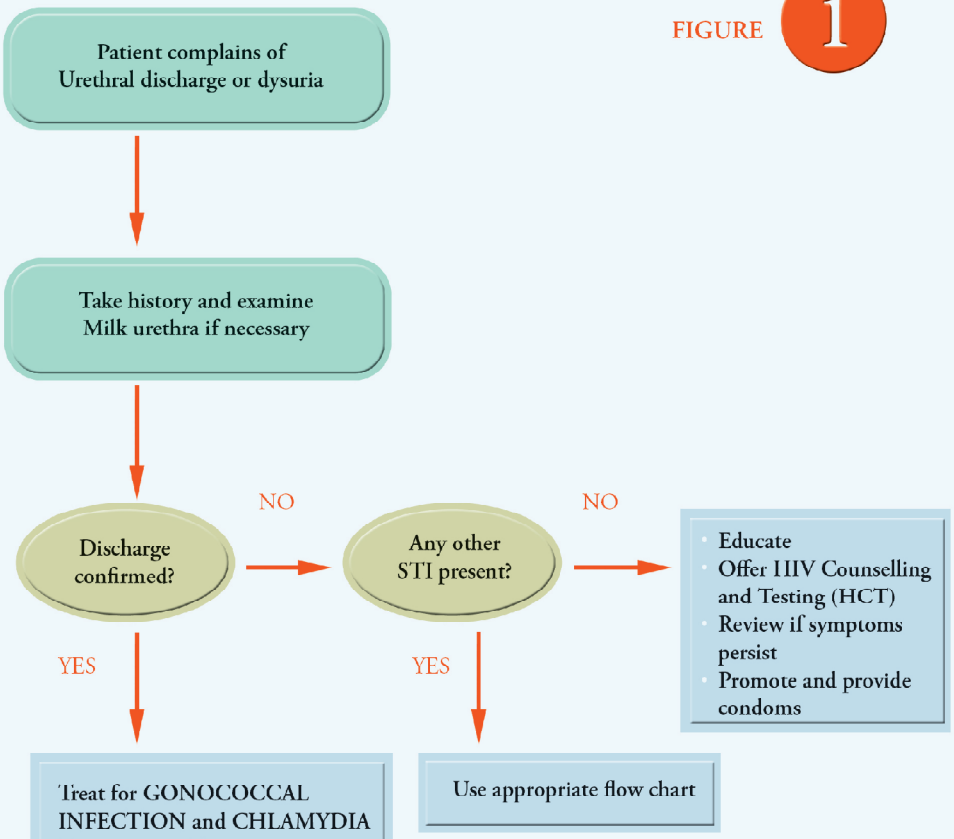
OR

Erythromycine, 500 mg po qid for 7 days if the patient has contraindications; for **Tetracyclines** (pregnancy, children)

NB: Patients should be advised to return if symptoms persist for 7days after the initiation of treatment. Single dose treatment is encouraged as much as possible

URETHRAL DISCHARGE SYNDROME

FIGURE 1


Patient complains of Urethral discharge or dysuria
Take history and examine Milk urethra if necessary
Discharge confirmed?
NO
Any other STI present?
NO
Educate
Offer HIV Counselling and Testing (HCT)
Review if symptoms persist
Promote and provide condoms
YES
YES
Treat for GONOCOCCAL INFECTION and CHLAMYDIA TRACHOMATIS.
Educate on risk reduction
Promote condom use and provide condoms
Offer HIV Counselling and Testing (HCT)
Notify and treat partner(s)
Advise to return in 7 days if symptoms persist
Use appropriate flow chart

2. Persistent/Recurent Urethral Discharge

Patient complains of Persistent/recurrent urethral discharge or dysuria.If there is persistent and recurrent urethral discharge despite treatment the possibilities could be drug resistance, poor compliance or re-infection. In some cases the etiologic agent could be *T.vaginalis*, hence the index patient should be treated for this.

Treatment

Metronidazole, 2gm PO as a single dose

Patient should avoid use of alcohol while taking metronidazole.

Referral: Despite all these treatments, if symptoms still persist the patient should be referred for further work-up

PERSISTENT/RECURRENT URETHRAL DISCHARGE IN MEN

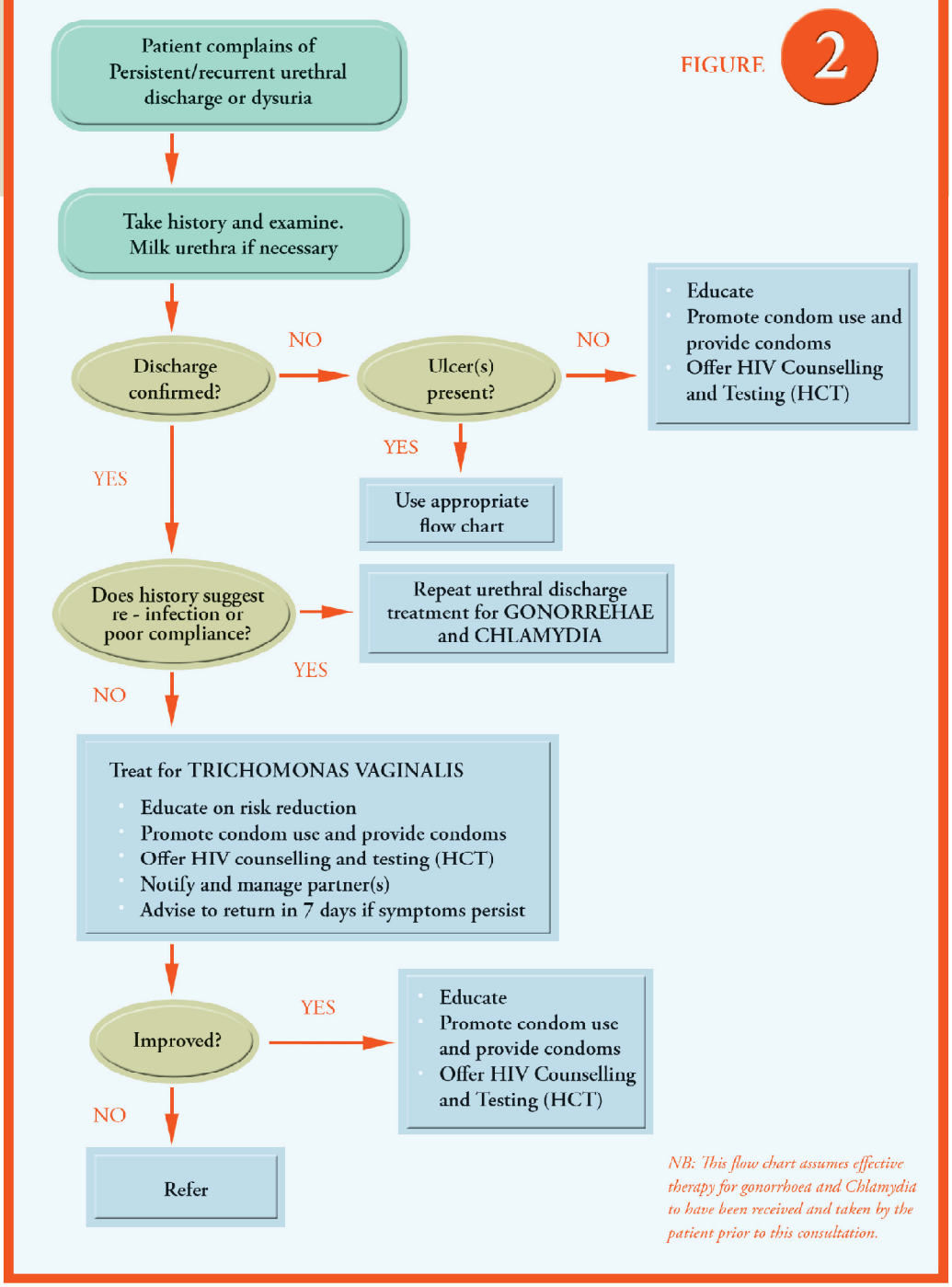


FIGURE 2
Patient complains of Persistent/recurrent urethral discharge or dysuria
Take history and examine. Milk urethra if necessary
Discharge confirmed?
NO
Ulcer(s) present?
NO
Educate
Promote condom use and provide condoms
Offer HIV Counselling and Testing (HCT)
YES
Use appropriate flow chart
YES
Does history suggest re - infection or poor compliance?
Repeat urethral discharge treatment for GONORRHEAE and CHLAMYDIA
YES
NO
Treat for TRICHOMONAS VAGINALIS
Educate on risk reduction
Promote condom use and provide condoms
Offer HIV counselling and testing (HCT)
Notify and manage partner(s)
Advise to return in 7 days if symptoms persist
Improved?
YES
Educate
Promote condom use and provide condoms
Offer HIV Counselling and Testing (HCT)
NO
Refer
NB: This flow chart assumes effective therapy for gonorrhoea and Chlamydia to have been received and taken by the patient prior to this consultation.

3. Genital Ulcer Diseases (GUD)

The relative prevalence of causative organisms for GUD varies from place to place; hence clinical differential diagnosis of genital ulcers is inaccurate in places where there are several etiologies.

Clinical manifestation and patterns of GUD may vary with presence of HIV infection.

The causes of genital ulcer are Trreponema Pallidum (syphilis), HSV2 infection, Haemophilus ducreyi (chancroid), C.thrachomatis serovar L1, L2 & L3 (LGV), Claymmatobacterium granulomatis (Donovanosis)

Syphilis Clinically has three stages (primary, secondary, teritiary). The ulcer starts during the primary stage of the disease as papuples & rapidly ulcerat.The uler is typicaly painless,clean base and raised boarder.

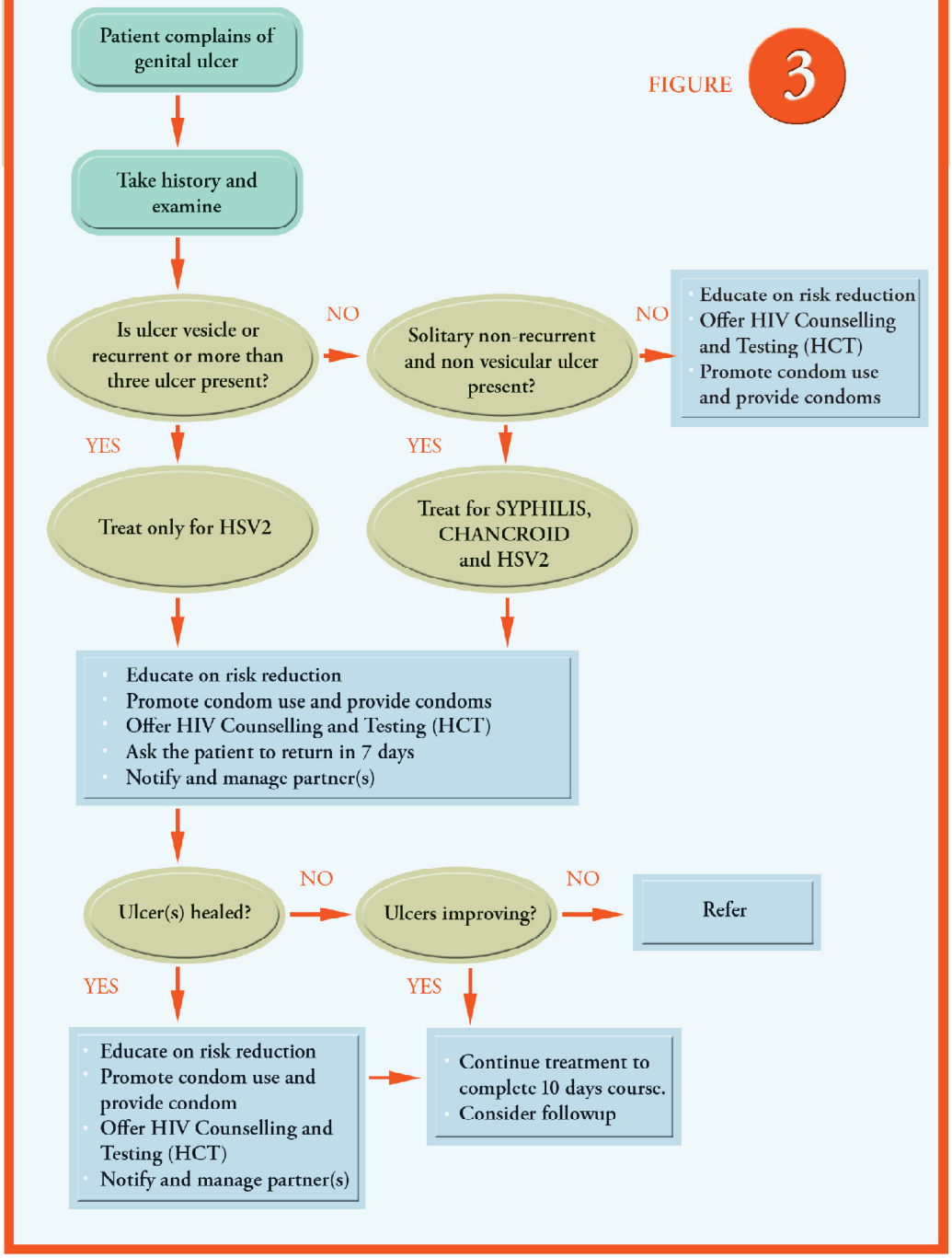
Genital Herpes herpes simplex virus is the most common causes of genital ulcer worledwide.it produces life long infection after the primary infection (latency). The lisions are painful, erythemathous macules which progressively form vesicles, pustules, ulcer and crusts.

Chancroid It is also the common cause of genital uler in developing countries.The lision started as painful papules and pustules which ulcerate with derty base and soft edge.Inguenal fluctuant adenopathy (buboes) may occur following ulcer.

Lymphogranulomaveneurum (LGV) The disease starts as painless papules that developes an ulcer.After afew dayes painful regional lymphadenopathy develop and associated systemic symptoms may occur.

Granuloma inguinale (Donovanosis) is chronically progresive ulcerative disease without systemic symptomes,presents with non supperative painless genital ulcer and beefy-red appearance

GENITAL ULCERS SYNDROME



Treatment Objective

- Screen patient for HIV and other ulcerative STIs
- Prevent long term complications
- Halt the transmission of the infection

Non pharmacologic: Prevent secondary infection by local cleaning

Pharmacologic

I. Treatment for non vesicular genital ulcer

Benzathine penicillin G, 2-4 million units IM single dose

OR

Doxycycline, 100 mg P.O. BID for 14 days

PLUS

Ciprofloxacin 500 mg po bid for 3 days

OR

Erythromycin 500 mg po qid for 7 days.

II. Treatment for vesicular, multiple or recurrent genital ulcer

Acyclovir, 200 mg P.O 5 times daily for 10 days OR 400 mg P.O. TID for 10 days

(For ADRs, C/Is and dosage forms, see pages 355)

N.B. There is no medically proven role for topical acylovir, its use is discouraged.

Episodic treatment of recurrent episodes

Treatment should be initiated during prodrome or immediately after onset of symptoms.

Non pharmacologic: Local care: Keep affected area clean and dry

Pharmacologic

Acyclovir 400 mg P.O. TID for 5 days,

Suppressive treatment: recommended for patients with 6 recurrences or more per year

Acyclovir, 400mg P.O. BID for 1 year

Dosage forms: Tablet, 125mg, 250mg, 500mg

(For ADRs and C/Is, see under acyclovir page 355)

N.B. The need for continued suppressive therapy should be reassessed.

4. Vaginal Discharge

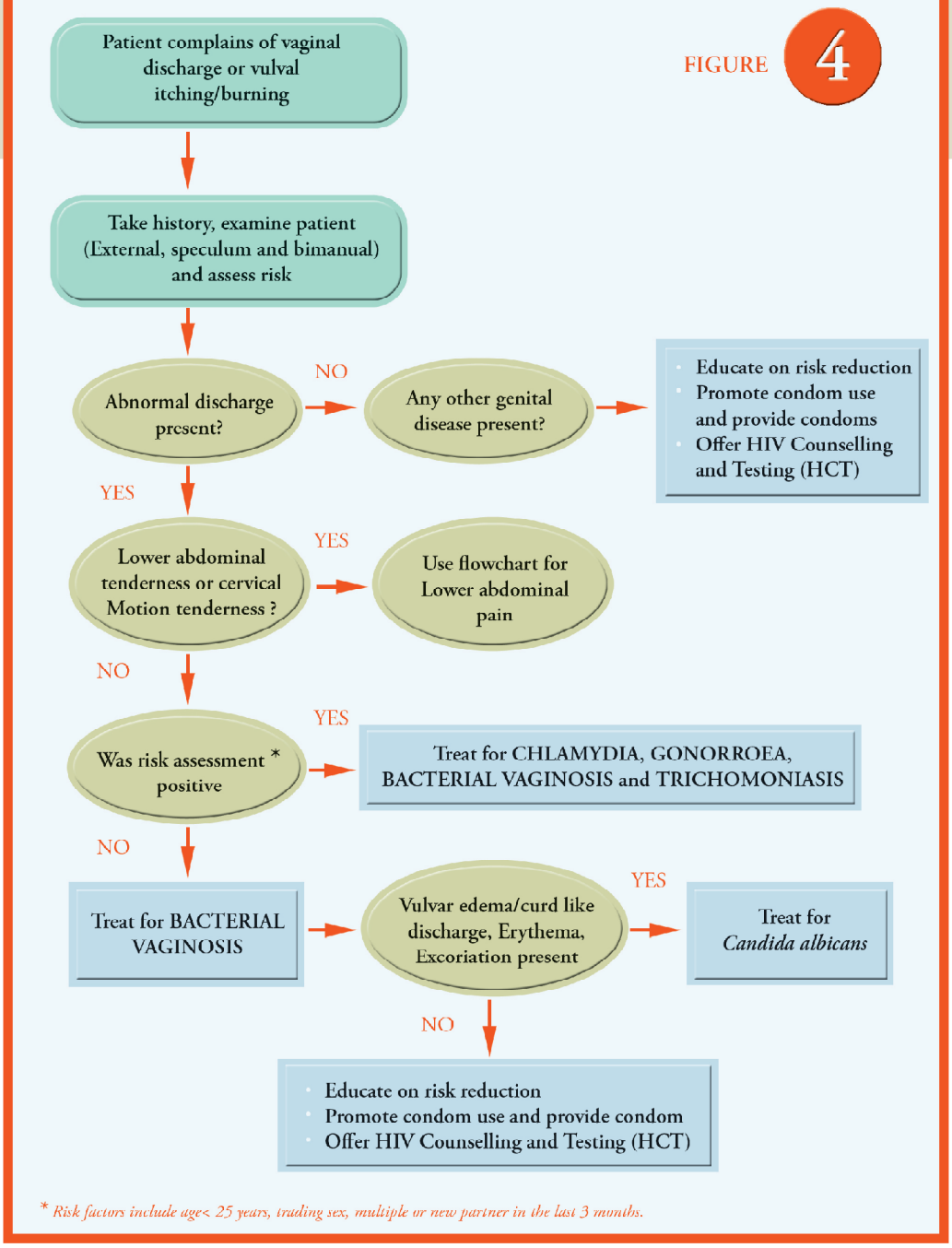
Abnormal Vaginal discharge in terms of quantity, colour or odor could be most commonly as a result of vaginal infections. But it is a poor indicator of cervicitis, especially in young girls because a large proportion of them are asymptomatic. The most common causes of vaginal discharge are Neisseria gonorrhoeae, Chlamydia trachomati, *T.vaginalis,Gardnerella vaginalis , C.albicans. The firs*t three are sexually acquired & the last two are endogenous infections etiologic agents.

N.B. One or more of the following are risk factors for STI related cevicitis in Ethiopia

- Multiple sexual partners in the last 3months.
- New sexual partner in the last 3 months
- Ever traded sex
- Age below 25 years

VAGINAL DISCHARGE (SPECULUM AND BIMANUAL)

FIGURE 4


Patient complains of vaginal discharge or vulval itching/burning
Take history, examine patient (External, speculum and bimanual) and assess risk
Abnormal discharge present?
NO
Any other genital disease present?
Educate on risk reduction
Promote condom use and provide condoms
Offer HIV Counselling and Testing (HCT)
YES
Lower abdominal tenderness or cervical Motion tenderness ?
YES
Use flowchart for Lower abdominal pain
NO
Was risk assessment * positive
YES
Treat for CHLAMYDIA, GONORROEA, BACTERIAL VAGINOSIS and TRICHOMONIASIS
NO
Treat for BACTERIAL VAGINOSIS
Vulvar edema/curd like discharge, Erythema, Excoriation present
YES
Treat for *Candida albicans*
NO
Educate on risk reduction
Promote condom use and provide condom
Offer HIV Counselling and Testing (HCT)

* *Risk factors include age< 25 years, trading sex, multiple or new partner in the last 3 months.*

Treatment

Pharmacologic

For risk assessment positive

Ciprofloxacin 500mg po stat

OR

Spectinomycin 2 gm IM stat

PLUS

Doxycycline 100 mg po bid for 7 days

PLUS

Metronidazole 500 mg po bid for 7 days

For risk assessment negative

Metronidazole 500 mg po bid for 7 days

PLUS

Clotrimazole vaginal tabs 200 mg at bed time for three days

Sex Partners

Examination and treatment usually not necessary. However treatment with an imidazole cream (e.g, miconazole, clotrimazole) may be indicated in some cases of recurrent infection, or if the partner has penile candidiasis (Balanitis).

5. Lower Abdominal Pain

All sexually active women presenting with lower abdominal pain should be carefully evaluated for the presence of upper genital tract infections (tube, uterus, ovaries, and pelvic cavity). In addition, all women with presumptive STI should undergo thorough bimanual and abdominal examination because some of the women with PID may not complain of lower abdominal pain. Other suggestive symptoms include pain during intercourse, vaginal discharge, abnormal vaginal bleeding (inter-menstrual), painful urination, pain during menstruation, fever and sometimes nausea and vomiting.

PID is difficult to diagnose because the clinical manifestations widely vary. PID becomes highly probable when one or more of the above symptoms are seen in a woman with adenexal tenderness, vaginal discharge and cervical motion tenderness.

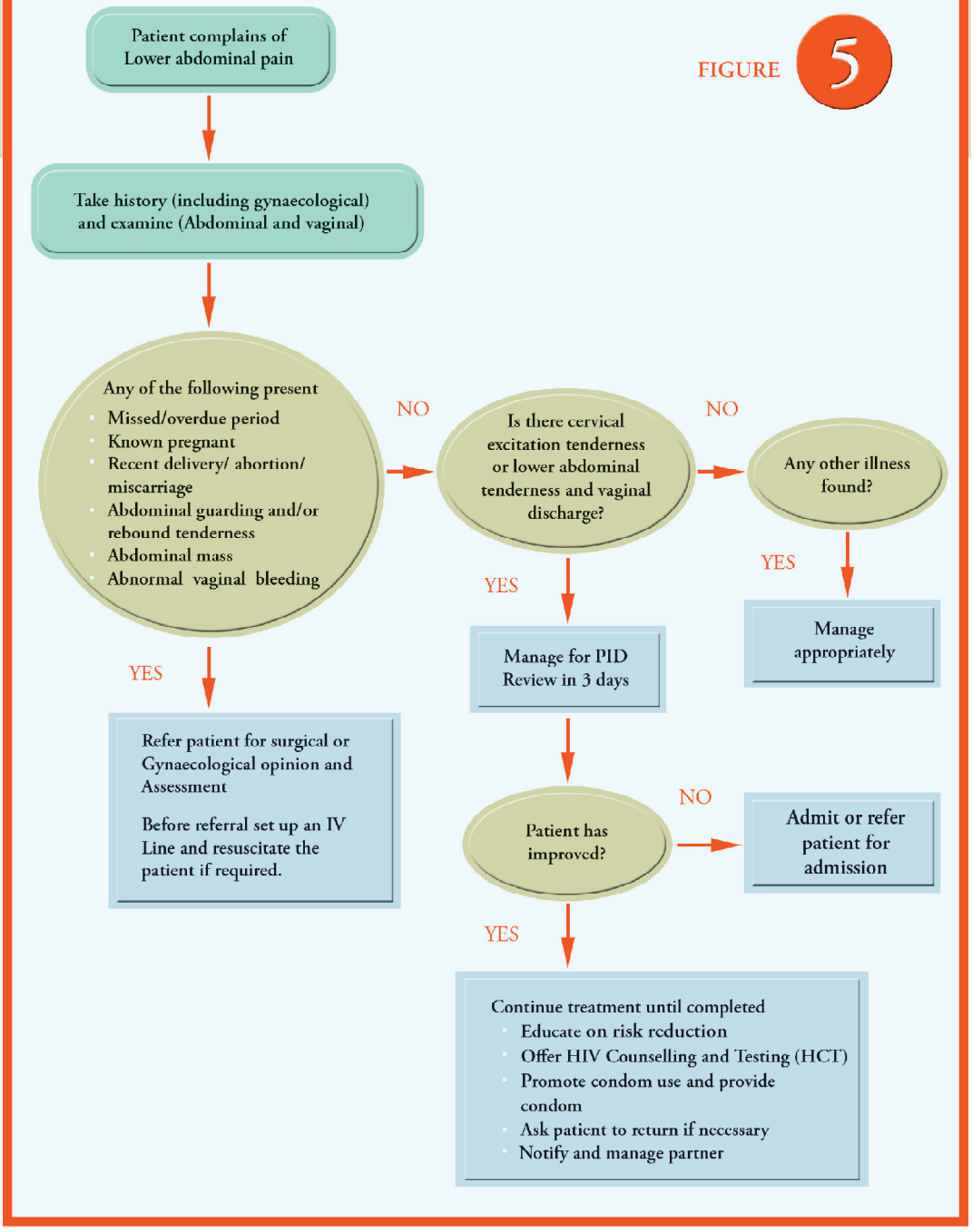
Indications for Patients referral with acute PID

- The diagnosis is uncertain
- Surgical emergencies such as appendicitis and ectopic pregnancy cannot be excluded
- A pelvic mass is suspected
- Severe illness precludes management on an outpatient basis
- The patient is pregnant
- The patient is unable to follow or tolerate an outpatient regimen; or
- The patient has failed to respond to outpatient treatment.

N.B. Many experts recommend that all patients with PID should be admitted to hospital for Treatment

The most common causative agents responsible for this syndrome include *N.gonorrhae*, *C.trachomatis,* and *anaerobic bacteria*. Facultative Gram negative rods and *Mycoplasma hominis* are also implicated sometimes. As it is difficult to differentiate between these clinically, and a precise microbiological diagnosis is nearly impossible in most clinical set ups, hence the treatment regimen must be effective against the incriminated microorganisms.

LOWER ABDOMINAL PAIN


Patient complains of Lower abdominal pain
FIGURE 5
Take history (including gynaecological) and examine (Abdominal and vaginal)
Any of the following present
Missed/overdue period
Known pregnant
Recent delivery/ abortion/ miscarriage
Abdominal guarding and/or rebound tenderness
Abdominal mass
Abnormal vaginal bleeding
NO
Is there cervical excitation tenderness or lower abdominal tenderness and vaginal discharge?
NO
Any other illness found?
YES
Manage appropriately
YES
Manage for PID Review in 3 days
YES
Refer patient for surgical or Gynaecological opinion and Assessment
Before referral set up an IV Line and resuscitate the patient if required.
Patient has improved?
NO
Admit or refer patient for admission
YES
Continue treatment until completed
Educate on risk reduction
Offer HIV Counselling and Testing (HCT)
Promote condom use and provide condom
Ask patient to return if necessary
Notify and manage partner

Treatment

Pharmacologic

Outpatients

Ciprofloxacin, 500mg po single dose (For ADRs, C/Is and dosage forms see page 354)

OR

Spectinomycin 2gm IM stat

PLUS

Doxycycline, 100mg P.O., BID for 14day

(For ADRs, C/Is and dosage forms see page 125)

PLUS

Metronidazole, 500mg P.O, BID for 14days

(For ADRs, C/Is, P/Cs and dosage forms see page 82)

N.**B**. If patient does not show improvement within 72hours of initiation of treatment, or refer to hospital for inpatient care.

In patient: Recommended syndromic management for PID

First line

Ceftriaxone, 250 mg IV/IM once daily

(For ADRs, C/Is and dosage forms see page 86)

PLUS

Doxycycline, 100mg Po, BID for 14 days

(For ADRs, C/Is and dosage forms see page 125)

PLUS

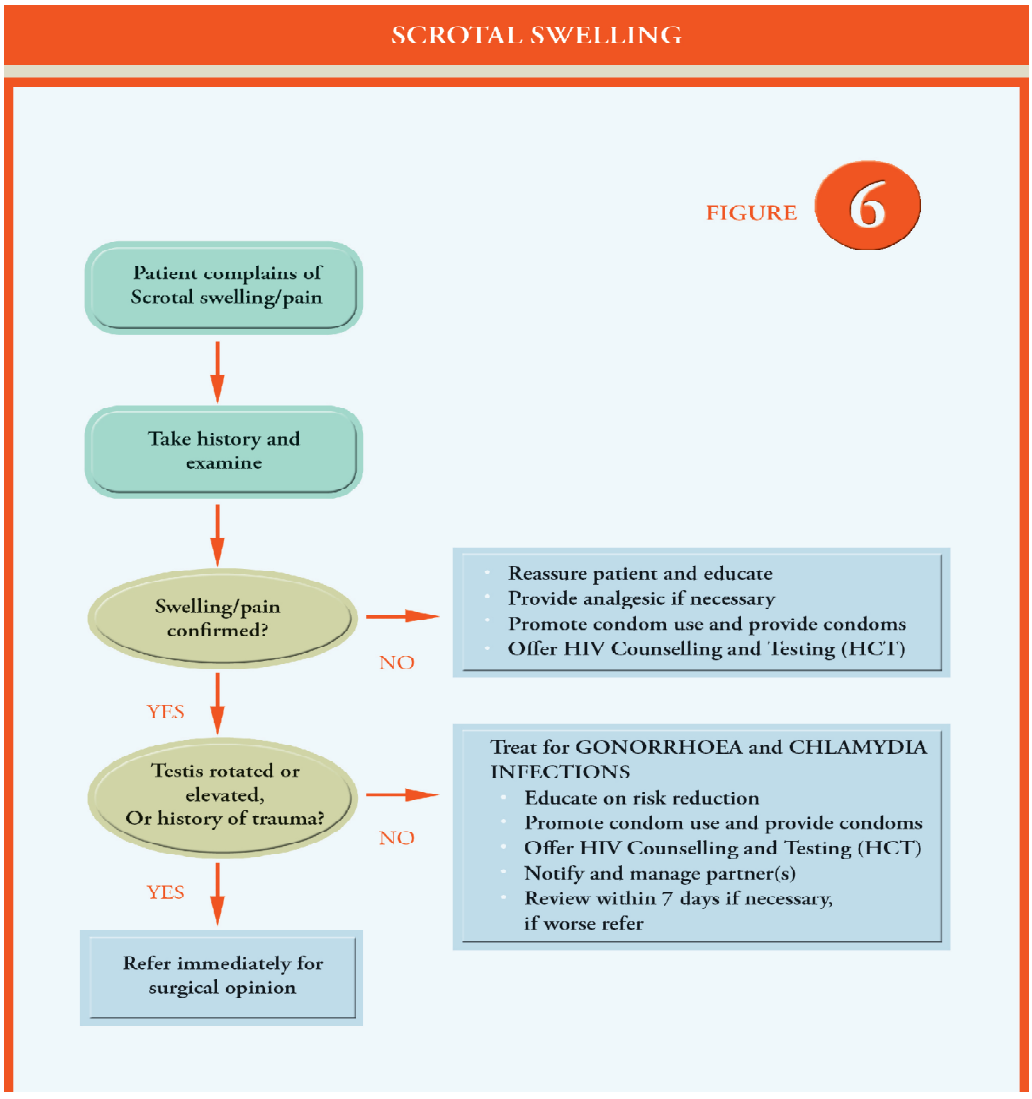
Metronidazole, 500mg P.O, BID (For ADRs, C/Is and dosage forms see page 82)

OR

Chloramphenicol, 500mg P.O or IV QID

6. Scrotal Swelling

Inflammation of the epididymis usually manifests with acute onset of unilateral testicular swelling, often with tenderness of the epididymis and vas deferens, and occasionally with erythema and edema of the overlying skin. When it occurs in young male accompanied with urethral discharge it is usually due to *gonococcal* or *chlamydial* infections. In older people the etiologic agent may be non-STIs such as *E.coli, Klebsiella spp. or Psydomonas.* TB orchitis is generally accompanied by an epididymitis.


SCROTAL SWELLING
FIGURE 6
Patient complains of Scrotal swelling/pain
Take history and examine
Swelling/pain confirmed?
NO
Reassure patient and educate
Provide analgesic if necessary
Promote condom use and provide condoms
Offer HIV Counselling and Testing (HCT)
YES
Testis rotated or elevated, Or history of trauma?
NO
Treat for GONORRHOEA and CHLAMYDIA INFECTIONS
Educate on risk reduction
Promote condom use and provide condoms
Offer HIV Counselling and Testing (HCT)
Notify and manage partner(s)
Review within 7 days if necessary, if worse refer
YES
Refer immediately for surgical opinion

Treatment

Non Pharmacologic: Scrotal support

Pharmacologic

Ciprofloxacin 500 mg po stat OR **Spectinomycin** 1 gm IM stat

PLUS

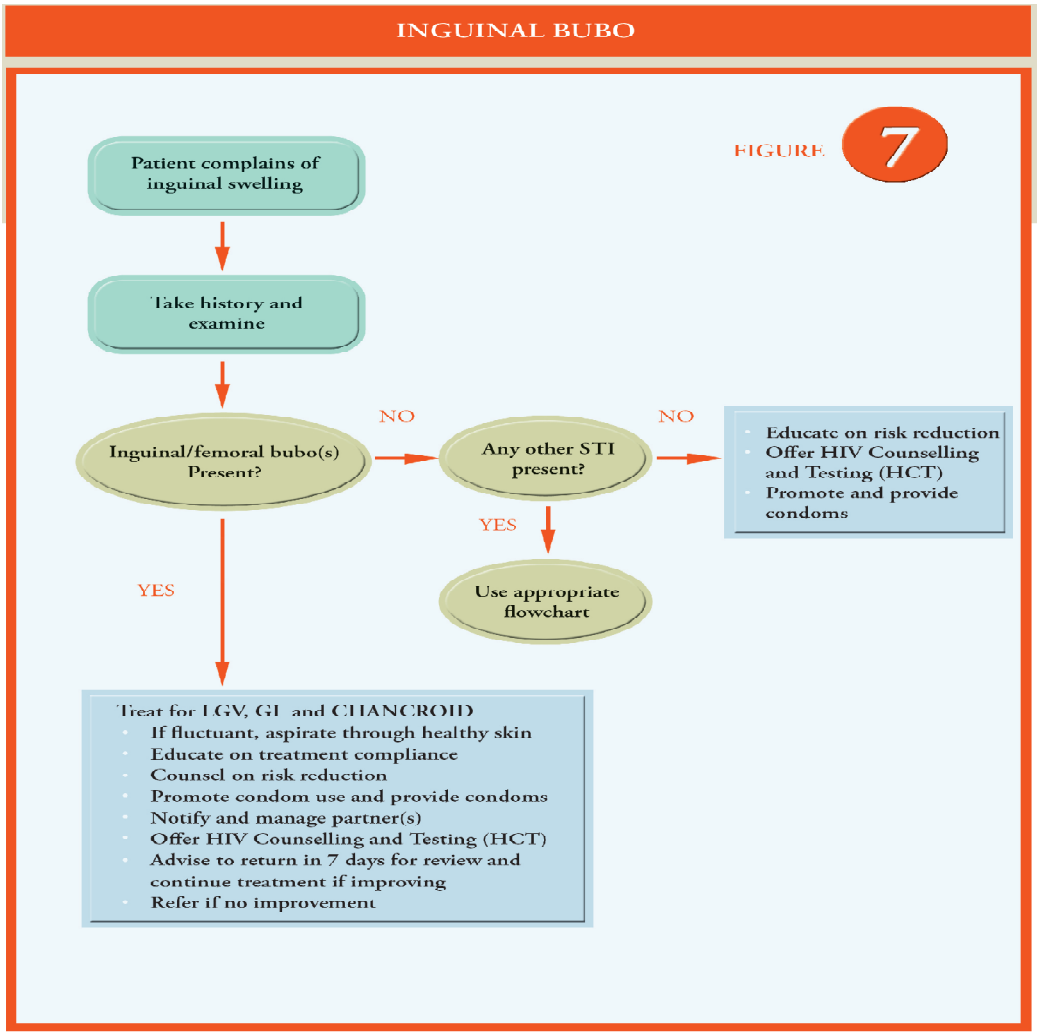
Doxycycline 100 mg po bid for 7 days

OR

Tetracycline 500 mg po qid for 7 days

7. Inguinal Bubo

This is a painful, fluctuant, swelling of the lymph nodes in the inguinal region (groin). Buboes are usually caused by either chancroid or LGV. In many cases of chancroid, but not all, an associated ulcer is visible. Infection of the lower limb and other non-STIs like TB can also cause swelling of the inguinal lymph nodes.


INGUINAL BUBO
FIGURE 7
Patient complains of inguinal swelling
Take history and examine
Inguinal/femoral bubo(s) Present?
NO
Any other STI present?
NO
Educate on risk reduction
Offer HIV Counselling and Testing (HCT)
Promote and provide condoms
YES
Use appropriate flowchart
YES
Treat for LGV, GI and CHANCROID
If fluctuant, aspirate through healthy skin
Educate on treatment compliance
Counsel on risk reduction
Promote condom use and provide condoms
Notify and manage partner(s)
Offer HIV Counselling and Testing (HCT)
Advise to return in 7 days for review and continue treatment if improving
Refer if no improvement

Treatment Objectives

- Prevent complication, which includes fistula formation, lymphatic obstruction
- Screen for other STIs

Non pharmacologic: Keep the lesion clean and dry

Pharmacologic

First line

Ciprofloxacin, 500mg P.O, BID for 3days

PLUS

Doxycycline, 100mg P.O, BID for 14days

OR

Erythromycin, 500mg, P.O, QID for 14days

N.B. Fluctuant lymph nodes should be aspirated through healthy skin but incision and drainage or excision of nodes may delay healing and should not be attempted.

Referral is indicated where there is doubt with diagnosis and/or treatment failure.

CHAPTER XVII: OPHTHALMOLOGICAL DISORDERS

1. Acute Dacryocystitis

Acute dacryocystitis is an inflammation or infection in the lachrymal sac. It may have various etiologies. It is, however, commonly caused by complete nasolacrimal duct obstruction preventing normal drainage from the lacrimal sac into the nose. Chronic tear stasis and retention lead to secondary infection with bacteria leading to erythematous, tender swelling on the nasal aspect of the lower eyelid, mocoid or purulent discharge which can be expressed as pressure to the lacrimal sac.

Clinical features

- Pain, tenderness, redness, swelling on the innermost aspect of the lower eyelid (over the lacrimal sac), tearing, discharge.
- Fistula formation, lacrimal sac cyst or mucocele can occur in chronic cases.

Investigations

- Gram's stain

Treatment

Objectives

- Relieve pain
- Cure the infection
- Open the drainage and reduce tearing

Non Pharmacologic

- Warm compresses and gentle massage to the inner canthal region QID
- Incision and drainage of a pointing abscess
- Surgical correction (Dacryocystorhinostomy=DCR), once the acute episode has resolved, particularly with chronic dacryocystitis

Pharmacologic

A. Mild Cases

First line

Cloxacillin, 500mg P.O. QID for 10-14 days for adults; and 50-100mg/kg/day in 4 divided doses for 10-14 days for children

(For **ADRs, C/Is** and **Dosage forms,** see page 347)

PLUS

Chloramphenicol, 1 drop QID for 10-15 days

(For **ADRs, C/Is** and **Dosage forms,** see page 346 & 363)

Alternatives

Amoxicillin/clavulanate, 20-40mg/kg/day P.O. TID for 10-14 days for Children.

PLUS

Gentamicin, 1 drop QID for 10 -15 days

(For **ADRs, C/Is** and **Dosage forms,** see page 383)

B. Moderate-Severe Cases: Hospitalize and treat with IV medications

Refer: In Moderate-to-severe cases refer to hospital with or without initiation of treatment

2. Acute Infectious Dacryoadenitis

It is an infection of the lachrymal gland. It is usually caused by bacteria (Staphylococcus aureus, Neisseria gonorrhea, streptococci) or virus (mumps, infectious mononucleosis, influenza, herpes zoster). Acute dacryoadenitis typically occurs in children and young adults.

Clinical Features

- Unilateral pain, redness, erythema, warmth, tenderness, and swelling over the outer one third of the upper eyelid, often with tearing or discharge.
- It may be associated with hyperemia of the palpable lobe of the lacrimal gland.

Investigations

- Complete blood cell count and differential
- Gram's stain

Treatment

Objective

- Alleviate the pain and cure the infection

Non Pharmacologic

- Incision and drainage if there is an abscess.

Pharmacologic

A. Bacterial or infectious (but unidentified) etiology

1. Mild-to-Moderate

First line

Cloxacillin, 500mg P.O. QID for 7-14 days for adults; 50-100mg/kg/day in 4 divided doses for 7-14 days for children

(For **ADRs, C/Is** and **Dosage forms,** see page 347)

Alternatives

Amoxicillin/clavulanate, 625 mg P.O. BID for 10-14 days for adults; 20-40mg/kg/day P.O. TID for 10-14 days for children.

2. Moderate-to-severe

Refer: In Moderate-to-severe cases refer to hospital with or without initiation of treatment

B. Viral (mumps, infectious mononucleosis)

Treatment

Objectives

- Alleviate the pain
- Shorten the course of the disease

Non Pharmacologic

- Cold compresses to the area of swelling and tenderness

Pharmacologic treatment

First line

Acetaminophen, 650mg P.O. every 4-6 hours for adults

(For **ADRs, C/Is** and **Dosage forms,** see page 109)

Alternative

Acetylsalicylic Acid, 30-60mg/kg/day P.O. in 4-6 divided doses for children

(For **ADRs, C/Is** and **Dosage forms,** see page 109)

Refer: In severe and complicated cases refer to an ENT specialist

3. Allergic Conjunctivitis

i. Atopic Keratoconjunctivitis

Atopic Keratoconjunctivitis may occur in patients who have or had Atopic Dermatitis. About one third of patients with atopic dermatitis develop one or more manifestations of atopic keratoconjunctivitis. As a consequence of depressed cell mediated immunity, patients are susceptible to herpes simplex virus keratitis, and to colonization of the eyelids with staphylococcus aureus.

Clinical features

- Itching, blepharospasm, photophobia, blurred vision,
- Copious mucous discharge.

Investigations

- Clinical

Treatment

Objective

- Relieve the symptoms

Non Pharmacologic

- Avoidance of responsible allergens
- Cold compresses

Pharmacologic

Treatment should be based on the severity of patient symptoms, and consists of one or more of the following:

- Topical vasoconstrictors
- Topical antihistamines
- Topical nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory medic ations
- Judicious and selective use of topical corticosteroids
- Artificial tears

Topical vasoconstrictors

First line

Tetrahyrdazoline, 1 drop 3-4 times per day for not more than one week.

ADRs: Conjunctival hyperemia, photosensitivity, hypersensitivity reactions

Dosage form: Eye drop, 0.05%

Alternative

Oxymethazoline, 1 drop 3-4 times per day for not more than one week.

ADRs: Conjunctival hyperemia, photosensitivity, hypersensitivity reactions

Dosage forms: Eye drop, 0.025%, 0.05%

N.B. Topical vasoconstrictors, alone or in combination with antihistamines, may provide symptomatic relief. But, their use for more than 5-7 consecutive days may predispose to rebound conjunctival hyperemia, tachyphlaxis, and compensatory chronic vascular dilatation.

Topical vasoconstrictor-Antihistamine Combinations

First line

Naphazoline + Antazoline, 1 drop 3-4 times per day

Dosage forms: Solution, 0.025%+0.5%.

Alternative

Naphazoline + Phenylephrine, 1 drop 3-4 times per day

Dosage form: Solution, 0.25% + 0.3%

Topical antihistamines

First line

Levocabastine, 1 drop 3-4 times per day

Dosage forms: Solution, 0.5%

Alternative

Olopatadine, 1 drop 3-4 times per day

Dosage form: Solution 0.1%

N.B. Oral antihistamines may provide symptomatic relief in some patients

Topical mast-cell stabilizers

First line

Cromolyn Sodium, 1 drop 3-4 times per day

Dosage forms: Solution 4%

Alternatives

Lodoxamide, 1 drop 3-4 times per day

Dosage form: Solution 0.1%

N.B. Topical mast-cell stabilizers may be useful for treatment of seasonal allergic conjunctivitis. They are, however, ineffective at the acute phase due to their slow onset of effect.

Topical non-steroidal anti-inflammatory agents

First line

Diclofenac, 1 drop 3-4 times per day

Dosage form: Solution, 0.1%

Alternatives

Flurbiprofen, 1 drop 3-4 times per day

Dosage form: Eye drop, 0.03%

Topical corticosteroids

First line

Dexamethasone, 1 drop every 2-4 hours per day depending on the severity of the disease and tapered every 5-7 days down to 1 drop every other day.

Dosage form: Eye drop, 0.1%

Alternatives

Dexamethasone Sodium Phosphate, single strip of ointment applied 2-3 times daily.

Dosage form: Ointment 0.05%

Combined Topical Corticosteroids-Antibiotic Ophthalmic Preparations

First line

Dexamethasone + Chloramphenicol, 1 drop every 2-4 hours per day depending on the severity of the disease and tapered every 5-7 days down to 1 drop every other day.

Dosage form: Eye drop, 0.1% + 0.5%

Alternative

Dexamethasone + Tobramicin, single strip of ointment applied 4-6 times daily.

Dosage forms: Ointment 0.1% + 0.3%

N.B. Patients should be carefully evaluated for secondary infection and get treated accordingly.

Refer: In severe and complicated cases refer to an ophthalmologist

ii. Hey Fever and Perennial Allergic Conjunctivitis

Hey Fever (seasonal) and Perennial Allergic Conjunctivitis are type I IgE-mediated immediate hypersensitivity reactions. Patients with this condition often suffer from other atopic conditions, such as allergic rhinitis and asthma.

Clinical features

- Itching, eyelid swelling, conjunctival hyperemia and chemosis, and mucoid discharge.
- Intense itching is a hallmark symptom, and attacks are usually short-lived and episodic.

Investigations

- Clinical

Treatment

Objective

- Avoid exposure to allergen.
- Alleviate the symptoms

Non Pharmacologic

- Cleaning of carpets, linens, and bedding to remove accumulated allergens such as animal dander and dust house mites.
- Cold compresses

Pharmacologic

- See under Atopic Keratoconjunctivitis

iii. Vernal Keratoconjunctivitis

Vernal keratoconjunctivitis is usually a seasonal recurring, bilateral inflammation of conjunctiva, predominantly occurring in male children who frequently but not invariably have personal or family history of atopy.

Clinical features

- Itching, blepharospasm, photophobia, blurred vision, and copious mucous discharge.

Investigations

- Clinical

Treatment

Therapy should be based on the severity of the patient's symptoms and of the ocular surface disease.

Objective

- Relieve symptomatic surface disease.

Non Pharmacologic

- Climatotherapy such as the use of air-conditioning or relocation to cooler environment.
- Ice packs and frequent face washing with cold water gives temporary relief.

Pharmacologic

- See under Atopic Keratoconjunctivitis

N.B.

1. Corticosteroids should be reserved for exacerbations with moderate to severe discomfort and/or decreased visual acuity.
2. Corticosteroids should be discontinued between attacks.
3. The patient and family must be thoroughly informed about the potential risk of chronic steroid therapy.

Refer: In severe and complicated cases refer to an ophthalmologist

4. Bacterial Conjunctivitis

i. Conjunctivitis in Children and Adults

Acute purulent conjunctivitisis a bacterial infection of the conjunctivae.

Clinical features

- Generalized conjunctival hyperemia, edema, muco-purulent eye discharge, gumming of eye lashes and a varying degree of ocular discomfort.
- Visual acuity is not usually affected.

Investigations

- Gram stain,

Treatment

Objective

- Treat the infection
- Prevent complications

Non Pharmacologic

- Frequent cleaning of the eyelids and warm compression

Pharmacologic

First line

Chloramphenicol, 1 drop every 4-6 hours OR single strip of ointment applied 2-4 times per day for 10-15 days.

(For **ADRs** and **C/Is** see page 346)

Dosage forms: Eye drops, 0.5%; Ointment, 1%

Alternatives

Tetracycline, single strip of ointment applied 2-4 times per day for 10-15 days.

Dosage forms: Eye drops, 0.5%; Ointment, 1%

OR

Gentamicin, 1 drop every 4-6 hours per day for 10-15 days.

N.B. Frequent topical instillation of antibiotic eye drops or ointments is useful.

Ciprofloxacin **should be reserved for cases refractory (resistant) to initial therapy.**

Refer: In severe and complicated cases refer to an ophthalmologist

ii. Neonatal Conjunctivitis

Conjunctivitisin the newborn is commonly to the result of infection with Neisseria gonorrhoeae or *Chlamydia trachomatis*. The etiologic agent can sometimes be distinguished by the timing of infection: infection with gonococcus typically occurs on day 3 to 5, while infection with Chlamydia occurs between 5 to 14 days. Conjunctivitis in the newborn might have occurred from prophylactically administered silver nitrate drops; in this case the inflammation occurs within the first days of life. Gonococcal conjunctivitis (*Ophthalmic neonatorum*) is a serious infection in neonates and, if untreated, it progresses to corneal ulceration, corneal perforation and endophthalmitis (deeper infection of the globe), leading to blindness.

Clinical features

- Rapid progressive copious purulent conjunctival discharge,
- Mmarked conjunctival hyperemia and chemosis,
- Eyelid edema

Investigations

- Gram stain

Treatment

Objective

- Treat the infection
- Prevent corneal perforation and blindness

Non Pharmacologic

- Saline irrigation of the conjunctiva

Pharmacologic

I. Systemic antibiotics

First line

Penicillin G Sodium Crystalline, 50,000 IU/kg QID for 10 days.

(For **ADRs, C/Is** and **Dosage forms,** see under benzyl penicillin)

N.B. Most gonococcal strains are now resistant to penicillin.

Refer: In severe and complicated cases refer to for admission and parentral medication

II. Topical antibiotics

First line

Tetracycline, single strip of ointment applied 2-3 times daily for 2 weeks

Alternatives

Chloramphenicol, 1-2 drops 3-4 times daily OR single strip of ointment applied 2-3 times daily. (For **ADRs** and **C/Is,** see page 346)

Dosage forms: Eye drops, 0.5%; eye ointment, 1%

OR

Gentamicin, 1-2 drops 4-6 times daily for 10-15 days

Dosage form: Solution (Eye Drop), 0.3%

Prophylaxis of gonococcal conjunctivitis

- Clean the newborn's eye with 0.9% saline or clean water using sterile gauze
- Apply single strip of ointment into each eye any of the above antibiotic eye ointments

Refer: In severe and complicated cases refer to an ophthalmologist

5. Blepharitis

Blepharitis is a general term for inflammation of the eyelids. It is one of the most common causes of external ocular irritation. There are two main types of blepharitis: Seborrhoeic blepharitis and Staphylococcal blepharitis. If it is associated with conjunctivitis, it is termed as Blepharoconjunctivitis.

a. Seborrhoeic blepharitis

The inflammation is located predominantly at the anterior eyelid margin. One third of patients with seborrhoeic blepharitis have aqueous tear deficiency. Seborrhoeic blepharitis may occur alone or in combination with staphylococcal blepharitis. It is the milder form of blepharitis.

Clinical features

- Chronic eyelid redness, burning, foreign body sensation, itching,
- A variable amount of oily or greasy crusting, eye discharge,
- Easily plicable eyelashes.

Investigations

- Clinical

Treatment

Objectives

- Alleviate the symptoms

Non Pharmacologic

- Use of warm compresses
- Expression of meibomian gland secretions
- Cleanliness of the eyelid margins to remove keratinized cells and debris with Baby shampoo, tea water, salt water or commercially available eyelid scrub.

Pharmacologic

First line

Oxytetracycline+Polymixin B+Hydrocortisone, 1 drop 2-3 times a day for 2-4 weeks. (For **ADRs** and **C/I**s, see page 347)

Dosage form: Suspension, 0.977g + 1million I.U + 0.5g

Alternatives

Neomycin sulphate + Polymixin B + Dexamethasone, 1 drop 2-3 times a day for 2-4 weeks.

OR

Tetracycline, single strip of ointment applied 2-3 times daily for 2-4 weeks.

Dosage form: Eye ointment, 1%

b. Staphylococcal blepharitis (ulcerative blepharitis)

The most common causes of blephritis are staphylococcal infections usually caused by staphylococcus aureus. It is more common in younger individuals.

Clinical features

- Irritation and burning to peak in the morning and improve as the day progresses.
- Foreign body sensation, itching, and crusting, particularly upon awakening.
- Hard, brittle fibrinous scales and hard, matted crusts surrounding individual cilia (eyelash) on the anterior eyelid margin
- Ulceration of anterior eyelid margin
- Injection and telangiectasis of anterior and posterior eyelid margin
- White lashes (Poliosis)
- Loss of eyelashes (madarosis)
- Trichiasis can be seen in varying degrees depending on the severity and duration of blepharitis

Investigations

- Clinical

Treatment

Objectives

- Alleviate the symptoms
- Prevent losses of eye lashes
- Correct trichiasis
- Prevent blindness

Non Pharmacologic

- See under seborrhoeic blepharitis

- Surgical correction for trichiasis

Pharmacologic treatment

I. Topical

First line

Dexamethasone, 1 drop 4-6 times a day for 3-6 weeks and tapered every 5-7 days.

Alternatives

Oxytetracycline+Polymixin B+Hydrocortisone, 1 drop 2-3 times a day for 2-4 weeks. (For **ADRs** and **C/I**s, see page 347)

Dosage form: Suspension, 0.977g + 1million I.U + 0.5g

OR

Neomycin sulphate + Polymixin B + Dexamethasone, 1 drop 2-3 times a day for 2-4 weeks.

P/Cs: pregnancy, breast feeding

Dosage forms: *Suspension (eye drop), 3.5mg (base) + 10mg +10,000 units (base) in each ml*

OR

Tetracycline, single strip of ointment applied 2-3 times daily for 2-4 weeks.

II. Systemic (for recurrent cases)

First line

Tetracycline, 250mg P.O. QID for 6 weeks, then tapered slowly

(For **ADRs** and **C/Is** and **Dosage forms** see page 188)

Alternative

Doxycycline, 100mg P.O. BID for 6 weeks, then tapered slowly

(For **ADRs** and **C/Is** and **Dosage forms** see page 125)

N.B. Topical and systemic medications should be given simultaneously.

Refer: In severe and complicated cases refer to an ophthalmologist

6. Cataract

Cataract is opacity of the crystalline lens of the eye. It is the leading causes of blindness in Ethiopia and worldwide. The commonest cause of cataract is old age. It can be caused by trauma

to the eye, inflammation within the eye, metabolic conditions especially diabetes mellitus and congenitally.

Clinical features

- Disturbance of vision
- Reduced visual acuity
- Lens opacity

Investigations

- Fasting blood sugar

Treatment

Objective

- Restore vision

Non Pharmacologic

- Surgical removal of the cataract

Pharmacologic

- None

Refer: Refer all cases to ophthalmologist or cataract surgeon for surgical management

7. Chemical Burns

Chemical Burns can include **Alkaline chemicals** (e.g. lye, cements, plasters), **Acids, Solvents, Detergents, and Irritants.** Alkaline chemicals are more harmful than acids. The degree of chemical burn can be classified as mild, moderate or severe, and the symptoms and signs depend on the degree of the injury.

Clinical features

- Focal area of conjunctival chemosis, hyperemia, and/or hemorrhage; mild eyelid edema
- First, second or third degree burn of the periorbital skin.

Danger Signs

- Corneal epithelial defects,
- Pronounced chemosis and perilimbal blanching,
- Corneal edema and opacification, sometimes with little-to-no view of the anterior chamber, iris, or lens.

Investigations

- Clinical

Treatment

- Treatment must be instituted IMMEDIATELY, even before making vision test!!

Objectives

- Prevent corneal dryness, ulceration and infection
- Avoid corneal opacity and blindness

Non Pharmacologic (Emergent)

- Copious irrigation of the eyes, preferably with saline or Ringer's lactated solution, for at least 30 minutes.
- However, if non sterile water is the only available liquid, it should be used.
- Pull down the lower eyelid and evert the upper eyelid, if possible, to irrigate the fornices.
- Manual use of IV tubing connected to an irrigation solution facilitates the irrigation.
- Five minutes after ceasing the 30 minutes irrigation to allow for equilibrium, litmus paper is touch the inferior conjunctival fornix (cul-de- sac) to measure the pH. If the pH is not neutral (i.e.) the irrigation should be continued until neutral pH is reached.

Pharmacologic

- Give any available pain medications
- Apply any available antibiotic eye ointments and put pressure patch for 24 hours

N.B. Refer to an ophthalmologist immediately if the injury is severe. In mild cases, evaluate after 24 hours and refer the patient if the vision is still compromised.

8. Glaucoma

Glaucoma is characterised by progressive optic nerve head damage and visual field loss, for which raised intra-ocular pressure (IOP) is a primary risk factor. Glaucoma may occur as a primary condition or secondary to other ocular conditions or systemic diseases. Glaucoma can be further classified as acute or chronic and open- versus closed-angle. Glaucoma is usually a bilateral disease, but may be unilateral or asymmetrical (especially with underlying causes).

Clinical features

i. Chronic glaucoma

- Mostly asymptomatic.
- History of gradual loss of vision in the affected eye or loss of visual field.
- Often suspected after identifying cupping of optic disc on routine fundoscopy or finding elevated intra-ocular pressure on screening.
- Relative Aferent Pupillary Defect(RAPD) is useful to detect an eye with advanced glaucoma

ii. Acute closed-angle glaucoma

- Sudden onset of severe eye pain and redness, associated with nausea, vomiting and hemi-cranial headache.
- Loss of vision in the affected eye.
- Coloured haloes or bright rings around lights.
- Hazy or edematous cornea.
- Fixed, semi-dilated pupil.
- Severely elevated intra-ocular pressure.
- The affected eye feels harder compared to the other eye when measured with finger palpation/ballotment.

Investigations

- Measurement of intra-ocular pressure
- Visual field test

Treatment

Objectives

- Control intra-ocular pressure
- Preserve vision
- Halt progressive optic nerve head damage and visual field loss

Refer: Refer all cases to an ophthalmologist for Non Pharmacologic and Pharmacologic treatmentt.

9. Hordeolum (External) or Stye

It is an acute small staphylococcal infection of an eyelash follicle and associated with glands of Zeis or Moll. Tender inflamed swelling in the lid margin may point anteriorly through the skin. More than one lesion may be present and occasionally minute abscesses may involve the entire lid margin.

Clinical features

- Visible or palpable, well-defined nodule in the eyelid margin or painful and tender swelling of eyelid margin of short duration.
- In severe cases a mild preseptal cellulitis may be present.

Investigations

- Clinical

Treatment

Objectives

- Reduce the pain and swelling
- Treat the infection

Non Pharmacologic

- Warm compresses; applied for 10 minutes twice daily for 2-4 weeks
- Epilation of the involved eyelashes
- Incision and curettage if it does not disappear with other treatments

Pharmacologic

No treatment in most cases, styes frequently resolve spontaneously or discharge anteriorly.

If it is not resolved spontaneously:

First line

Oxytetracycline + Polymixin B + Hydrocortisone, 1 drop 2-3 times a day for 2-4 weeks. (For **ADRs** and **C/Is** and **Dosage forms** see page 347)

Alternatives

Neomycin sulphate + Polymixin B + Dexamethasone, 1 drop 2-3 times a day for 2-4 weeks.

OR

Tetracycline, single strip of ointment applied 2-3 times daily for 2-4 weeks

PLUS (if associated with cellulitis)

First line

Ampicillin, 50mg/kg P.O. in four divided doses for 7 days

(For **ADRs** and **C/Is** and **Dosage forms** see page 382)

Alternative

Cloxacillin, 50mg/kg P.O. in four divided doses for 7 days

(For **ADRs** and **C/Is** and **Dosage forms** see page 347)

10. Internal Hordeolum

Hordeolum is an inflammatory or infectious nodule that develops in the eyelid within the tarsal plate. Most frequently, it results from inspissations and secondary infection of sebaceous glands caused by staphylococcus.

Clinical features

- Eyelid lump, swelling, pain, tenderness, erythema,
- Visible or palpable, well-defined subcutaneous nodule within the eyelid (tarsus)

Investigations

- Clinical

Treatment

Objectives

- Reduce the pain and swelling
- Cure the infection

Non Pharmacologic

- Warm compresses; applied for 10 minutes twice daily for 2-4 weeks
- Incision and curettage if it does not disappear with other treatments

Pharmacologic

- See under “External hordeolum”

11. Meibomian cyst (Chalazion)

It is a chronic lipogranulomatous inflammatory lesion caused by blockage of meibomian gland orifices and stagnation of sebaceous secretion. Patient with acne rosacea or seborhoeic dermatitis are at increased risk of chalazion formation which may be multiple or recurrent. If it is recurrent, one should think of sebaceous gland carcinoma.

Clinical features

- Painless visible or palpable, well-defined nodule in the eyelid (eyelid lump) within the tarsal plate.
- Eversion of the lid may show an associated polyploidy granuloma

Investigations

- Clinical

Treatment

Objective

- Remove the lump/nodule from the eyelid

Non Pharmacologic and Pharmacologic treatment: See under "Internal hordeolum".

N.B. If the chalazion is recurrent, refer the patient to an ophthalmologist for further management to rule out malignant lesion like **Sebaceous Gland Carcinoma**

12. Molluscum contagiosum

Molluscum contagiosum is uncommon skin infection caused by poxvirus. It is a self-limited disease, but spontaneous resolution may take months to years. Extensive facial and eyelid molluscum lesions have been reported in immunocompromized patient. Complete resolution in these cases is often difficult.

Clinical features

- Painless and raised skin lesions which are dome-shaped,
- Usually multiple, umblicated, shiny nodule on the eyelid or eyelid margin.
- Follicular conjunctival reaction from toxic viral products and corneal pannus are serious signs.

Investigations

- Clinical

Treatment

Objective

- Remove the lump/nodule from the eyelid

Non Pharmacologic

- Shave excision, Expression

Pharmacologic

For follicular conjunctivitis

First line

Oxytetracycline + Polymixin B+Hydrocortisone, 1 drop 2-3 times a day for 2-4 weeks. (For **ADRs** and **C/Is** and **Dosage forms** see page 347)

Alternatives

Neomycin sulphate + Polymixin B + Dexamethasone, 1 drop 2-3 times a day for 2-4 weeks.

Refer: In severe and complicated cases refer to an ophthalmologist

13. Ophthalmic Zoster (Herpes Zoster Ophthalmicus=HZO)

It is caused by Varicella-zoster virus from established latency in sensory neural ganglia after primary infection. Age is the most common predisposing factor; most patients are in their 60-90 years of age. It is generally common in immunocompromised patient. The ophthalmic division (V_1) of CN V is affected more often than the maxillary and mandibular division. It is usually unilateral. Ocular involvement is common with HZO, occurring in more than 70% of patients. It is most likely to appear with infection of the nasociliary branch of CNV_1.

Clinical features

- Pain and dysesthesia
- Maculopapular rash in the forehead
- Development of vesicles, pustules and crusting ulceration
- In severe cases, periorbital edema due to secondary bacterial cellulitis.

Investigations

- Clinical
- Serology for HIV

Treatment

- Antiviral should be given within 48-72 hrs after rash, because the drug needs active viral replication

Objectives

- Reduce pain
- Prevent scar formation

- Prevent ocular involvement
- Treat the infection

Pharmacologic

First line

Acyclovir, 800mg 5x/day for 7-10 days for adults.

(For **ADRs** and **C/Is** and **Dosage forms** see page 355)

PLUS

Aspirin, 600mg every 4hours P.O. PRN

(For **ADRs** and **C/Is** and **Dosage forms** see page 109)

OR

Paracetamol1gm every 4hours P.O. PRN

(For **ADRs** and **C/Is** and **Dosage forms** see page 109)

For the wound: Clean the wound with Gentian Violet

N.B. If the tip and side of the nose is infected, the eye is likely to be involved even if it looks normal. So treatment is indicated with the following medications.

Atropine, 1 drop BID OR single strip of ointment applied BID

Dosage forms: Eye drop, 1%; Eye ointment, 1%

If eye is red and painful; it can be Corneal Ulcer

Chloramphenicol, 1-2 drops QID

(For **ADRs** and **C/Is** and **Dosage forms** see page 363&346)

If there is no corneal ulcer;

First line

Dexamethasone Sodium Phosphate, 1 drop 4-6 times a day (taper it every 5-7 days).

Alternative

Oxytetracycline+Polymixin B+Hydrocortisone, 1 drops 3-4 times a day for 2-4 weeks and tapered every 5-7 days.

(For **ADRs** and **C/Is** and **Dosage forms** see page 347)

OR

Neomycin sulphate + Polymixin B + Dexamethasone, 1 drop 2-3 times a day for 2-4 weeks.

Post herpetic Neuralgia

Aspirin, 600mg Q4hr P.O. PRN

(For **ADRs** and **C/Is** and **Dosage forms** see page 109)

OR

Paracetamol, 1gm Q4hr PRN

(For **ADRs** and **C/Is** and **Dosage forms** see page 109)

OR

Carbamazepine, 100gm P.O. per day, increase the full dose 300 to 400gm BID

Refer: In severe and complicated cases refer to an ophthalmologist

14. Orbital cellulitis

Orbital cellilitis implies active infection of the orbital soft tissue posterior to the orbital septum. In more than 90% of cases orbital cellilitis occurs as a secondary extension of acute or chronic bacterial sinusitis. Therefore; evaluation of the paranasal sinuses is essential in any patient with orbital cellilitis. Delay in treatment may result in progression of the infection an orbital apex syndrome or cavernous sinus thrombosis. Blindness, cranial nerve palsies, brain abscess, and even death can result and best avoided by aggressive management. Decreased vision and pupillary abnormalities suggest involvement of the orbital apex and demand immediate investigation and aggressive management.

Clinical features

- Red eye, pain, blurred and double vision, fever and headache.
- Eyelid edema, erythema, warmth, tenderness, proptosis, conjunctival chemosis,
- Restriction of ocular motility,
- Pain upon movement of the globe,
- Decreased vision and pupillary abnormality.

Refer: Refer the patient for hospital admission and IV medication

15. Preseptal cellulitis

It is an inflammation and infection confined to the eyelids and periorbital structures anterior to the orbital septum. It usually results from inoculation following trauma or skin infection. The globe is not usually involved; papillary reaction, visual acuity, and ocular motility are not

disturbed; pain upon eye movement and chemosis are absent. S. aureus and streptococci are the most common organisms, H. influenzae should, however, be considered in children. Preseptal cellulitis in infants and children under age 5 may be associated with bacteremia, septicemia, and meningitis. In such cases; hospitalization and intravenous antibiotics are indicated. Suspect anaerobes if a foul smelling discharge or necrosis is present or there is a history of animal or human bite. Consider viral if there is skin rash (herpes simplex or herpes zoster).

Clinical features

- Pain, tenderness, erythema, swelling/edema, warmth, and redness of eyelid, mild fever, and irritability

Investigations

- Complete blood cell count
- Gram's stain

Treatment

Objectives

- Reduce pain and suffering
- Treat the infection
- Prevent complications

Non Pharmacologic

- Incision and drainage if there is an abscess
- Warm compresses to the affected area TID PRN

Pharmacologic

A. Mild preseptal cellulitis

First line

Amoxicillin/clavulanate250-500mg P.O. TID for 10 days for adults; 20-40mg/kg/day P.O. TID for 10 days for children

Alternatives

Trimethoprim/Sulfamethoxazole, 160mg/800mg BID for 10 days for adults; 8mg/40mg/kg/day P.O. in 2 divided doses for 10 days for children.

(For **ADRs** and **C/Is** and **Dosage forms** see page 85)

OR

Erythromycin, 250-500mg P.O. QID for 10 days for adults; 30-50mg/kg/day P.O. 3-4 divided doses for 10 days for children

(For **ADRs** and **C/Is** and **Dosage forms** see page 268)

B. Moderate-to-severe preseptal cellulitis

Refer: Refer the patient for hospital admission and IV medication

16. Trachoma

Trachoma is a chronic keratoconjunctivitis caused by the organism *Chlamydia trachomatis* that primarily affects the superior and inferior tarsal conjunctiva and cornea. Trachoma is related to poor hygiene, and is a disease of poverty. It is the most important preventable disease and the most major cause of avoidable blindness in the world.

Clinical features

- Non specific symptom like, foreign body sensation, redness, tearing and mucopurulent discharge.
- Progressive conjunctival follicular hyperplasia
- Conjunctival scarring,
- Entropion of the eyelid and trichiasis
- Corneal neovascularization and opacity.

Investigations

Trachoma diagnosis is often made on the symptoms and typical physical signs. The World Health Organization (WHO) has introduced a simple severity grading system for trachoma based on the presence or absence of **five key signs:**

I. **Trachomatous Inflammation–Follicular (TF):** The presence of five or more follicles in the upper tarsal conjunctiva.
II. **Trachomatous Inflammation–Intense (TI):** Pronounced inflammatory thickening of the tarsal conjunctiva that obscures more than half of the deep tarsal vessels.
III. **Trachomatous Scarring (TS):** The presence of scarring in the tarsal conjunctiva.
IV. **Trachomatous Trichiasis (TT):** At least one eye lash rubs on the eye ball.
V. **Corneal opacity (CO):** Easily visible corneal opacity over the pupil.

Prevention and Treatment

The World Health Organization (WHO) advocates **SAFE** strategy.

S = Surgery for complications (TT & CO)

A = Antibiotics for active (inflammatory) trachoma (TT & TI)

F = Face washing, particularly in children

E = Environmental improvement including provision of clean water

Treatment

Objectives

- Cure the infection early
- Prevent complications

Non Pharmacologic

- Regular face washing
- Good water and sanitation
- Surgical correction of entropion/trichiasis

Pharmacologic

1. **Trachomatous Inflammation–Follicular (TF)**

First line

Tetracycline, single strip of ointment applied BID for 6 weeks, OR asintermittent treatment BID for five consecutive days per month, OR QD for 10 consecutive days, each month for at least for six consecutive months.

(For **ADRs** and **C/Is** and **Dosage forms** see page 188)

Alternative

Erythromycin, single strip of ointment applied BID for 6 weeks

(For **ADRs** and **C/Is** and **Dosage forms** see page 268)

2. **Trachomatous Inflammation – Intense (TI)**

Topical First line & Alternative (See under TF)

PLUS

Tetracycline, 250mg P.O. QID for 3 weeks (only for children over 7 years of age and adults). (For **ADRs** and **C/Is** and **Dosage forms** see page 188)

OR

Doxycycline, 100mg P.O. QD for 3 weeks (only for children over 7 years of age and adults) (For **ADRs** and **C/Is** and **Dosage forms** see page 125)

OR

Erythromycin, 250mg P.O. QID for 3 weeks. For children of less than 25kg, 30mg/kg daily in 4 divided doses

(For **ADRs, C/I and Dosage forms,** see page 268**)**

N.B. Azithromycin is given as a single dose of 20mg/kg. It represents long acting macrolides which has shown very promising effects in the treatment of trachoma in clinical research. It is still a very expensive drug.

17. Vitamin A Deficiency (Xerophthalmia)

Vitamin A is required for growth, health and proper functioning of surface tissues, including the epithelium of skin, mucus membranes, ocular tissues, particularly the cornea, conjunctiva and retina. Vitamin A is found naturally in dark-green leafy and yellow vegetables, tubers, and fruits; and occurs (preformed) in eggs, milk, liver, and fish.

Xerophthalmia is a term used to describe milder form of ocular changes resulting from Vitamin A deficiency. **Xerosis** means drying of the conjunctiva and corneal epithelium. **Keratomalacia** (softening and melting of the cornea) is the most severe form of Vitamin A deficiency. Children with corneal xerosis are likely to suffer from systemic illnesses, including diarrhea, pneumonia, and measles. The presence of keratomalacia indicates a poor prognosis for health and life; more than 50% of children with keratomalacia die because of associated poor nutritional status and susceptibility to disease.

Clinical features

- Night blindness or nyctalopia
- Thinning and lightening of hair,
- Weight loss,
- Dry and scaling of skin.

Classification of Xerophthalmia

$\mathbf{X_N}$ - Night blindness

$\mathbf{X_{1A}}$ - Conjunctival xcrosis

X_{1B} - Bitot's spots

X_2 - corneal xerosis

X_{3A}- Corneal ulceration/keratomalasia involving less than one third of the corneal surface

X_{3B} - Corneal ulceration/keratomalasia involving one third or more of the corneal surface

X_S - Corneal scars presumed secondary to xerophthalmia

X_F - Xerophthalmic fundus

Investigations

- Nutritional history and clinical findings

Treatment

Objectives

- Correct vitamin A deficiency
- Prevent blindness in patients with measles and malnutrition

Non Pharmacologic

Both for treatment and prevention

- Dietary, economic and social factors
- Breast feeding up to the age of 2 years
- Adequate fat, protein in the diet
- Nutritional : dark-green leafy vegetables, yellow vegetables, fruits, milk, eggs

Pharmacologic: Vitamin A in different doses based on the objective of treatment

I. Xerophthalmia Treatment Schedule for Children over one Year and under 6 Years Old

Immediately on diagnosis	200,000 IU vitamin A P.O.
Following day	200,000 IU vitamin A P.O.
Four weeks later	200,000 IU vitamin A P.O.

N.B. If there is persistent vomiting or profuse diarrhea, 100,000 IU (water soluble) vitamin

II. Diseases-Targeted Prevention Schedule for Preschool Children at High Risk*

Children over 1 year and under 6 years old	200,000 IU vitamin A P.O. at first contact with a health care worker for each episode of illness
Infants under 1 year old and children of any age who weigh less than 8 kg	100,000 IU vitamin A P.O. at first contact with a health care worker for each episode of illness

*Those presenting with measles, severe PEM, acute or prolonged diarrhea, acute lower respiratory infections.

III. Universal - Distribution Prevention Schedule for Preschool Children and Lactation Mothers

Children over 1 year and under 6 years months old who weigh 8 kg or more	200,000 IU vitamin A P.O. every 3-4
Children over 1 year and under 6 years months old who weigh less than 8 kg	200,000 IU vitamin A P.O. every 3-4
Infants	100,000 IU vitamin A P.O. at 6 months*
Lactating mothers	200,000 IU vitamin A P.O. at delivery or during the next 2 months; this will raise the concentration of vitamin A in the breast milk and help to protect the breast-fed infant

* **Best treatment protocol:** 25,000IU orally at each of the three DPT visits, the polio immunization, and then at 9 months (measles immunization).

ADRs : irritability

Dosage forms: Capsule, 25,000IU, 50000IU, 100,000IU; tablet, 50,000IU, 100,000IU, 200,000IDoral solution, 150,000IU/ml (concentrate) 50,000IU/ml; injection, 200,000IU/ml

Refer: In severe and complicated cases refer to an ophthalmologist

CHAPTER XVIII: EAR, NOSE AND THROAT

I. EAR

1. Acute Otitis Media

Acute otitis media is an inflammation which usually affects not only the mucosa of the middle ear, but also that of the entire pneumatic system. The infection is 90% monomicrobial. The infecting organisms are: Streptococci (in adults), Pneumococcal (in children), Hemophilus Influenzae, Staphylococci and Coli forms. A viral infection may prepare the way for secondary bacterial infection.

The younger the child, the more severe the generalized symptoms are and the more discrete the local signs are. On occasion the gastrointestinal symptoms are the most pressing. Every attack of acute otitis media is accompanied by mastoiditis.

Clinical features

- In the first phase of exudeative inflammation which lasts 1 – 2 days Increase temperature to 39 – 40C (often no fever in older patients)
- In severs cases, rigors and occasionally meningismus in chidren.
- Pulsating pain worse by night than by day.
- Muffled noise, deafness and sensitivity of the mastoid process to pressure.
- In the second phase (lasts 3 -8 days) middle ear exudate usually discharges spontaneously.
- Otoscopy shows hyperemia, moist infiltration and opacity of the surface of tympanic membrane, a pinhole size fistula forms usually in the poterosuperior quadrant of the tympaic membrane.

Investigations

- CBC
- Ear swab for culture and sensitivity

Treatment

Objectives

- Relieve symptoms
- Return the hearing to normal
- Prevent chronicity and complications (like perforation, meningitis, brain abscess, etc.).

Non Pharmacologic

- Drink lots of fluid
- Paracentesis when indicated.

Pharmacologic

First line

Amoxicillin, 500mg PO TID times for ten days for adults. 250 mg PO TID for ten days for children above 6 years of age. 125mg/5ml, 250mg/5ml **1 tsp.** PO TID for ten days for children under 6 years of age

ADRs: diarrhea, pseudomembranous colitis, acute interstitial nephritis, anemia, thrombocytopenia, thrombocytopenic purpura, eosinophilia, leucopenia.

C/Is: in patients with known hypersensitivity to any other penicillin or cephalosporins.

Dosage forms: Capsules: 250mg, 500mg; Suspension: 125mg/5ml, 250mg/5ml, 50mg/5ml; Tablets (chewable): 125mg, 250mg

Alternatives

Ampicillin, 250 – 500mg P.O, QID for 10 days for adult. 50 – 100mg/kg 1 tsp. PO QID or 100-200mg/kg IV into divided doses QID for children for 10 days.

ADRs: diarrhea, glossitis, stomatitis, acute interstitial nephritis, anemia, thrombocytopeniaa, thrombocytopenic purpura, leukopenia and eosinophilia)

C/Is: in patients with known hypersensitivity to any other penicillin or to cephalosporins. Ampicillin should not be used in patients with infectious mononucleosis

Dosage forms: capsules: 250mg, 500mg; Suspension: 100mg/ml, 125mg/5ml; 250mg/5ml, 500mg/5ml; Parenteral: 125mg, 250mg, 500mg, 1g, 2g; Infusion: 500mg, 1g, 2g

OR

Amoxicillin/Clavulanate, 375mg P.O. TID for 10 days OR 625mg P.O. BID for 10 days for adults 312mg/5ml suspension P.O. TID for 10 days OR 156mg/5ml suspension P.O. TID for 10 days for children

ADRs: diarrhea, skin rashes, Stevens - Johnson syndrome, vasculitis, hedache

C/Is: In patientswith a known history of hypersensitivity reaction to penicillin, hepatic dysfunction and jaundice patints.

Dosage forms: Tablets: 375 mg, 625 mg; Suspension: 156mg/5ml, 312mg/5ml

OR

Ciprofloxacin, 500mg PO BID FOR 7 - 10 days.

ADRs: rash and pruritus fever, joint pain, urticaria, neurlogical reactions, epistaxis, laryngeal edema, hypertension, angina pectoris, myocardial infarction).

C/Is: in patients allergic to the drug quinolone antibiotics, pregnancy, lactation.

Dosage forms: Tablets: 250mg, 500mg, 750mg

PLUS

Ciprofloxacin ear drop eye ear solution; 0.3%, 5ml. 2 – 3 drops twice daily.

ADRs: discomfort, pain or itching in the ear, headache.

C/I; hypersensitivityto quinolone groupof antibiotics.

Dosage forms : Ciprofloxacin USP: 0.3% w/v; Benzalkonium chloride NF: 0.01%

OR

Chloramphenicol; Solution ear drop, 1%, 2%, 5%. Apply 2–3 drops 2–3times daily.

ADRs: Peripheral neuropathy, itching, burning sesation, decreased visual acuity.

C/Is: Hypersensitivity to the drug, perforated ear drum, breast feed mothers.

Dosage forms : Otic Solution: 0.5%

PLUS

Paracetamol, 30-40mg/kg/24hrs

ADRs: Increased transaminase, thrombocytopenia, leucopenia, neutopenia, skin rashes, gastro intestinal haemorrage.

C/Is: Hepatic impairment, impaired kidney.

Dosage forms : Tablet: 500mg of paracetamol (N-Acetyl – P aminophenol)

Suspension: 120mg/5ml paracetamol (N-Acetyl – P aminophenol).

NB: - Paracentisis should be carried out early if the tympanic membrane does not perforate spontaneously. Antrotomy should be carried out early if it is indicated on clinical ground

2. Bacterial and Viral Diffuse Otitis Externa

There is complete obstruction of the external auditory meatus with an accompanying retroauricular lymphoadenitis especially in infants and young children. A characterstic eryspelas

occurs in streptococcal infection. In swimmer's otitis due to maceration of the skin by halogen-containing swimming pool water.

Clinical Features

- Fever with generalized illness
- Regional lympadenitis
- Pain onpullingon the auricule or pressure on the tragus
- A phlegmonous formcan extendto the surrounding tissues and organs (paratoid ,mastoid skull base).
- Complete obstruction of the external auditoy meatus with retroauricular lymphadenitis.

Investigations

- Diagnosis is clinical

Treatment

Objectives

- Reduce the swelling of the skinof the externalauditory meatus.
- Stop further complications.

Non pharmacologic

- Ear pack with 70-90% pure alcohol

Pharmacologic

First line

Oxytetracycline hydrochloride + polymyxin B sulphate + hydrocortisone acetate, 2 drops 2-3 times daily.

ADRs; local sensitivity reactions

C/Is: perforated tympanic membrane P/Cs: avoid prolonged use

Dosage forms: Ear drop, 5 mg +15 mg + 10,000 units in each ml

Alternatives

Cloxacillin, 500mg PO QID for 7 – 10 day. 50-100mg/Kg/24hrs PO divided into 4 doses for 7 – 10 days for children

ADRs: epigastric distress, diarrhea, intrahepatic cholestasis, acute interstitial nephritis, eosinophilia, leucopenia, granulocytopenia, thrombocytopenia, rash, chills, fever, sneezing and anaphylaxis.

C/Is: In patients with known hypersensitivity to any other penicillin or to cephalosporins

Dosage forms: Capsule: 250mg, 500mg; Syrup: 125mg/5ml, 250mg/5ml; Iinjection, 250mg, 500mg in vial

OR

Amoxicillin, 250 - 500mg PO TID for 7 -10 days for adults. 50-100mg/kg PO TID for 7 – 10 days for children

ADRs: diarrhea, pseudomembranous colitis, acute interstitial nephritis, anemia, thrombocytopenia, thrombocytopenic purpura, eosinophilia, leucopenia.

C/Is: in patients with known hypersensitivity to any other penicillin or cephalosporins.

Dosage forms; Capsules: 250mg, 500mg. Suspension: 125mg/5ml, 250mg/5ml 50mg/5ml. Tablets (chewable): 125mg, 250mg

OR

Erythromycin, 250mg to 500mg PO Q 6 hrs for adults. 30 to 50mg /kg PO daily divided 6 hrs for children. Or 15 to 20mg/kg IV daily divided doses Q 4 to 6hrs.

ADRs: Allergic reactions, gastro intestinal symptoms, overgrowth of micro organisms, cholestatic jaundice, hearing loss (with high IV doses in renal failure)

C/Is: Decreased liver function, hypersensitivity to this drug.

Dosage forms: Tablets (enteric coated) 250mg, 500mg; Suspension: 200mg/5ml, 125mg/5m, 400mg/5ml; Tablets (chewable): 125mg, 250mg; Injection: 250-mg, 500-mg 1-g vials; Drops: 100mg/ml

3. Chronic Otitis Media

Chronic otitis media is defined as long-standing inflammation of the middle ear cleft in which signs of acute inflammation are charcteristically missing.

Clinical Features

- Constant or intermittent discarge (usually odurless) from the ear
- Conductive hearing impairment of slight to moderate
- Absence of pain
- Occasionally granulations or polyps may form with in the middle ear and a large aural polyp may occlude the external auditoy meatus.

- Usually there is a large centeral or anerior defect of the tympanic membrane (perforation).

Investigations

- Basic audiological test including Tuning-fork test (Rinne, Weber and Absolute Bone conduction.
- Culture of of the ear discharge.

Treatment

Objectives

- Keep the ear dry
- Promptly treat acute exacerbations.

Non pharmacologic

- Clean the external meatus periodically

Pharmacologic

N.B. In acute exacerbations only. Antibiotic treatment, whenever possible, must be directed by the results of culture and sensitivity of the ear discharge.

First line

Amoxicillin 500mg PO TID for 10 - 15 days for adults

(For ADRs, C/I and **Dosege** Form see page 187).

Alternatives

Amoxicillin / Clavulanate 625mg or 1gm PO BID for 10 days for Adults.

For children; 156mg/5ml or 312mg/5ml **1 tsp.** PO TID or 248mg/5ml or 457mg/5ml PO BID.

OR

Ceframed; 250mg PO QID or 500mg PO QID for 7 – 10 days for adults.

For chidren; 75 to 100mg/kg/day in divided doses every 6 to 12 hours 7 – 10 days

ADRs: Skin rashes, darrhoea

C/I: In patients with known hypersensitivityto the cephalosporin group of antibiotic.

Dosage form: Capsules: 250mg, 500mg Suspension: 125mg/5ml, 250mg/5ml)

PLUS

Hydrogen peroxide solution 3% apply 5 to 10 drops twice daily for ear cleaning.

Patient should be treated as early as possible by ENT specialist.

Dosage forms: Solution, 1.5%, 3%

4. Foreign Bodies in the Ear

The majority of patients with foreign bodies in the ear are children.

The organic or inorganic objects may give rise to otitis externa (especially organic) by local irritation of the epithelium of the meatal walls.

Clinical Features

- Itching sensation
- Pain, purulent discharge and debris
- Deafness
- Foreign body detected on otoscopic examination.

Investigations

- Diagnosis is clinical

Treatment

Objectives

- Open the ear canal which is completely or partially closed by removing the foreign body.
- Eliminate secondry infections

Non pharmacologic

- Irrigation of the suspected ear with water by ENT specialist if there is no perforation of the tympanic membrane. .
- Manual removal is one of the approach

Pharmacologic

Patient should be kept on antibiotic if there is sign of infection on the ear canal or purulent discharge.

First line

Amoxicillin; 500mg P.O. TId 10 days for adults; 250mg P.O. TID 10 days for children above 6 years of age; 125mg/5ml or 250mg/5ml P.O. TID 10 days for children under 6 years of age. (For ADRs, C/I and Dosage forms see page 187)

Alternatives

Amoxicillin/ clavulanate Error! Bookmark not defined.; 375mg P.O. TID for 10 days or 625mgP.O. BID 10 days for adults. 156mg/5ml P.O. TID or 312mg/5ml P.O. TID 10 days for children.

OR

Cloxacillin; 500mg P.O. QID 10 days for adults; 50-100mg/kg/day P.O. divided into 4 doses 7-10 days for children.

(For **ADRs** and **C/Is** and **Dosage forms** see page 347)

OR

Oxytetracycline hydrochloride + Polymyxin B Sulphate + Hydrocortisone acetate; 2 drops 2-3 times daily. (For **ADRs** and **C/Is** and **Dosage forms** see page 347)

N.B. Foreign bodies that cannot be removed by irrigation should be removed manually, using general anesthesia in small children.
Ears with vegetables foreign bodies should not be irrigated, since this may cause the vegetable matter to swell. Crushing insect foreign bodies is to be avoided.

5. Idiopathic Facial Paralysis (Bells Palsy)

The cause , as the name indicates, is unknwn. It may be a disturbance of the micro circulation leading to a serous inflammation with the formation of edema.
A viral infection may also be responsible. Exposure to cold, emotional stress and pain over mastoid may precede the onset of the lesion. Recovery occurs in approximately 80% of patients within a few weeks or months of onset.
It is of sudden onset and occurs at any age, particularly healthy adults of 20 - 35years and children of 6 -12 years of age.

Clinical features

- Inability to close the eye on the affected side
- Deviation of the corner of the mouth to the opposite side.
- Paralysis of the facial nerve(peripheral type) is detectable on clinical examination

Investigations

- Diagnosis is clinical

Treatment

Objective

- Regain the function of the facial nerve as early as possible.

Non pharmacologic

- Use of paper tape to depress the eye lid during sleep to prevent corneal dryness.
- Massage of the weakened muscles.
- Surgical decompression may rarely be indicated.

Pharmacoglogic

Patients should receive both prednisone and acyclovir.

Prednisolone, 60-80 mg/ day p.o. for five days to be tapered over the next five days.

ADRs: insomnia, headache, psychotic behavior, nervousness, restlessnes, hypertension, catract glaucoma, peptic ulcer and immunosuppression.

C/I: GI ulceration, renal disease, hypertension, osteoporosis, diabetes mellitus, tuberculosis, liver cirrhosis, glaucoma, hyperthyrodism.

Dosage forms : Tablets: 5mg; Syrup: 15mg/5ml; Injection: 25mg/ml, 50mg/ml, 100mg/ml suspension

PLUS

Acyclovir, 800 mg 5 times daily for 7 days or 5mg/kg body weight IV TID for 7 days.

ADRs: headache, encephalopathic signs, hypotension, diarrhea, hematuria

C/I: Patients with known hypersensitivity, dehydreted patients, renal dysfunction,

Dosage forms; Capsules: 200mg, Injection: 500mg/vial; Ointment: 5%

N.B. Immediate decompression of the nerve should be undertaken for progressive denervation after careful assessment of the indication.

6. Nonspecific Inflamation of the External Ear

This is an inflammation of the external auditory meatus caused by gram negative bacteria and anaerobes. The inflammation is localized to the auricle The external auditory meatus is swollen

and usually filled with fetid debris which can form a nidus of infection for gram negative bacteria and anaerobes. The tympanic membraneis intact but may be difficult to asses because of the accumlation of debris.

Clinical features

- The cartilaginous part of the meatus is pai
- Retroauriular region are tender to pressure,
- Pain on pressure on the tragus strongly suggests otitis externa.

Investigations

- Otoscopy
- Examination of pus for bactriology
- Tuning fork test,
- Audiogram

Treatment

Objectives

- Relieve the classic triad symptoms
- Shorten hospital stay.
- Regain hearing capacity

Non pharmacologic

- Clean the external auditory canal meatus manually under visualization with water or saline or 3% $_{H2O2\ at}$ 3^{70} C repeatedly

Pharmacologic

First line

Oxytetracycline hydrochloride + polymyxin B sulphate + hydrocortizone acetate, 2 drops 2 to 3 times daily.

ADRs: Not significant.

C/Is: Acute herpes simplex, Varicella, acute purulent infections**.**

Dosage forms: Ear drop, 0.977g+1million IU+0.5g

Alternatives

Chloramphenicol, 2 – 3 drops 2 to 4 times daily.

(**For ADRs and C**/I see page 346)

Dosage forms: Solution (Ear Drop), 1%, 2% and 5%

OR

Gentamicin; 1 – 2 drops 3 to 4 times daily

In severe cases:

First line

Amoxicillin, 500 mg PO TID for 7 - 10 days. 50 – 100mg/kg PO BID for ten days for children. **(For ADRs**, **C/I** and **Dosage forms** see page 187)

Alternatives

Amoxicillin/Clavulanate375mg PO TID or 625mg PO BID for ten days.

156mg/5ml PO TID 7 – 10 days or 312mg/5ml PO TID 7 to 10 days for children.

OR

Ciprofloxacin, 500mg PO BID for 10 days

ADRs: Diarrhoea, abdominal pain, headache restlessness and skin rash

C/Is: Hyposensitivity to fluoroquinolones or the quinolone group of antibacterial agents

Dosage Forms: Tablets: 250mg, 500mg, 750mg)

7. Herpes Zoster Oticus (Specific Forms)

Herpes zoster oticus or Ramsay Hunt syndrome is the third most frequent cause of facial paralysis. The disease occurs particularly in adults between 20 and 30, and 50 and 70years of age. This disease characterized by multiple herpetic vesicles arranged in groups on the auricle, the external auditory meatus and occasionally the tympanic membrane. In severe cases disorders of hearing and balance and facial paralysis may occur.

Clinical Featurs

- Herpetic vesicles are found mostly around the auricle, in the external meatus and in the concha.
- Usally starts with acute and severe pain
- Sensory neural hearing loss
- Tinnitus
- Vertigo
- Herpatic palsy is usually complete.

Investigations

- Diagnosis is clinical

Treatment

Objectives

- Relieve pain and symptoms
- Prevent complcations

Non Pharmacologic

- None

Pharmacologic

Acyclovir, 800mg P.O.5 times a day for 7days or 5mg/kgbody weight IV every 8 hours for 7 days.

ADRs: Rashes, gastro intestinal disturbances, rises in bilirubin and liver related enzymes, increase in blood urea and creatinen, decrease in heamatological indices, headache and fatigue.

C/Is: Current administration of steroids.

Dosage forms: Tablet, 200mg, 400mg; Powder for injection, 250mg, and 500mg

N.B:- Broad spectrum antibiotics (Amoxicillin, Cefixime, Amoxicillin/ClavulnateJulmentin, etc) might be needed to avoid secondary infections.

II. NOSE AND NASAL SINUSES

1. Acute Rhinitis

The symptoms are not uniform. The general symptoms including chills and feeling of cold alternating with a feeling of heat, headache, fatigue, loss of appetite, possibly sub-febrile or high temperature.

Clinical features

- Low to high temperatue in chidren
- Itching, burning and feeling of dryness in the nose and throat.
- The nasal mucosa is usually pale and dry later with watery secretions and obstruction.
- Temporary loss of smell

- On rhinoscopy the nasal mucosa is deep red in color, swollen and secretes profusely.

Investigations

- Diagnosis is clinical.

Treatment

Objectives

- Relieve symptoms
- Prevent secondary bacterial infections

Non pharmacologic

- Bed rest
- Steam inhalation

Pharmacologic

First line

Chlorpheneramine, 4mg PO TID for adults. 2mg PO 2-3 times daily for children. (For **ADRs** and **C/Is** and **Dosage forms** see page 279)

Alternative

Cetrizine Hydrochloride, 10mg PO daily Adults and children above 12 years. 5-10mg PO daily. For Children below12years.

PLUS

Xylomethazoline, 2-3 drops of 1% solution 3-4 times a day. Adults and over 6 years of age. 1-2 drops of 0.5% solution a day in each nostril. Infants and small children up to 6 years of age.

2. Acute RhinoSinusitis

This usually arises as a complication of viral rhinitis but it is possible that the disease begins as a viral sinusitis. The infection is always bacterial by the time the patient consults a doctor. The most frequently occuring micro-organisms are Heamophilus influenzae, the pneumococcus and the Streptococcus. Dental origin can be caused by extension of a periapical inflammation or acsess.

Clinical Features

- Pains in the face and the head.
- Feeling of pressure in the skull or a lancinating, boring, pulsating pain especially in the

anterior part of the skull.

- Sensitivityto pressureor tapping over the affected sinus is common

Investigations

- Anterior and posterior rhinoscopy
- Nasoendoscopy
- Possibly including acontrast medium
- Puncture and irrigation
- Sinoscopy by Beck's trephination
- Bactriologic examinationof the secretion

Treatment

Objectives

- Relieve the symptoms
- Clear the infection

Non pharmacologic

- Bed rest
- Hot bath
- Apply heat or microwave (infrared light) locally
- Apply cold if heat is not tolerated

Pharmacologic

First line

Amoxicillin, 500 mg PO TID for 7 - 10 days; 50 – 100mg/kg PO BID for ten days for children. **(For ADRs**, **C/I** and **Dosage forms** see page 187)

Alternatives

Amoxicillin / Clavulanate, 375mg PO TID for 10 days, or 625mg PO BID for ten days or 1gm PO BID for 7 days (depending on the severity). For Children: 156mg /5ml or 312mg/5ml PO TID Q 8 hrs.

OR

Azithromycin, 500mg PO daily for 3 days for adults 200mg/5ml PO daily for 3 days. for children.

PLUS

Xylomethazoline Hydrochloride; 0. 05% or 0. 1% 2 drops BID daily

PLUS

Loratadine; 10mg PO daily for 7 to 10 days, children 2 to 6 years of age 1 teaspoonful once daily, over 6 years of age 2 teaspoonful PO daily.

3. Allergic Rhinitis

The most common form is hay fever but other allergens may be responsible. The shock organ is usually the nasal mucosa but it may also be the conjunctiva or other mucous membranes. The disease is often hereditary.

Clinical features

- Itching in the nose, Nasal obstruction, Sneezing attacks, A lear watery nasal discharge
- Feeling of fullness and irritation of the entire head
- Conjunctivitis
- Temporary fever
- Loss of appetite

Investigations

- Diagnosis is clinical

Treatment

Objectives

- Relieve symptoms

Non pharmacologic

- Avoid exposure to which the patient is hypersensitive

Pharmacologic

First line

Xylomethazoline, 1% 2 to 3 drops 2 - 3 times into each nostril daily; For infants and small children: 0.5% 1 to 2 drops 1 – 2 times a day into each nostril. **(For**

PLUS

Cetrizine, Adult and children above 12 years of age: 10mg tab PO daily. Children below 12 years of age: 5 – 10 mg PO daily

OR

Loratadine, one tablet (10mg) once daily Syrup: two teaspoonfuls (10mg) once daily.

Body weight >30kg - 10ml [10mg], (two teaspoonful), once daily
Body weight <30kg – 5ml [5mg], (one teaspoonful), once daily.

OR

Dexchlorpheniramine maleate, 6mg PO BID Syrup for adults and children12 years or older: one-half teaspoonful 3-4 times a day for children 6-12 years of age: one-quarter teaspoonful 3 or 4 times a day for children 2-6 years of age

ADRs: fatigue

Dosage forms: tablet, 2mg, 4mg, 6mg; Syrup, 2mg/5ml

Alternative

Beclomethasone, 2 – 4 inhalations TID or QID for adults; One to 2 Inhalation TID or QID maximum of 10 inhalation for children age 6-12 years

ADRs: Flushing, skin rash, dry mouth, hoarseness, irritation of the tongue or throat, impaired sense of taste and bloody mucus

C/Is: Patients with acute status asthmatics and in patients who are Hypersensitive to any component of the preparation.

Dosage forms: Oral inhalation (Aerosol), 50mcg/dose, and 100mcg/dose)

4. Atrophic Rhinitis and Ozeana

Atrophic rhinitis (Ozena) mostly accompanied by a foul smell from the nose. The disease occurs in both sexes more in young girls.The term ozeana is used when the nasl atrophy is accompanied by a marked formation of crysts and foetor. The aetiology of ozeana is not known.

Clinical features

- Nasal cavity usually is filled completely by greenish-yellow or brownis-black crusts.
- The nasal cavity is very wide.
- The mucosa is atrophic and dry.
- There are a fetid secretion and crust.
- Patient has ansomia
- Dryness and dry, thick crust involving the entire pharynx, larynx and trachea.
- The nose contains gluey, dry greenish-yellow secretions and crust. The nasal cavity is wide and the crusts give off a smell in ozena.

Investigations

- Diagnosis is clinical.

Treatment

Objective

- Keep the nose free of crusts and foetor

Non pharmacologic

- Clean the nasal cavity by douching several times a day with diluted salt water**.**
- Apply oily nasal drops emulsions, or ointment and possibly vitamin A supplemnts.
- Apply steam inhalation with saline solution.

Pharmacologic

- None

5. Chronic Rhinosinusitis

Three or more episodes in 6 Months or 4 or more episodes in one year

Clinical features

- Pressure symptoms or dull pain over the fac in the infra or supra orbital area.
- Nasal obstruction and purulent nasal discharge.

Treatment

Non pharmacologic

- Repeated lavage of the sinus with normal saline.
- Surgery if no resolutionafter repeated lavage

Pharmacologic

First line

Amoxicillin, 500 mg PO TID for 10 days.

ADRs: diarrhea, pseudomembranous colitis, acute interstitial nephritis, anemia, thrombocytopenia, thrombocytopenic purpura, eosinophilia, leucopenia.

C/Is: in patients with known hypersensitivity to any other penicillin or cephalosporins.

Dosage forms; Capsules: 250mg, 500mg. Suspension: 125mg/5ml, 250mg/5ml 50mg/5ml. Tablets (chewable): 125mg, 250mg

Alternatives

Amoxicillin / Clavulanate, 375mg PO TID for 10 days, or 625mg PO BID for ten days or 1gm PO BID for 7 days (depending on the severity). For Children: 156mg /5ml or 312mg/5ml PO TID Q 8 hrs.

OR

Cefixime,, For adults and children weight more than 50kg or older than 12 years - 200mg PO BID for 6 days, for children-8mg/kg suspension as a single dose or 4mg/kg BID PO.

ADRs; diarrhea, abdominal pain, skin rashes, urticaria transsient elvationin liver enzymes

C/I; patients with known allergy to cephalosporin

Dosage form ; 200mg Cefixme, (as trihydrate) Suspension 100mg/5ml cefixime, (as trihydrate)

OR

Azithromycin For Adults; 500mg PO daily for 3 days.

For Children; 200mg/5ml PO daily for 3 days.

N.B. Operation should be advised if the disease is not resolved after repeated lavages.

6. Epistaxis

Epistaxis occurs in 60% of person's world wide during their lifetime and approximately 6% of those seek medical treatment. Epistaxis may be a life-threatening disease which is extremely difficult to treat, whose causes may not be remediable, and which may lead to death. More than 90% of episodes of epistaxis occur along the anterior nasal septum at a site called Kiesselbach's area. Its vascular supply moves from the external and internal caratoid artery.

Clinical features

- Bleeding from one or both nostrils.
- The heammorrhage may occasionally be severe and may lead to anemia and shock..

Investigations

- CBC
- Coagulation profile when systemic cause is suspected.

Treatment

Objectives

- Stop epistaxis.
- Replace blood if bleeding is severe.
- Prevent recurrence of epistaxis.

Non pharmacologic

Most anterior nose-bleeds are self-limited and do not require medical treatment.

- Pinching the anterior aspect of the nose for 15 minutes.
- Relax and the head position can be either forward or backward
- Avoid swallowing or aspirating any blood that may drain into the pharynx.
- Posterior packing for the posterior nasal bleeding ;
- Apply inflatable balloons or foley catheter or cotton gauze introduced through the mouth and then retracted up into the nasopharynx (but care must be taken to avoid trauma to the ala).

Pharmacologic

First line

Topical vasoconstrictor; Oxymetazoline spray 0.05% adults and children greater than 6 years of age: 2-3 drops ever12 hours usually in the morning or evening.

OR

Chemical cautery;

Silver Nitrate + Potassium Nitrate,

apply to mucous membranes and other moist skin surfaces only on area to be treated 2 - 3 times/ week for 2- 3 weeks

ADRs: burning and skin irritation, staining of the skin, hyponatremia, methemoglobinemia.

C/Is: broken skin, cuts, or wounds, eyes

P/Cs: prolonged use may result in skin discoloration.

Dosage forms: Toughened, 95% + 5%

Alternatives

Anterior nasal packing; gauze coated with petroleum jelly or absorbable materials like Gelfoam and oxidized cellulose.

PLUS

Topical antibiotics;

Tetracycline 3% ointment. Apply on the affected site QD or BID

OR

Chloramphenicol 1% *Solution, a*pply 2 – 3 drops into the ear 2 – 3 times daily

ADRs: high incidence of sensitivity reactions to vehicle, optic and peripheral neuritis

D/Is: alfentanil, chlorpropamide, phenytoin, tolbutamide, rifampicin, warfarin, vitamin $B_{12,}$ folic acid

C/Is: hypersensitive to the drug or any ingredients in the formulations; perforated tympanic membrane, breast feeding

P/Cs: over growth with non-susceptible organisms, Avoid prolonged use

Dosage forms: 1 %, 2 %, 5 % ear drop

If additional infection is suspected Oral antimicrobials are added

First line

Amoxicillin ; 250 – 500mg. caps P.O. TID 7 – 10 days for adults;

125mg/5ml – 250mg/5ml P.O. TID 7 – 10 days for children.

(For **ADRs** and **C/Is** and **Dosage forms** see page 187)

Alternatives

Ciprofloxacillin; 500mg P.O. BID for 7 – 10 days.

(For **ADRs** and **C/Is** and **Dosage forms** see page 354)

Amoxicillin/Clavulanate375mg P.O. TID for 7- 10 days or 625mg P.O. BID for 7- 10 days for adults; 156mg/5ml P.O. TID or 312mg/5ml P.O. TID 7- 10 days for children.

N.B. When conservative measures fail to stop the bleeding, embolization or surgical ligation of the offending vessels is needed.

7. Nasal Furuncle

Due to skin break in the nasal vestibule from nose picking or blowing, allowing entry of Stphhlococcal or Streptococcal bacteria. The disease is always limited to the skin and never

affects the mucsa. The fruncule coalesces to an abcess which may be drained . Manuplation and icision should be avoided until the fruncule points because it is in the danger triangle of the face.

Clinical features

- Pain
- Pus and central necrotic cove
- Fever
- Sensitivity to pressure followed by reddening and swelling of the tip of the nasal ala

Investigations

- CBC
- Pus culture and sensitivity

Treatment

Objectives

- Relieve pain
- Treat infection

Non pharmacologic:

- Drain the pus
- Apply ice bag

Pharmaclogic

Applied to the nasal vestibule:

Tetracycline hydrochloride 2.2mg/ml solution, 3% Ointment

OR

Hydrocortisone Cream or ointment 0.25%, 0.5%, 1%, 2.5%,

PLUS

Cloxacillin sodium 500mg PO QID for ten days for adults: 50-100mg /kg PO QID for ten days for chidren. (For **ADRs** and **C/Is** and **Dosage forms** see page 347)

OR

Amoxicillin / Clavulanate 625mg - 1gm PO BID for ten days for adults' 228mg/5ml mg or 457mg/5ml (suspension) PO BID for chidren

8. Foreign Bodies in the Nose

These are usually found in children of the 2 – 3 year age group. Usually the insertionis done in privacy, while playing by themselves, when left alone.

Clinical features

- These include unilateral nasal obstruction
- Worsening chronic purulent rhinitis or sinusitis
- Unilateral fetid secretion and formation of rhinolith due to deposition of calcium around the foreign body.

Investigations

- Anterior rhinoscopy and

Treatment

Objectives

- Prevent the danger of spreading of the infection and of complications.
- Relief the pain

Non pharmacologic

- Remove the foreign body with instrument under a short general anesthetic since long-standing foreign bodies are often firmly fixed and provoke brisk bleeding when they are mobilized.

Pharmacologic

If there is sign of infection

Amoxicillin / Clavulanate 625mg - 1gm PO BID for ten days for adults. 312mg/5ml PO TID for 7 to 10 days 228mg/5ml mg or 457mg/5ml (suspension). PO BID for 7 to 10 days for chidren.

III. MOUTH and PHARYNX

1. Acute Tonsillitis

Acute infection of the lymphoepithelial tissue of the faucial isthmus, the palatine tonsil is known as tonsillitis. The main cause are Beta – Streptococci, Staphylococci, Streptococcus pneumoniae (diplococcus pneumoniae) and Haemophilus.

Clinical features

- High temperature and possibly chills, espeically in chideren.
- Burning sensation of the throat
- Persistant pain in the oropharynx
- Pain on swallowing thatradiates to the ear.
- Opening the mouth is often difficult and painful.
- Headache and marked feeling of malaise.
- Swelling and tenderness of the regional lymph nodes.
- Both tonsils and the surrounding area are deep-red and swollen

Investigations

- CBC and ESR
- Culture from throat swab.

Treatment

Objectives

- Treat infection
- Relieve pain

Non pharmacologic

- with warm normal saline solution.

Pharmacologic

First line

Amoxicillin, 250 - 500mg PO TID for 7 – 10 days. 125mg/5ml, 250mg/5ml PO TID for 7 – 10 days. (For **ADRs** and **C/Is** and **Dosage forms** see page 187)

Alternatives

Ampicillin, 250mg to 500mg PO in divided doses QID. 50 -100mg/kg PO TID for 7 – 10 days QID. 100 – 200mg/kg IV in divided doses TID

(For **ADRs** and **C/Is** and **Dosage forms** see page 382)

OR

Amxoicillin / Clavulanate375mg PO TID for ten days or 625mg PO BID for ten days 156mg/5ml PO TID for ten days or 312mg/5ml PO TID for ten days or 228mg/5ml PO BID or 457mg/5ml PO BID for ten days.

PLUS

Paracetamol, 500mg PO PRN. (For **ADRs** and **C/Is** and **Dosage forms** see page 109)

IV. SALIVARY GLANDS

1. Mumps (Epidemic Parotitis)

Mumps is a contagious disease caused by a filterable virus. The parotid glands are the salivary glands most commonly involved with mumps, but the sublingual and submandibular glands may also be affected. In 75-80% of cases both glands are involved.

Clinical features

- Swelling of the involved gland.
- Redness and slight swelling of the opening of the duct.
- Displacement of the auricle.
- The secretions are not purulent.
- There is no fever

Investigations

- Diagnosis is clinical

Treatment

Objectives

- Relieve symptoms

Non pharmacologic:

- Massage the gland

Pharmacologic

First line

Paracetamol, 1000mg PO every 6 hrs PRN for adults 30 - 40mg/kg/24 hr. divided into 4 – 6 doses for chidren

(For **ADRs** and **C/Is** and **Dosage forms** see page 109)

Alternatives

Tramadol; 100 mg PO every 6 hrsPRN for adults.

ADRs: dependence, abdominal pain, anorexia, central nervous stimulation, constipation, vertiego, skin rashes, sweating.

C/I : Respiratory depression, in the presence of acute alcholism, head injury, during pregnancy and lactation

Dosage forms : Tablet: 100 mg.

N.B. Not recommended for chidren below 12 years of age

CHAPTER XIX: OBSTETRICS and GYNACOLOGY DISORDERS

I. COMMON OBSTETRIC DISORDERS

1. Hypertensive Disorders in Pregnancy

Hypertension is a common medical problem that complicates pregnancy. It is also one of the three major causes of maternal death. It may be manifested as chronic hypertension chronic hypertension with superimposed preeclampsia, pregnancy induced hypertension, pre-eclampsia or eclampsia. The cause of this disease entity is not well defined.

Clinical features

- Increase BP≥ 140mmHg (systolic) and 90mmHg (diastolic) during pregnancy.
- The presence of other clinical signs and symptoms of hypertension in pregnancy depends on the severity of the disease.

Investigations

- The presence of significant proteinuria greater than 300mg/24hours urine specimen or, less accurately, more than 1+ protein (equivalent to approximately 100mg/dl) on dipstick sampling of random urine specimen.
- Proteinuria is usually late manifestation of preeclampsia that follows the hypertension and correlates with glomerular lesions in the kidneys. Proteinuria is usually variable and should be carefully interpreted because it can be influenced by factors like contamination of the urine specimen with vaginal secretions, blood, or bacteria; urine specific gravity, pH, exercise; and posture.

Classes

I. Pregnancy induced hypertension (PIH)

Pregnancy induced hypertension is defined as a rise in BP≥ 140/90 mmHg after the 20^{th} week of gestation measured twice at least six hours apart or a single measurement of diastolic BP≥110mmHg, except in Gestational Trophblastic diseases(GTD) and multiple pregnancy when this can be diagnosed before the 20^{th} weeks of pregnancy. There are different types of PIH.

a) Gestational hypertension:

This is diagnosed when the systolic BP is raised to 140mmHg and the diastolic BP to 90mmHg or more after the 20th week of gestation without significant proteinuria. Mostly, this is used until a more specific diagnosis can be assigned. Gestational hypertension may represent preeclampsia prior to proteinuria or chronic hypertension previously unrecognized.

b) Preeclampsia

Preeclampsia is part of PIH which is defined as a BP≥ 140/90mmHg in the presence of significant proteinuria of ≥ 300 mg/ 24 hours urine specimen or, less accurately, more than 1+ protein (equivalent to approximately 100mg/dl) on dipstick in at least two randomly collected urine specimen at least 6 hours apart after the 20th week of gestation. Preeclampsia may be categorized as mild or severe, primarily on the basis of degree of hypertension or proteinuria and involvement of other organ systems.

1. Mild pre-eclampsia

The mild form of preeclampsia is diagnosed when the Systolic and diastolic blood pressure is between 140-160 and 90-110mmHg respectively without signs of severity.

2. Severe preeclampsia

In the presence of any one of the following clinical manifestations, severe preeclampsia can be diagnosed:

- Diastolic BP ≥ 110 mmHg and the systolic ≥160mmHg measured twice at least six hours apart or a single measurement of ≥120mmHg
- Proteinuria ≥ 5gm/24 hours or ≥3+ in randomly collected urine
- Hyperbilirubinemia, Hemolytic anemia, Thrombocytopenia(<100,000/µl), Elevated Liver Enzymes(HELLP syndrome)
- Disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC)
- Headache, visual disturbance and right upper abdominal pain
- Oliguria (<400ml in 24hours or 30ml/hour)
- Intrauterine growth restriction (IUGR)
- Cardiac decompensation, Pulmonary edema, cyanosis

- Exaggerated Deep Tendon Reflexes(DTR)

c) Eclampsia

Eclampsia is the occurrence of convulsions in woman who meets the diagnostic criteria for preeclampsia. There could also be atypical eclampsia. Any convulsion occurring during pregnancy is eclampsia unless proven otherwise.

II. Chronic hypertension

This is a hypertension existing before pregnancy or diagnosed before the 20^{th} week of gestation, except in GTD and multiple pregnancy, or persists indefinitely after delivery. Women with mild hypertension may have normal BP during the mid-trimester and many of these women show greater decrease in their BP during pregnancy than normotensive women. However, in some pregnant women the BP may become severe and develop superimposed preeclampsia, which is defined as an exacerbation of the BP, i.e, an increment of the systolic BP by 30 mmHg and diastolic BP by 15mmHg over the baseline with development significant proteinuria.

Prevention:

Women with the following risk factors for preeclampsia can benefit from taking low dose aspirin, 75mg, oral, daily starting from 16weeks of gestation on wards:

- Preeclamsia in the previous pregnancy
- Family history of preeclampsia (in mother or sister)
- Multiple pregnancy
- Chronic hypertension
- Renal disease
- Diabetes mellitus
- Anti-phospholipids syndromes or Systemic lupus erythematosis(SLE)
- Raised BMI

Treatment

A. Mild pre-eclampsia

Most patients are asymptomatic and can be managed conservatively. Such patients are not candidates for urgent delivery.

Objectives

- Control BP by administering potent anti-hypertensive drugs, to keep the diastolic BP below 100mmHg.
- Prolong pregnancy as much as possible
- Prevent convulsion
- Monitor maternal and fetal condition frequently for worsening of disease condition and plan treatment accordingly.
- Assure delivery of the fetus and placenta to be on the appropriate time, which is the definitive treatment for PIH.

Non pharmacologic

- Bed rest at home in the lateral decubitus position. They rarely require admission unless they develop any sign and symptom of severe pre-eclampsia.
- Frequent evaluation of fetal well being by fetal movement recording, biophysical profile
- Maternal well being: BP measurement four times per day, assessment Hematocrit, proteinuria, visual disturbances, epigastric pain etc
- Advise patient to immediately report whenever they develop symptoms of severity such as headache, epigastric pain, blurring of vision etc
- Plan termination of pregnancy at term. Most authorities recommend pregnancy to be terminated between 37-38weeks of gestation.
- If the disease progresses to severe range, manage as severe case.

Pharmacologic

Anti-convulsant such as Magnesuim sulphate, as well as anti-hypertensive medications are rarely required for patients on conservative management. However, if the Systolic BP is >150mmHg or the diastolic BP is above 100mmHg, give,

First line:

Methyldopa, 250-500mg p.o. 8 to 12 hourly

ADRs: water and salt retention, and drowsiness, drug fever, hepatitis.

C/I: Active hepatic disease

Dosage forms*:* Tablet, 250 mg, and 500 mg

Alternative:

Nifidipine, 10-40mg PO 12hourly

OR

Nifidipine, slow release 30-60mg p.o. daily

(For ADRs, C/Is and dosage forms see page 385)

N.B Advise patient to immediately report whenever they develop symptoms of severity such as headache, epigastric pain, blurring of vision, etc.

B. Severe pre-eclampsia

Delivery is the appropriate treatment for severe pre-eclampsia; otherwise it may pose significant risks to the mother and fetus. If severe preeclampsia is diagnosed at a health it is advisable to refer the patient to a nearby health hospital urgently.

C. Treatment of eclampsia*:*

Eclampsia is one of the catastrophic emergencies that may occur in a pregnant woman; hence if this complication occurs in a health center, after arresting the convulsion, the patient should be referred urgently to a nearby hospital.

2. Hyperemesis Gravidarum

Nausea and vomiting are common complaints in the first trimester of pregnancy affecting about 50% of pregnant mothers, and is considered by many as diagnosis of pregnancy. The symptoms are severe in multiple gestations and gestational trophoblastic neoplasm. Protracted vomiting associated with dehydration, starvation, weight loss, electrolyte disturbances, acidosis and ketonuria is known as **hyperemesis gravidarum.** The cause is not exactly known. If not treated appropriately, protracted vomiting may cause Mallory-Weiss oesophageal tear, neurogical dysfunction specifically Wernicke's encephalopathy due to vitamin B_1 deficiency, Korsakoff's psychosis and central pontine myelinolysis, retinal hemorrhage and Mendelson's syndrome.

Clinical features

- Excessive vomiting, loss of appetite, sign of dehydration, low BP, increase pulse rate, weight loss,
- In severe cases acidotic pattern of breathing (deep and shallow) may ensue.

- In addition the clinician should look for other medical and surgical causes like peptic ulcer disease, hyperthyroidism, food poisoning, Diabetes, appendicitis, etc.

Investigations

- Urinalysis for infection and Ketonuria
- Screen the patient for other medical cause

Treatment

Objectives

- Adequate fluid, electrolyte and calorie replacement
- Arrest the vomiting with potent anti-emetics
- Manage hypovolemic shock if present
- Identify obstetrics conditions that are associated with hyperemesis garvidarum
- Rule out other medical or surgical causes, e.g., UTI, malaria, appendicitis etc

Non pharmacologic

- For uncomplicated nausea and vomiting of pregnancy, give reassurance.
- Advice on small, dry, high calorie frequent feeding
- Avoid fatty and spicy foods
- Emotional support
- Remove a stressful home environment
- Withdraw oral nutrition and fluid for 24-48hours

Pharmacologic

Majority of Hyperemesis gravidarum cases requires admission for in-patient care**.** Few mild cases can be treated as outpatient.

- Re-hydrate with N/S, Ringers lactate, D/W, D/S eight hourly
- Calorie replacement: Add 40% Glucose 2 vials (40 ml) in each bag.
- Add Vit. B complex 2 ampoules in each bag

Control of vomiting:

First line

Chlorpromazine, 12.5 - 25 mg I.M. BID until vomiting is controlled and then P.O.

ADRs: Bone marrow suppression, drowsiness, apathy, alteration in liver function, cutaneous reactions, occasionally tardive dyskinesia.

C/Is: Bone marrow depression, coma caused by CNS depressants.

Dosage forms*:* Tablet, 25mg, 50mg, 100mg; drop, 25mg/ml in 10ml bottle, 40mg/ml in 10ml and 30ml bottles; syrup, 25mg/5ml; injection, 25mg/ml in 1ml and 2ml ampoules, 50mg/ml in 2ml ampoule.

Alternatives

Promethazine, 25-50 mg IM/IV BID, followed by 25 mg P.O BID. Maximum daily dose, 100mg

ADRs: Drowsiness, headache, blurring of vision, GI disturbance

P/Cs: Close monitoring of the patient is required during the first few days of therapy.

Dosage forms: Elixir, 5mg/5ml; injection, 25mg/ml 1ml and 2 ml ampoules; Suppository, 25mg, 50mg; tablet, 10mg, 25mg, Tablet, 10 mg, 25 mg

OR

Metoclopromide, 5-10 mg IV/IM BID or TID.

ADRs: Drowsiness, fatigue, dizziness, weakness

C/Is: Epilepsy, pheochromocytoma, and mechanical bowel obstruction, concomitant administration of atropine like drugs.

S/P: Concomitant administration of phenothiazines.

Dosage forms: Tablet, 10mg; syrup, 5mg/5ml; injection, 5mg/ml in 2ml ampoule; drop, 0.2mg/drop**.**

OR

Pyridoxine hydrochloride, oral, 25mg/day, 8hourly

ADRs: Rare

Dosage forms: Injection, 50mg/ml in 2ml ampoule. 150mg/ml; Tablet, 5mg, 10mg, 100mg, 300mg

Refer: In severe and refractory cases and who developed the complications should be referred to nearby hospital.

3. Pain during Labour and Delivery

When giving analgesics and anesthetics to pregnant mothers, the safety of the mother and fetus should be a constant concern of the health care provider. Virtually all analgesics and anesthetics administered during pregnancy cross the placental barrier though to different extent; thus, a balance must be sought between pain relief for the mother and safety of the fetus.

Treatment

Objectives

- Alleviate pain without affecting maternal and fetal condition

Non pharmacologic

- Attention focusing and distraction
- Maternal movement and change of position: When the mother moves she alters the relationships between gravity, uterine contractions, the fetus and her pelvis.
- Counter pressure: Steady and strong force applied to a spot on the lower back during contraction or pressure on the side of each hip.
- Hot compresses applied to the lower abdomen

Pharmacologic

I. Analgesics

A) Opioids

First line

Pethidine, 50-100mg IV or IM QID to TID.

ADRs: Maternal: orthostatic hypotension, nausea, vomiting, dizziness, and delayed stomach emptying, respiratory depression.

Fetal: respiratory depression, low apgar score. Its half life in the newborn is approximately 13hours.

Dosage forms: Tablet, 50mg; injection, 50mg/ml in 1 and 2 ml ampoule

II. Local Anaesthetics

Lidocaine (Xylocaine), 1-2% concentration IM, 5-10ml to prineal area when doing episiotomy or perineal tear repair

ADRs: fetal bradycardia, inadvertent IV administration of the local anaesthetics lead to cardiac arrest, hypotension, high spinal block with respiratory paralysis, headache, fetal bradycardia.

Dosage forms: Injection, 0.5%, 1%, 2%, 5%

4. Post-Partum Haemorrhage (PPH)

Prevention and Management

Post-partum haemorrhage refers to bleeding of more than 500 ml from the genital tract during normal vaginal delivery and 1000ml during ceasarean section within the first 24hours of delivery or any amount of blood loss that result in haemodynamic compromise of the patient which is referred as primary. It usually occurs during or immediately after the third stage of labour. Secondary post-partum haemorrhage is defined as excessive vaginal bleeding occurring from twenty-four hours to six weeks after delivery. Postpartum haemorrhage becomes life threatening if the mother is already anaemic.

Causes

- Retained product of conceptus in the uterine cavity
- Uterine atony
- Prolonged labour
- Infection within the uterine cavity (endo-myometritis)
- Genital tract trauma
- Clotting disorders

Risk factors for PPH:

- Suspected or proven abruptio placentae
- Known placenta previa
- Multiple pregnancy
- Pre-eclampsia/ Gestational hypertension
- Previous history of PPH
- Anemia
- Big baby

Clinical features

- Excessive or prolonged vaginal bleeding
- Lower abdominal pain, supra-pubic tenderness
- Bleeding from the genital tract
- Conjunctival pallor
- Rapid pulse rate

- BP may be low or normal

Investigations

- CBC

Prevention

Every woman is considered at a potential risk for PPH, hence active management of the third stage of labour must be applied, i.e., from the time of delivery of the fetus until the delivery of the placenta. Active management of third stage of labour is a series of procedures applied during the third stage to speed up the delivery of the placenta, increase uterine contractions to prevent PPH by averting uterine atony. It has the following components:

1. To give oxytocin within one minute after the birth of the baby without waiting for sign of placental separation.

   OR

   Ergometrine, IM, 0.2mg, provided the BP of the woman is not hypertensive range
2. Clamping and cutting the cord as soon as the baby is delivered
3. Apply Controlled Cord Traction (CCT) when the uterus becomes globular and firm and the cord lengthens
4. Continuous uterine massage, repeated every 15minutes for 2hours

Despite these measures if bleeding continues, management of PPH should be started immediately.

Treatment

1. Primary PPH

Objectives

- Identify the causes
- Arrest bleeding as quickly as possible
- Resuscitate patient

Non pharmacologic

The following management options should be applied step by step:

- Continuous rubbing of the uterus
- Ensure the urinary bladder is empty
- Call for help

- If the placenta cannot be expelled in this fashion within 30minutes, do manual removal, preferably under anaesthesia.
- If bleeding continues or is heavy which lead to derangement of the vital sign; start transfusion of blood, a minimum of 2 units.
- If the placenta has been delivered and is incomplete, explore the uterus under general anesthesia
- If the placenta is complete and the uterus is well contracted: Examine the patient with adequate analgesia and/or anaesthesia, any lacerations in the cervix or vagina, if there is it must be sutured using through-and-through sutures. If the tear extends into the uterine body, it would be difficult to suture it from below and she may require laparotomy and must be referred urgently
- Avoid dextrans; they interfere with blood grouping and cross matching as well as with coagulation of blood
- If bleeding continues despite uterine rubbing, employ interventions such as manual compression of the uterus and compression of the abdominal aorta, use condom tamponade or uterine packing

Refer: If bleeding continues despite the above mentioned measures the woman should be referred to nearby hospital scourted by health professional

Pharmacologic

First line

Oxytocin, IM, 10-20 units stat.

Alternative

Misoprostol, oral/sublingual, or rectal 600-800 micrograms

Subsequently, maintain uterine contractions by massaging the fundus and infusing **Oxytocin**, IV, 10 units in 500 ml 5% Glucose in sodium chloride 0.9%.

Anaesthesia for manual removal of placenta **(Pethidine** IV, 100mg and **Diazepam** IV, 10mg.

Set up IV infusion of Sodium Chloride 0.9% to run in fast: First 1000 ml rapidly in 15-20 minutes. Give at least 2000 ml in first hour. Aim to replace 2-3x the volume of estimated blood loss.

If condition stabilizes then adjust rate to 1000 ml / 6 hourly

OR

Oxytocin infusion, 20 -40mg in 1L of Normal Saline

OR

Ergometrine, 0.25mg 8 PO 8hourly for 3 days

2. Secondary PPH

Objectives

- Identify the cause and treat appropriately
- Prevent overwhelming infection

Non parmacologic

- Resuscitate the patient
- Explore the uterus for retained product of conceptus

Pharmacologic

Use of the uterotonic agents is similar as to primary PPH

Antibiotics

Ampicillin, IV, 1gm, 6hourly

(For **ADRs, C/Is** and **Dosage forms*:*** see page 382)

PLUS

Gentamicin, IV/IM, 80mg, 8hourly

(For **ADRs, C/Is** and **Dosage forms*:*** see page 383)

PLUS

Metronidazole, IV, 500mg, 8hourly

(For **ADRs, C/Is** and **Dosage forms*:*** see page 82)

When the clinical condition of the patient improves the IV antibiotics can be change to PO.

(For **ADRs, C/Is** and **dosage forms** for amoxicillin-claulonic acid, gentamicin, metronidazole see page 383, 82)

5. Premature Rupture of Membranes (PROM)

Premature rupture of membrane is rupture of the fetal membranes after the 28th week of gestation and before onset of labor. It includes preterm PROM (before the gestational age of 37 weeks) and term PROM (after the 37th week of gestation). The exact cause of PROM is not known. The incidence of PROM in preterm and term pregnancies is approximately 8% and 2%, respectively. The amniotic fluid surrounding the fetus is important for the development of fetal lung and limb, heat exchange, and protection of the umbilical cord and infant from compression. In addition, the amniotic fluid has bacteriostatic chemicals. Whenever the membranes rupture, there will be leakage of fluid; hence these protective mechanisms may be compromised. In addition, if a rent is created a portal of entry will be established for bacteria to access the amniotic fluid from the vagina. Rupture of membranes often leads to onset of labor. Thirty-five percent of preterm neonates result from preterm PROM.

Causes

- preterm labour, trauma

Clinical features

- Gush of fluid per-vaginum
- Sterile speculum examination reveals leakage of clear or greenish fluid through the cervical opening.
- If immediate delivery is not planned, vaginal digital examination is not advisable for fear of introducing infection.

Investigations

- Microscopic examination of the fluid reveals; Fetal products(squamous cells, fat, lanugo hair) and Ferning test (Arborization)

Classes

a) **Pre-term PROM:** Rupture of membrane before 37th week of gestation
b) **Term PROM:** Rupture of membrane after 37th week of gestation
c) **Prolonged PROM:** Rupture of membranes for more than 12 hours

Treatment

Treatment depends on the gestational age, presence of infection, condition of the fetus and spontaneous healing of the membrane.

Objectives

- Prevent or early detect for sign of chorioamnionitis by clinical means (uterine tenderness, malodorous amniotic fluid, fever, maternal and fetal tachycardia) and laboratory(increase WBC)
- Prolong pregnancy until fetal maturity is assured, i.e., until 34weeks and above.

A. Pre-term PROM

I. Preterm PROM without chorioamnionitis

Non Pharmacologic

- Admit
- Bed rest and IV hydration
- Avoid vaginal examination,
- Avoid coitus
- Closely follow for any indicator of intra-amniotic infection.

Pharmacologic

First line

Ampicillin, 2 gm IV QID for 48 hours followed by 500 mg P.O. QID or 7days.

ADRs: hypersensitivity reactions

C/Is: Known hypersensitivity reactions to penicillins or cephalosporins

Dosage forms*:* drop, 100 mg/ml; capsule, 250 mg, 500 mg; injection, 250mg, 500mg, 1mg in vial; oral suspension, 125 mg/5ml, 250 mg/5ml.

Alternative

Erythromycin, 500 mg IV QID for 48 hours followed by Erythromycin 500 mg P.O. QID for 7-10 days.

ADRs: nausea, vomiting, abdominal discomfort, diarrhea (antibiotic–associated colitis), rash and other allergic reactions, cholestatic jaundice)

C/Is: Liver disease.

Dosage forms*:* Capsule, 250 mg; tablet (stearate), 250 mg, 500 mg; oral suspension, 125 mg/5 ml, 200 mg /5ml, 250 mg /5ml; Injection, 50 mg/5ml in 2 ml ampoule.

II. Pre-term/Term PROM with chorioamnionitis

- Admit to the labor ward and facilitate delivery as feasible
- Use ampicillin, metronidazole or gentamicin and terminate pregnancy.

First line

Ampicillin, 2 gm IV QID for 48 hours followed by 500 mg P.O. QID or 7days.

ADRs: Hypersensitivity reactions

C/Is: Known hypersensitivity reactions to penicillins or cephalosporins

Dosage forms*:* Drop, 100 mg/ml; capsule, 250 mg, 500 mg; injection, 250mg, 500mg, 1mg in vial; oral suspension, 125 mg/ml, 250 mg/ml.

Alternatives

OR

Gentamicin, 80mg intravenously TID

ADRs: Ototoxicity, nephrotoxicity

C/Is: Myastenia gravis

Dosage forms*:* Injection, 40mg/ml, 80mg/ 2ml

B. Term PROM with no evidence of chorioamnionitis

- Refer patient for termination of pregnancy.

C. Prolonged PROM

Ampicillin, 2 gm I.V. QID during labor until she delivers, then 500 mg QID for 7 days.

ADRs: Hypersensitivity reactions

C/Is: If there is known history of hypersensitivity reactions to penicillins or cephalosporins

Dosage forms*:* Drop, 100 mg/ml; capsule, 250 mg, 500 mg; injection, 250mg, 500mg, 1mg in vial; oral suspension, 125 mg/ml, 250 mg/ml.

6. Preterm Labour

Preterm labor can be defined as regular uterine contractions that cause progressive dilatation of the cervix after 28th weeks of gestation and before 37 completed weeks. Approximately 8-10% of all pre pregnancies end in preterm labour. Prematurity is one of the major causes of perinatal mortality and morbidity.

Causes:

The etiology of preterm labor is multi-factorial that includes;

- Multiple gestation
- Infection like UTI, febrile illness, abdominal surgery,
- Uterine anomalies, APH(placenta previa and abruptio placentae)
- PROM
- Low socio economic status.

Clinical features

- Pushing down sensation in the mother and if the clinician detects regular rhythmic uterine contraction of four in 20minutes or eight in 60minutes that leads to progressive cervical dilatation and effacement.
- Cervical dilatation greater than 1cm
- Cervical effacement of 80percent or greater

Investigations

- CBC
- FBS

Treatment

When the diagnosis of preterm labour is made, the medical team should attempt to determine the cause and whether further continuation of the pregnancy will be beneficial or harmful to the mother and fetus. The choice of treatment depends on the answer to these questions and maturity of the fetus. Once fetal maturity is assured there is no benefit by conservative management and pregnancy should be terminated through the safest route. But if the fetus is premature, conservative management should be attempted.

Objectives

- Prevent or early detect intrauterine infection
- Prolong pregnancy until fetal maturity is achieved
- Promote fetal lung maturity by administering corticosteroids
- Treat any underlying cause e.g. UTI, malaria, pyelonephritis etc

Non pharmacologic

- Bed rest
- Oral hydration, especially with nutritive calories, such as fruits juices, milk etc.
- Avoid frequent vaginal examination

Pharmacologic

Use of a tocolytic drugs is not associated with a clear reduction in perinatal or neonatal mortality or morbidity. The main effect of tocolytic drugs when used for women in preterm labour is to reduce the numbers who deliver within 48 hours or within 7 days after the drug administration. Data on long-term outcome are sparse. It remains plausible that, for selected women, such as those who require transfer for neonatal care or time to complete a course of corticosteroids, there may be benefit associated with tocolysis. However, this benefit has not been formally evaluated in randomized trials.

NB: There is no benefit from maintenance tocolytic therapy.

Nifidipine, initial 20mg orally, followed by 10-20mg three to four times daily, adjusted according to uterine activity for up to 48hours, a total dose of 60mg/day appears to associated with 3-4 fold in adverse events such as headache and hypotension.

ADRs: Flushing, oedema of ankle, headache, gingival hypertrophy

C/Is: Unstable angina, hypotension

D/Is: Cimetidine may enhance its anti-hypertensive effect

Dosage forms*:* Tablet, 10 mg, 20 mg; capsule, 5 mg, 10 mg, 20 mg

PLUS

Steroid therapy for stimulation of surfactant production to be given 28-34weeks of gestation (For dosage regimens, ADRs, C/Is and dosage forms, see specific steroids)

First line

Bethamethasone, two doses of 12mg IV 24hours apart. At 48 hours following the first dose, the full effect on maturing the surfactant has been obtained. If patient does not

deliver within one week, the treatment should be repeated if the fetus is less than 34weeks of gestation.

ADRs: Hyperglycemia, psychiatric reactions, gastrointestinal disturbance, infections, osteoporosis, central obesity, hirstusim

C/Is: Herpes simplex infection of the eye, epilepsy, peptic ulcer, psychic instability, thromboembolic disorders,

P/C: In hypertension, diabetis mellitus, liver cirrhosis, epilepsy, osteoporosis

Dosage forms: Tablet, 0.5mg

Alternative

Dexamethasone; 6mg PO/IM for two doses six hours apart for two doses

(**ADRs, C/Is** and **P/C** are same as those of **bethametasone,** see page 385)

Dosage forms: Injection, 4mg/ml, 25mg/ml, 50mg/ml; Tablet, 0.5mg, 0.75mg, 1mg, 2mg

N.B.: Use of corticosteroids in the presence of infection is contraindicated

Sympathomimetics: Ritodrine and salbutamol are associated with significant; potentially life threatening maternal side effects (particularly if given in combination with corticosteroids) which include fluid overload, pulmonary edema, myocardial ischemia, hyper of hypoglycemia, hence, these combinations should be abandoned totally in the management of preterm labour.

Refer: Patient with preterm labour should be treated in a center where there is neonatal Intensive Care Unit (ICU) and should be referred as early as possible.

7. Prolonged Pregnancy and Prolonged Labour

A. Prolonged Pregnancy

The terms "Prolonged, post-date and Post-term pregnancy" which are synonymously used, to define pregnancy that exceeds 42weeks (294 days), from the day last menstrual period. The incidence of post-term pregnancy averages 4-5%. Post-term pregnancy may be complicated by fetal postmaturity, macrosomia, oligohydramnios, meconuim aspiration syndrome and placental insufficiency due to placenta aging. Management of post pregnancy can take two forms; either expectant management with fetal surveillance or elective induction of labour. **Induction of labour** is any attempt to initiate uterine contractions before the spontaneous onset of labour to facilitate the expulsion of conceptus product.

Clinical feature

- Prolonged pregnancy is diagnosed from the last menstrual period or ultrasonography done in early pregnancy.
- Prolonged pregnancy may manifest with fetal macrosomia or IUGR, decrease fetal movement, decrease amniotic fluid.

Investigations

- Fetal movement
- Non-stress test (NST)

Refer: Pregnant mothers diagnosed to carry post-term pregnancy should be referred to nearby hospital for induction of labour.

B. Prolonged Labour

Prolonged labour has been variously defined from one exceeding 24hours to one exceeding 12hours of established labour, when labour is actively managed. The causes of prolonged labour could be due to cephalopelvic disproportion (CPD) or insufficient uterine contraction in terms of frequency, duration and strength. The treatment of prolonged labour depends on the cause. If the prolonged labour is due to inefficient uterine action the treatment is augmentation of labour using oxytocics. **Augumentation** is any attempt to stimulate uterine contractions during the course of to facilitate the expulsion. But cephalopelvic disproportion should be excluded before augumentation.

Clinical features

- The frequency of uterine contraction is less than three in 10 minutes, duration is less than 30seconds and strength is weak.
- This can be assessed clinically by palpating the uterus or using an intrauterine that measures the intrauterine pressure.

Investigations

- Manual counting of contraction

Refer: If there is prolonged labour, the mother should be referred to a hospital irrespective of the cause

II. COMMON MEDICAL DISORDERS IN PREGNANCY

1. Anemia in Pregnancy

Anemia secondary to iron deficiency is the commonest medical disorder in pregnant women, particularly in the developing countries. The other varieties of anemia are rare in this part of the world. Anemia is one of the major indirect causes of maternal death.

Anemia in pregnancy is defined as when the Hemoglobin (Hgb) level is below 11 gm /dl in the first and third trimesters and below 10.5 gm/dl in the second trimester of gestation. The causes of anemia are the same as in non-pregnant period. Iron demand is increased by a factor of 4-5times during pregnancy.

Classes

- Mild anemia: When the hemoglobin level is 8-11gm/dl
- Severe anemia: When the hemoglobin level is < 7gm%

Clinical features

- Nonspecific symptoms like weakness, dizziness, palpitation, shortness of breath.
- Physical examination may reveal significant pallor of the conjunctiva and other parts of the body.

Investigations

- CBC, Hgb/Hematocrit
- Stool examination for hookworm infestation
- Blood film for malaria

Treatment

The treatment depends on the severity of anemia and the underlying medical and obstetric condition of the mother.

Objectives

- Correct the anemia as urgently as possible before the patient goes to labour.
- Identify the cause of anemia like hookworm infestation, malaria etc.

A. Mild to moderate anemia

Non pharmacologic

- Iron rich diet
- Avoid frequent childbirth

- Minimize hemorrhage during pregnancy & childbirth

Pharmacologic

First line

Ferrous sulphate, 300mg P.O TID with food.

PLUS

Folic acid

B. Severe anemia: Requires admission and blood transfusion in the presence of complications.

Refer; If the anemia is severe (Hgb <7gm/dl) refer patient for further investigation and fast correction of the anemia.

2. Cardiac Diseases in Pregnancy

The commonest causes of cardiac disease in pregnancy are secondary to rheumatic heart disease followed by the congenital ones, in the ratio of 10:1 respectively. Due to the increase in cardiac output during pregnancy, patients with underlying cardiac disease can be decompensated easily, particularly near 28 weeks of gestation, during labour and immediate post partum period, hence women with severe heart disease will benefit immensely from preconception counseling. On the other hand, due to these hemodynamic changes, normal pregnant patients may report signs and symptoms that may mimic cardiac disease; hence, differentiation of normal from abnormal makes it difficult.

The severity of heart disease is assessed according to the classification of New York Heart Association (NYHA), which by enlarge depends on the response of the heart to physical activities not the extent of the cardiac lesion.

Class I: Asymptomatic at all degrees of activity: uncompromised

Class II: Symptomatic with ordinary activities: Slightly compromised

Class III: Symptomatic minimal exertion: Markedly compromised

Class IV: Symptomatic at rest; incapacitated.

Causes

- Rheumatic heart disease
- Hypertension
- Cardiomyopathy
- Anaemia
- Congenital heart diseases

- Hyperthyroidism

Clinical features

- Progressive dyspnea or orthopnea, nocturnal cough, hemoptysis, syncope, chest pain, cyanosis, clubbing of fingers, persistent neck distension, systolic murmur grade 3/6 or greater, diastolic murmur, cardiomegaly, persistent arrhythmia etc

Investigations

- CBC
- Urinalysis, stool examination
- Other ante-natal investigations

Treatment

Objectives

- Avoid aggravating factors
- Treat exacerbating factors: thyrotoxicosis, anemia, infection etc
- Prevent or detect cardiac decompensation early

Non pharmacologic

- Early booking and assessment for severity of the disease
- Bed rest and limitation of activities
- Reduce cardiac work load: Restrict fluid intake, reduce tachycardia, correct anemia
- Avoid supine position in late pregnancy
- Apply elastic stocking to the lower leg to prevent pooling of blood
- Assist vaginal delivery by instruments, to shorten the second stage of labour
- Put patient in propped up (semi-fowler's) position.

Pharmacologic

A. Anterpartum

First line

Furosemide, 40mg PO QD of BID.

ADRs: Hyponatraemia, hypokalemia, hypomagnesaemia alkalosis

C/Is: Precomatose states associated with liver cirrhosis, renal failure with anuria

Dosage forms: Tablet, 40mg, 80mg; injection, 10mg/ml in 2ml ampoule

Alternative

Propranolol, 40mg p.o. TID

Digoxin, same dose as that of non-pregnant women

- To control the heart rate in atrial fibrillation
- To suppress some other supra-ventricular tachycardias,
- To increase the force of contraction

Refer: Patients with cardiac disease in pregnancy should be referred to where joint management with cardiologist and obstetrician is available.

3. Diabetes Mellitus Complicating Pregnancy

Diabetes is one of the most common medical problems that complicate pregnancy. Diabetes in pregnancy can be gestational or pre-gestational. Women with pre-gestational diabetes need to have preconception counseling to achieve good glycemic control at the time of conception and organogenesis to avoid congenital abnormality. Women with gestational diabetes mellitus become normoglycemic immediately, but significant of them can become diabetic if followed for long period of time.

Diabetes in pregnancy if not well controlled may cause many obstetric and non-obstetric complications that include; macrosomia, polyhydramnios, congenital anomalies, maternal hyper or hypoglacemia, depending on the gestational age, UTI, hypertension, exacerbation of retinopathy etc.

Types of diabetes in pregnancy:

A. Gestational Diabetes Mellitus
B. Pre-existing type I and II Diabetes mellitus

A. Gestational Diabetes Mellitus (GDM)

It is a carbohydrate intolerance of variable severity with onset or first recognized during pregnancy.

Clinical features

- Usually it is asymptomatic and identifications of the risk factors is important.
- There could be symptoms of polyuria, polydepsia and polyphagia etc

Investigations

Screening; by administering 50gm glucose load and determine the blood glucose level one hour later. If the value is more than 140mg/dl, the woman needs Oral Glucose Tolerance Test (OGTT) using 100gm anhydrous glucose. According to the American Association of Diabetes women with the following risk factors should be screened for GDM between the gestational age of 24-28 weeks**.**

- Family history of DM in the first sibling(mother, father, sister or brother)
- Obese(BMI >27)
- Mothers above the age of 25years
- Race(Being black)

Previously, in addition to the above mentioned risk factors, the following were included as a screening criteria; previous delivery of macrosomic fetus (>4kg), previous pregnancy complicated by GDM, unexplained fetal losses, persistent glucosuria, but if the screening is based on these criteria, 50% of pregnant women prone to be diabetic can be missed.

Upper limit for normal glucose level (mg/dl) in OGTT

Sample	Fasting	1st hour	2nd hour	3rd hour
Whole blood	90	165	145	125
Plasma	105	190	165	145

Additional investigations

- CBC
- Urinalysis
- Vaginal swab for candidiasis
- FBS and 2hours post-prandial every 2-4weeks

Treatment

Objectives

- Maintain good glycemic control, i.e, the fasting plasma glucose level to be < 105 mg/dl and the two hours post-prandial <120 mg/ dl
- Prevent maternal and fetal complications.
- Prevent neonatal morbidity
- Minimize long term complication of diabetes**.**

Non pharmacologic

1. **Diet**: Most women with GDM can be managed with diet alone.
   - Three meals and 3-4snacks /day
   - Diet with 40-50% carbohydrate, 20% protein and 30-40% fat content.
   - 10% of calorie at breakfast, 30% at lunch and dinner and 30 % at snack.
   - Heavy meals must be avoided
2. **Exercise**
   - Walking or exercise using the upper part of the body is recommended
   - Mild to moderate exercise, preferably non-weight bearing, at least 3times/ week is recommended
   - Avoid exercise in the supine position after the first trimester
   - Exercise is contraindicated in the presence of the following conditions:
     - Pregnancy induced hypertension
     - Rupture of memberane
     - Preterm labour
     - Cervical incompetence
     - Vaginal bleeding
     - Intrauterine growth restriction(IUGR)

Pharmacologic

Insulin, 0.5units/kg in the first half of pregnancy and increase the dosage to 0.7units/kg in the second half is the recommended regimen. This is the average dosage otherwise the dose requirement may vary from individual to individual. By splitting injection as $2/3^{rd}$ in the morning (as $2/3^{rd}$ long-acting and $1/3^{rd}$ short-acting) and $1/3^{rd}$ in the evening (as ½ long-acting and ½ short-acting) good blood glucose control could be achieved. Combination of $1/3^{rd}$ short and $2/3^{rd}$ intermediate acting insulin is used to maintain the FBS to 60-90 mg/dl 1-hour post-prandial values at<120 mg/dl.

ADRs: Hypoglycemia , lipohypertrophy

C/Is: Hypoglycemia

Dosage forms: Injection, insulin zinc suspension /insulin lente (HPB), 40 unit/ml, 100 unit/ml in 10 ml vial

N.B. Oral hypoglycemic agents are contraindicated during pregnancy; they cross the placenta and can cause prolonged neonatal hypoglycemia. In addition, there is an increase rate of congenital anomalies associated with these drugs.

Follow up:

- Fasting blood glucose and 1hour postprandial every 2-3weeks

There is no place for urine glucose determination in the management of Diabetes in pregnancy except for screening.

B. Type I and II Diabetes Mellitus

Many serious problems can ensue in women with type I and II diabetes during pregnancy. These complications are dependent on the presence of vascular problems which in turn are dependent on the duration of the diabetes. Based on this concept the White's classification (classes A-F) is used to predict outcome, though, the predictive value of this classification is less precise in modern management. All women with type II on oral hypoglycemic agents in the pre-pregnancy period must be shifted to insulin. If hypertension combines with diabetes it is an ominous sign. Therefore, the BP should be closely monitored.

Clinical features

- The same as those for GDM

Treatment

Objectives

- Same as those of GDM

Non pharmacologic

- Same as that of GDM

Pharmacologic

The pharmacologic treatment is the same as that of gestational diabetes mellitus. However, insulin requirement should be adjusted according to gestational age. Maternal hypoglycemia may occur in the first half of the pregnancy. Hence, the insulin should be slightly decreased from the pre-pregnancy dosage. Whereas on the second half of pregnancy the insulin resistance increases, typically between the gestational age of 20-30weeks, hence, the dosage of insulin should be adjusted accordingly. Sometimes, a decrease need to insulin may arise towards late pregnancy

which implies that the placenta is failing to function which implies the insulin resistance is disappearing. This is an ominous sign.

Refer: Preferably, all pregnant mothers should be managed in health institutions where there is an internist, obstetrician and pediatrician.

4. HIV/AIDS in Pregnancy

In the last 20-25 years HIV/AIDS has become an indirect major cause of maternal mortality. The majority of HIV positive women (77%) lives in Sub-Saharan Africa, and constitutes 57% of the global adult HIV positive population. According to the EDHS 2011, the national adult HIV prevalence was 1.5% with women disproportionately infected (1.9% compared to 1.0% in men). Prevalence was also markedly higher in urban areas (4.2 %) compared to rural (0.6 %). The urban/ rural prevalence for women was 5.2% and 0.8% respectively. The National estimate for HIV positive pregnant women was 38,404 for the year 2012 (*HIV estimates, EHNRI/FMOH, 2012*). The HIV prevalence in pregnant women is 7.7% and about 7,792 children are born with HIV every year. This is as a result of mother to child transmission (MTCT) during pregnancy (5-10%) and labour and delivery (10-15%). Quite significant number could be infected through breast feeding (5-20%).

Pregnancy by itself does not affect the course of the disease, but HIV may increase the risk of premature deliveries, small for date uterus and the rate of still birth. Factors that influence MTCT include: maternal viral load, nutritional status of the mother, presence of concomitant parasitic infection like malaria, severe immunodeficiency, advanced HIV/AIDS stage, presence of PROM and injury to the fetus and birth canal during labour and delivery. To reduce the rate of MTCT of HIV/AIDS, the Ethiopian government has adopted the four pronged approaches in its PMTCT strategies, namely: primary prevention, prevention of unintended pregnancy, prevention of HIV transmission from infected women to their infants, and treatment, care & support of HIV infected women, their infants and their families.

Clinical features: Symptoms suggestive of opportunistic infections/malignancies or direct effects of HIV. History of sero-postivity, history of HAART and other HIV/AIDS related illnesses, duration of illness, status of partner, WHO staging, any medication given for HIV-related illnesses since the beginning of pregnancy.

Investigations:

- Serologic test for HIV after counseling. If she is HIV positive CD4 count, viral load, baseline tests such as CBC, RFT, LFT tests.
- Test for syphilis (VDRL), Hgb,
- Test for opportunistic infections like TB

Prevention:

HIV positive women who intend to get pregnant: The following general health measures should be taken:

- Adequate nutrition that includes: high calories and food staff rich in iron, micronutrient supplementation such as iron, zinc and folic acid at least for three months prior to getting pregnant.
- Prevention of malaria infection.
- Prevention and treatment of STIs.
- Prophylaxis and treatment of opportunistic infections.
- Avoid pregnancy for at least six months following recovery from TB and other opportunistic infections.
- Administer ART, if not already on treatment

During antenatal care (ANC): Advocate the benefits of VCT and persuade every pregnant woman to be tested. If the pregnant woman turns out to be positive apply the primary preventive measures that include; early and appropriate treatment of STI, education about safer sex practice during pregnancy and lactatio**n.**

Intrapartum care: Labour and delivery: These include, avoiding invasive procedures, application of infection prevention and performing elective C/S on selected patients.

Post partum care: Avoiding breast feeding or exclusive breast feeding.

PMTCT clinical scenarios and ARV regimens:

In August 2012, the Government of Ethiopia (GoE) endorsed the strategic shift to PMTCT Option B + which addresses the four prongs for PMTCT and consists of provision of a single triple drug ART regimen to HIV positive pregnant women without regard to CD_4 count and maintains continuity of care and treatment for the mother and infant within the MNCH platform from antenatal detection to post-breast feeding testing of the infant. Option B+ is a strategy that is expected to not only reduce transmission of HIV from mother to child but also improve the health of pregnant women and reduce sexual transmission in sero-discordant couples and partners.

Key features of Option B+ include:

- ANC health care provider initiates antiretroviral therapy (ART) for HIV + pregnant women at ANC at the time of diagnosis regardless of CD4 level. Labour and delivery health care provider starts ART for new HIV positive pregnant women and refers her to ANC clinic for follow-up;
- Once HIV positive pregnant woman is started on ART, treatment is intended to be continued for life;
- A single triple drug regimen is used for all newly diagnosed HIV + pregnant women and lactating mothers;
- The ANC health care provider continues to provide primary care to mother and infant, including prescribing and monitoring of ART, until risk of MTCT has passed. Exception to this practice is, if infant is diagnosed as HIV positive, which should trigger immediate referral and transfer of care to the nearest ART site; or if mother or infant becomes ill, which necessitate either referral to or transfer of care to nearest ART site;
- Dry Blood Spot (DBS) testing is done by ANC health care provider or designated trained personnel in the MNCH unit;
- Maintaining continuity of care from antenatal period to post-weaning should improve infant testing at 6 weeks and at cessation of breast feeding as well as improve post-partum uptake of Family Planning (FP) services;

- Provision of ART at ANC clinic and the fact that ART is provided in the form of just one or two pills (depending on TDF/3TC/EFV formulation availability) taken once daily is expected to improve adherence and retention.

Rationale for using TDF/3TC in HIV positive pregnant women

- NVP containing regimen will cause severe toxicity in patients with high CD4 count.
- TDF is more suitable for HIV+ pregnant women than AZT because it does not cause anemia which is a particular risk in pregnancy
- TDF is more suitable over d4T for HIV+ women because long term side effects are less likely
- TDF/3TC can as well treat Hepatitis B virus co- infection

Use of Efavirenz in HIV positive pregnant women

- Efavirenz has been suspected to cause birth defects; however recent findings indicate the safety of Efavirenz
- Efavirenz can be used at any time during pregnancy
- There is no need to stop or switch Efavirenz containing regimen for woman who gets pregnant while on such treatment

Scenario 1. Women who become pregnant while on ARV treatment:

- HIV positive women already on ART, if they get pregnant should stay on the same regimen. The treating health provider at the HIV Chronic Care unit can decide on continuing the treatment at the MCH clinic.

Scenario 2: Women presenting during pregnancy

- TDF+ 3TC + EFV; (Triple ARV started as soon as diagnosed and continued for life) TDF and 3TC are the preferred first line NRTIs and EFV (NNRTI) is the preferred regimen for all HIV positive pregnant women.

- Infants born to HIV positive mothers will be on daily Nevirapine for six weeks starting at birth
- HIV positive status is the only requirement for starting ART for a pregnant or lactating woman
- No need to wait for CD4 count to initiate treatment
- CD4 count is important to monitor response to treatment and to detect emergence of treatment failure (not expected for several years if patient is adherent to treatment)
- Once started, it is hoped that the woman will be taking ART for her entire life. Thus, make sure that client understands the importance of adherence.
- HIV infected pregnant and lactating woman need to be supported for adherence.
- HIV infected pregnant/lactating women may have multiple problems that may need other supplementary drugs in addition to ARVs.
- Understanding drug-drug interactions between drugs that may be prescribed to the HIV-infected pregnant woman are necessary to ensure the clients' safety and to obtain the maximum benefit from the medicines administered.

Infants born from HIV positive women who started treatment with Option B+ will be monitored and continue their follow up at MNCH clinic until the infant is free from risk of HIV; that is six week after breast feeding stopped; approximately until the age of 18-24 months

Regimens:

I. Maternal

1. During pregnancy
    a. TDF/3TC/EFV if for the first time
    b. Continue HAART if already initiated
2. During labor and Delivery:
    a. If on HAART continue HAART
    b. For women presenting for the first time start TDF/3TC/EFV
    c. All Women who are on combined (option A) will be transitioned to TDF/3TC/EFV

3. Lactating or post-partum.

a. Continue ART if started
b. Initiate ART if on no treatment
a. Those who took combined ARV prophylaxis (option A) during ANC or labor should also be transitioned to option B+

II. Infant:

NVP for six weeks post-partum

Continuing ARVs and follow up schedule for PMTCT client

ANC

- Once the woman is identified HIV positive at ANC clinic, she needs more than the four focused visits of ANC.
- The first appointment is scheduled after 2 weeks of the initiation of TDF/3TC/EFV to detect drug side effects, assess adherence and find out if the mother has any other problems
- The subsequent follow up would be continued on monthly basis for the first six months (plus a six day and 6 week post-partum visit), then every two months until the mother is transferred to ART clinic /referred to the nearest ART facility.
- HIV positive pregnant women already on ART regimen other than TDF/3TC/EFV will have her ANC follow up service at the ANC/PMTCT clinic and attend her HIV treatment follow-up at her usual place. (However, the health provider at the ART Clinic can decide on treatment option that is in the best interest of the client)

L&D

- Appointment should be arranged for the mother and the baby in the same facility
- The mother and the baby are provided health care in the ANC/PMTCT clinic and followed-up until the HIV status of the infant is confirmed;
- The first appointment is scheduled within one week matching with the 2nd post-natal care follow-up to assess for adherence, detect drug side effects and find out if the mother-baby

have any other problems. Routine second appointment can be scheduled at 6 weeks matching with the third postnatal care for both the infant and the mother. Through this period MSG should be in contact with mother.

- The subsequent follow up will be scheduled on monthly basis

Refer: Pregnant women with HIV/AIDs related complications should be referred to a specialist for better management and care.

5. Malaria in Pregnancy

Malaria is a public health problem worldwide. More than 23million pregnant women live in malaria endemic area and few of them have access to medical care, particularly in Sub-Saharan Africa. As a result malaria is becoming one of the major indirect causes of maternal death along with HIV/AIDS. Pregnant women, particularly in the second and third trimesters are more likely to develop severe malaria than other adults, often complicated by pulmonary edema and hypoglycemia. Maternal mortality is 50% higher than in the non-pregnant period. The commonest complications are; maternal anemia, spontaneous abortion, still birth, premature labours, and low birth weight.

Causative agents

P. falciparum, P. vivax, P. ovale and P. malariae

Clinical features

Fever, chillness, rigor, anemia, headache, joint pain etc

- **Uncomplicated malaria:**
    - Fewer than 2% parasitized RBC in woman with no sign of severity and no complicated features.
- **Severe/complicated malaria:** If the following conditions are present on the patient severe malaria can be diagnosed:
    - **Clinical:** prostration, impaired consciousness, respiratory distress, pulmonary edema, circulatory collapse, DIC, jaundice, hemoglobinuria

- **Laboratory:** Severe anemia(Hgb <8), thrombocytopenia, hypoglycemia, acidosis, renal impairment, hyperlactataemia (correlates with mortality), hyperparasitemia (more than 2% parasitized RBC), algid malaria-gram negative septicemia

Investigations

- Blood film (thin and thick), Rapid Diagnostic tests **(**not reliable in pregnancy)
- CBC
- RBS/FBS

Treatment

Objectives

- Correct the fluid and electrolyte imbalance, hypoglycemia, fever
- Identify the causative species and treat appropriately
- Treat the malaria aggressively to prevent obstetric complications
- Treat secondary bacterial infections
- Provide supportive care

Non pharmacologic

- Keep NPO
- Lower the temperature by administering tepid sponging, fanning
- Correct anemia: Transfuse packed RBC
- DIC: Fresh frozen plasma

Pharmacologic

A. **Severe or complicated:**

***P. falciparum* and *P. vivax*:**

First line

Artesunate, IV, 2.4 mg/kg at 0, 12 and 24 hours, then daily thereafter. When the patient is well enough to take oral medication she can be switched to oral artesunate 2 mg/kg (or IM artesunate 2.4 mg/kg) once daily, plus clindamycin. If oral artesunate is not available, use quinine 600mg TID and clindamycin at 450 mg TID for 7 days. (For ADRs, C/Is, P/Cs, D/Is and dosage forms see page 121)

Alternative

Quinine IV 20 mg/kg loading dose (no loading dose if patient already taking quinine or mefloquine) in 5% dextrose over 4 hours and then10 mg/kg IV over 4 hours TID. When the patient is well enough to take oral medication, she can be switched to oral quinine 600 mg TID to complete 5–7 days and oral clindamycin 450 mg TID for 7 days.

Note: Quinine dosing should be reduced to 12-hourly dosing if IV therapy extends more than 48 hours or if the patient has renal or hepatic dysfunction. Quinine is associated with severe and recurrent hypoglycaemia in late pregnancy.

(For **ADRs, C/Is, P/Cs, D/Is and dosage forms** see page 117)

B. Uncomplicated malaria

P. falciparum:

First line

Oral quinine 600 mg TID and oral clindamycin 450 mgTID

for 7 days (can be given together)

Vomiting but no signs of severe or complicated malaria:

Quinine, 10 mg/kg dose IV in 5% dextrose over 4 hours TID

(For ADRs, C/Is, P/Cs, D/Is and dosage forms see page 117)

Alternative

Artemether (120mg)-lumefantrine (20mg), PO, 4tablets BID for three days

(For ADRs, C/Is, P/Cs, D/Is and dosage forms see page 116)

Non-falciparum malaria: *P. vivax*,

Chloroquine (base), 600 mg p.o. followed by 300 mg TID later. Then 300 mg on day 2 and again on day 3.

(For **ADRs, C/Is, P/Cs, D/Is and dosage forms** see page 118)

NB: Primaquine should not be used in pregnancy

Refer: Patient with complicated malaria should be referred to nearby hospital for ICU care and management.

6. Urinary Tract Infection in Pregnancy

Urinary tract infections (UTIs) are one of the most common medical complications of pregnancy. It is estimated that one in three women of childbearing age will have a UTI. Because of the normal physiologic changes induced by pregnancy, pregnant women are especially susceptible to UTIs, including asymptomatic bacteriuria, cystitis and pyelonephritis. Urinary tract infection is common in women with diabetes. Half of the women with asymptomatic bacteriuria would develop pyelonephritis later in pregnancy, if left untreated. For this reason, pregnant women with asymptomatic bacteruria should be treated and 70% of pyelonephritis can be prevented.

Causative organisms

- *E.coli*(most common, 75-90%), klebsiella, proteus, coagulase negative staphylococci, and pseudomonas

Classes

- Asymptomatic bacteruria
- Symptomatic UTI:
    - Lower UTI: Cytitis, urethritis
    - Upper UTI: Pyelonephritis

Clinical features

- **Lower UTI** (cystitis and uretheritis) will have supra-pubic tenderness, abdominal discomfort, hematuria, urgency, frequency, dysuria
- **Upper UTI:** Flank pain (unilateral or bilateral) and abdominal pain, anorexia, nausea, vomiting, fever, chillness headache, dehydration, tachypnea

Investigations

- Urine analysis

Treatment

1. Asymptomatic bacteruria

Objectives

- Prevent pyelonephritis
- Identify the predisposing factors, if there is any
- Eradicate the infection and prevent recurrence

Non pharmacologic

- Take too much fluid and ecourage frequent voiding.

Pharmacologic

First line

Amoxicillin, 500 mg P.O. TID for three days

(For **ADRs, C/Is** and **Dosage forms,** see page 187)

Alternatives

Cefuroxime, 500mg PO BID for 5days

N.B: Avoid trimetoprim sulphamethoxazole in the first and third trimester of pregnancy because it has potential risk to cause open neural tube defect and neonatal jaundice.

2. Symptomatic UTIs

About 11-15% of women develop symptoms of UTI in pregnancy. However, 3.2% of them could be symptomatic with sterile urine.

2.1.Lower UTI (cystitis and urethritis)

The symptoms are often difficult to distinguish from those due to the pregnancy itself. Features that may indicate true infection include hematuria, dysuria, urethral discharge and supra-pubic discomfort.

Treatment

Treatment is the same as asymptomatic bacteruria but for 7 days

2.2. Upper UTI: Pyelonephritis

Acute pyelonephritis is a serious medical problem in pregnancy which requires admission and aggressive management. Acute pyelonephritis could lead to complications like miscarriage, IUGR, preterm labour, intrauterine fetal death and sepsis. The incidence increases with gestational age; 90% of the cases occur in the second and third trimesters of pregnancy and 20-40% follows asymptomatic bacteruria.

Treatment

Women with pyelonephritis require admission for parenteral medication.

Objectives

- Prevent fetal complications which include preterm labour, low birth weight, IUGR, PROM
- Prevent maternal complication from, overwhelming sepsis, perinephric abscess, preeclampsia, acute renal failure
- Identify the predisposing factors, including renal stone, congenital anomalies, diabetes mellitus
- Prevent recurrence of UTI

Non pharmacologic

- Adequate nutrition and hydration
- Tepid sponging to lower fever

Pharmacologic

First line

Ampicillin, 2gm IV QID until 48 hours after the fever subsided and then 500 mg PO for 10-14 days. (For **ADRs, C/Is** and **Dosage forms,** see page 382)

PLUS

Gentamicin, 80 mg IV TID until 48 hours after the fever subsided and then IM for 10-14 days. (For **ADRs, C/Is and Dosage forms,** see page 383)

Alternatives

Cephotaxime, 500 mg-1 gm IV BID until 48 hours after the fever subsided and then continue IM ID for 7days

ADRs: Granulocytopenia, GI disturbance, and Positive coomb's test

C/Is*:* Hypersensitivity reaction

Dosage forms*:* 0.5g, 1g in vial

OR

Ceftriaxone, IV, 1gm, BID, until 48hours after the fever subsided and then continue IM for 7days. (For **ADRs, C/Is and Dosage forms,** see page 86)

OR

Cefuroxime, IV, 750-1500mg, BID, until 48hours after the fever subsided and then continue PO for 7days.

Refer: If there is no satisfactory response to the initial antibiotics treatment; refer patient to urologist for further investigation.

7. Syphilis in Pregnancy

Syphilis is a common sexually transmitted disease, which can cause significant intrauterine infection leading to abortion, pre-term birth, perinatal death and congenital anomalies. It is caused by *Treponema pallidum.* Routine screening is done at booking and at the third trimester of pregnancy, because it can infect the fetus at any point in the gestation. Previously, it was believed that congenital infection is not possible before 16 weeks of gestation because of the protective effect of the Langerhans cell layer of the placenta. However, it is now known that the spirochete can transgress the placenta during the first trimester. The risk of fetal infection is proportional to the degree of spirochetemia in the mother. Hence nearly, all fetuses are at risk of infection during maternal primary and secondary syphilis.

Clinical features

- Most mothers are asymptomatic.

Investigations

Microscopy: by dark field examination or direct immuno-fluorescent Microscopy.

Serology

i. specific treponemal tests such as TPHA or FTA-Ab
ii. nonspecific treponemal tests
    a. the Venereal Disease Research Laboratory (VRDL) test
    b. the Rapid Plasma Reagin (RPR) test

Treatment

Objectives

- Prevent the long term and short term complications
- Prevent mother to child transmission

Non pharmcologic

- None

Pharmacologic:

First line

Pregnant women with syphilismust be treated with penicillin, since no other medication effectively crosses the placenta to treat the fetus, even if allergic to penicillin must be desensitized and treated.

Benzathine penicillin, 2.4 Mil IU IM (1.2 Mil in each buttock) weekly for three consecutive weeks. Treat the partner similarly

(For **ADRs** and **C/Is,** see under benzyl penicillin)

Dosage forms: Injection, 0.6, 1.2, 2.4 million IU in vial

Alternatives

Erythromycin, 500 mg P.O. QID for 14 days, but may not prevent congenital infection.

(For **ADRs, C/Is** and **Dosage forms,** see page 268)

N.B Patients treated for syphilis in the second half of pregnancy can develop Jarisch-Herxheimer reaction, which can precipitate premature labor and fetal distress.

III. GYNECOLOGIC DISORDERS

1. Pelvic Inflammatory Diseases (PID)

Pelvic inflammatory disease (PID) is usually the result of infection ascending from the endocervix causing endometritis, salpingitis, parametritis, oophoritis, tubo-ovarian abscess and/or pelvic peritonitis. Sexually transmitted infections (STIs) are the main causative agents but anaerobes and other organisms from the lower genital and gastrointestinal tracts may also be implicated. PID could be post-sexually transmitted infection, post-partal, post-abortal and post-operative.

It is caused by polymicrobial organisms such as *gonoccocus, chlamydia trachomatis, mycoplasma hominis and genitalium,* other intestinal and vaginal normal flora.

Clinical features

The following clinical features are suggestive of a diagnosis of PID:

Major criteria

- Bilateral lower abdominal tenderness (sometimes radiating to the legs)
- Cervical motion tenderness on bimanual vaginal examination
- Adnexal tenderness on bimanual vaginal examination (with or without a palpable mass).

Minor criteria

- Fever (greater than 38°C)
- Abnormal vaginal bleeding (intermenstrual, post-coital or 'breakthrough')
- Deep dyspareunia
- Abnormal cervical or vaginal mucopurulent discharge
- Presence of abundant numbers of white blood cells (WBCs) on saline microscopy of vaginal secretions
- Elevated erythrocyte sedimentation rate
- Elevated C-reactive protein

Investigations

- WBC with differential count, ESR
- Vaginal Swab: Excess WBC in wet mount smear may indicate PID

Treatment Objectives

- Determine whether the patient can be treated as outpatient or requires hospitalization
- Treat the acute infection: to eradicate the offending organism and prevent further dissemination of the infection.
- Prevent the damage of the fallopian tube which may lead to recurrent infection, infertility, chance of ectopic pregnancy, chronic pelvic pain

Non pharmacologic

- Patient should refrain from sexual activities or douching

Pharmacologic

Out patient treatment

First line

Ceftriaxone, 250 mg IM single dose

(For **ADRs, C/Is** and **dosage forms**, see page 86)

PLUS

Doxycyclline, 100 mg P.O. BID (For **ADRs, C/Is** and **dosage forms,** see page 125)

PLUS

Metronidazole, 500mg P.O. BID for two weeks

(For **ADRs, C/Is** and **dosage forms,** see page 82)

Inpatient treatment

Inpatient antibiotic treatment should be based on intravenous therapy which should be continued until 48 hours after clinical improvement and followed by oral therapy. Admission to the hospital would be appropriate in the following circumstances:

- If the diagnosis is uncertain
- Clinically severe disease
- Tubo-ovarian abscess
- PID with pregnancy
- PID in HIV positive women
- Lack of response to oral therapy
- Intolerance to oral therapy
- Poor compliance

First line

Ampicillin, 500 – 1000 mg IV, QID**,** followed by 500 mg p.o. QID

(For **ADRs, C/Is** and **Dosage forms,** see page 382)

PLUS

Gentamicin, 80 mg, IV, TID followed by IM injection of similar dose

(For **ADRs, C/Is** and **Dosage forms,** see page 383)

PLUS

Metronidazole, 500 mg IV TID followed by 500 mg P.O.TID

(For (For **ADRs, C/Is** and **Dosage forms*:*** see page 82)

Alternative

Ceftriaxone, IV**,** 2gm/day, BID **(For ADRs, C/Is, and Dosage forms,** see page 86**)**

PLUS

Gentamicin, IV, 80 mg, TID (For **ADRs, C/I,** and **Dosage forms,** see page 383)

PLUS

Metronidazole, IV, 500mg TID

(For **ADRs, C/Is** and **Dosage forms*:*** see page 82)

OR

Doxycycline 100mg p.o. BID

(For **ADRs, C/Is** and **Dosage forms*:*** see page 125)

PLUS

Metronidazole 500mg p.o. TID for 14days

(For **ADRs, C/Is** and **Dosage forms*:*** see page 82)

N.B.

- In the outpatient setting, review of patient condition at 72hours after initiation of medication is recommended, particularly for those with a moderate or severe clinical presentation
- In patients who have been on IV medication should continue oral treatment for 14 days after clinically being improved
- In pregnancy, the physician should refrain from using deoxycycline
- Patients with PID wearing IUD: Consideration should be given to removing an intrauterine contraceptive device (IUD), especially if symptoms have not resolved within 72 hours
- Women on hormonal contraception presenting with breakthrough bleeding should be screened for genital tract infection, especially for *C. trachomatis*
- When a sexually transmitted infection is either proven or likely to be the cause of PID, the current sexual partner(s) should be traced and offered health advice and screening for gonorrhoea and chlamydia.

Refer: If patient is not responding to the treatment or any complication arises, refer the patient for better management.

2. Puerperal Mastitis

Puerperal mastitis is breast inflammation that develops during the first month after delivery. Puerperal mastitis is a commonly encountered infection, hence early diagnosis and prompt management minimizes the impact on the mother and infant. Despite appropriate management,

abscess formation occurs in 4-10% of cases. It is commonly caused by *Staph. aureus* and in some cases *Staph. epidemidis*.

Clinical features

- Fever, chills, flu like symptoms, breast pain with warm, erythromatous, indurated, engorged and tender breast (one or both breasts) and ± axillary lymphadenopathy ± fluctuating breast mass.

Investigations

- CBC
- Gram stain from the pus

Treatment

Non Pharmacologic

- Suctioning of the breast
- Breast-feeding with only the healthy breast
- Drainage of breast abscess

Pharmacologic

Cloxacillin 500 mg P.O. TID for 7-10 days

(For **ADRs, C/Is** and **Dosage forms,** see page 347)

If there is evidence of sepsis, the patient requires hospitalization

Cloxacillin, 500 mg IV QID until the fever and clinical symptoms subside, and continue with oral Cloxacillin for 7-10 days**.**

(For **ADRs, C/Is** and **dosage forms**, see page 347)

N.B. Don't wait until fluctuation, if there is induration, tap and confirm the diagnosis

Refer: The patient must be referred if there is sign of sepsis or the diagnosis is not settled.

3. Vaginal Discharge Syndromes

1) Bacterial Vaginosis (BV)

Bacterial vaginosis (BV) is a clinical syndrome characterized by the presence of malodorous vaginal discharge, with or without vaginal pruritus. Usually there is no external genital irritation

or dysuria. The discharge is generally a homogeneous, non-viscous, milky white fluid which smoothly coats the vaginal mucosa and cervix. Imbalance of the normal vaginal flora is thought to play a role in the aetiology of BV, resulting in overgrowth of gardnerella, anaerobes, or genital Mycoplasmas. The absence of Hydrogen peroxide-producing Lactobacillus in the vagina appears to correlate with development of this disease. BV may cause adverse pregnancy outcomes like PROM, chorioamnionitis, preterm labour, premature birth, post- partum endometritis, and post-caesarean wound infection.

Clinical features

- Vaginal secretions characterized by at least three of the following:
    1. Amine ("fishy") odor before or after addition of 10% KOH solution.
    2. PH $\geq$ 4.5 (unreliable if blood present)
    3. Homogeneous, smooth, non-inflammatory discharge
    4. Presence of clue cells (epithelial cells coated with bacteria) on microscopic examination.

Treatment

Objectives

- Alleviate ymptoms
- Prevent adverse pregnancy outcomes following the infection
- Avoid precipitating factors

Non pharmacologic:

- Avoid frequent douching

Pharmacologic

First line

Metronidazole, 500 mg P.O. BID for 7 days or 2g P.O. single dose

(For **ADRs, C/Is** and **dosage forms,** see page 82)

Alternative

Metronidazole 0.75% gel 5gm intra-vaginally QD for 5 days

(For **ADRs, C/Is** and **dosage forms,** see page 82)

In **Pregnancy**

Metronidazole, 250 mg P.O. TID for 7 days;

(For **ADRs, C/Is** and **dosage forms**, see page 82)

P/C: Avoid alcohol during treatment with oral metronidazole and for 24 hours thereafter, due to possible disulfiram-type reaction. Clindamycin cream is oil based, and may weaken latex condoms.

Sex Partners

Routine treatment of male partners(s) with **metronidazole** does not prevent recurrence of Bacterial Vaginosis. For recurrent BV without evidence of other STD, use of condoms and avoiding douching is encouraged.

2) Mucopurulent Cervicitis

Mucopurulent cervicitis (MPC) has been called the female counter part of urethritis in males. It can be caused by infection with *N. gonorrhoeae* or *C. trachomatis*, although in most cases test are negative for both gonorrhea and chlamydia. The syndrome is characterized by muco-purulent cervical discharge and a cervical inflammatory response (friability, edema, ectopy, and increased numbers of polymorphonuclear leukocytes (PMNs)). However, presence of IUCD, ectopy, oral contraceptives and menses may be associated with PMNs in endocervical smears without MPC. Patients with MPC may note vaginal discharge, dyspareunia, post-coital or inter-menstrual bleeding, or other non-specific symptoms.

Causes

- Gonorrhea or Chlamydialinfections
- Herpes cervicitis
- Trichomoniasis (ectocervicitis)

Clinical features

1. MPC is diagnosed by the presence of criterion (a) below and at least one other criterion (b, c or d).
    a. Endocervical Gram-stained smear with a monolayer of ≥ 15 PMNs/1000 X (oil immersion) field, (in a specimen obtained from the endocervix with a swab to wipe the cervix free of vaginal epithelial cells or menstrual blood, and in the absence of primary herpes, trichomoniasis, or candidiasis)
    b. Purulent endocervical discharge; or positive “swab test” (yellow or green color on endocervical swab).
    c. Hypertrophic or edematous cervical ectopy.

d. Endocervical bleeding induced by gentle swabbing.

Investigation

- CBC
- Wet smear
- KOH mount
- Gram stain from vaginal swab for gonorrhea

Treatment Objective

- Alleviate symptoms
- Treat aggressively to prevent short and long complications
- Identify the partner and halt further transmission of the infection

Non pharmacologic

- None

Pharmacologic

First line

Doxycycline 100 mg P.O. BID for 7 days

(For ADRs, C/Is and dosage forms, see page 125)

Alternatives

Erythromycin base, 500 mg P.O. QID for 7 days

(For **ADRs, C/Is** and **dosage forms;** see page 268)

N.B. If gonococcal infection is likely on clinical or epidemiological grounds, precede treatment with a single dose gonorrhea regimen.

Sex Partners

1. All current sex partners should receive full STD evaluation. It is probably most important to evaluate those partners within the past 30 days of diagnosis or onset of symptoms.
2. If Non-Gonococcal Urethritis (NGU) or gonorrhea present; treat accordingly.
3. If no urethritis is documented in the partners, it is generally safe to defer treatment pending results of tests for gonorrhea and Chlamydia. However, empiric therapy at the time of initial examination may be indicated if the follow- up cannot be assured.

3) Trichomonal Vaginitis

Trichomoniasis is a parasitic infection caused by Trichomonas vaginalis. Trichocomonal vaginitis is characterized by the development of profuse, purulent malodorous vaginal discharge (occasionally foamy). Cervical petechiae are commonly seen ("strawberry cervix"). External dysuria and genital irritation are sometimes present. As in BV, the vaginal PH in trichomoniasis is generally above 4.5. Trichomonas vaginalis may be linked to adverse pregnancy outcomes such as PROM, premature birth, and low birth weight.

Clinical features

- Frothy, greenish and profuse vaginal discharge associated with itching.

Investigations

- Demonstration of motile trichomonads on saline wet mount of vaginal exudates

Treatment Objectives

- Alleviate symptoms
- Prevent pregnancy adverse pregnancy outcomes including PROM, premature labour, low birth weight
- Halt further transmission of the infection by identifying and treating the partner/s

Non pharmacologic

None

Pharmacologic

First line

Metronidazole, 500 mg P.O. BID for 7 days OR 2gm P.O. single dose

(**For ADRs, C/Is** and **dosage forms**, see page 82)

OR

Tinidazole 2gm PO stat

In Pregnancy

Metronidazole, 2gm P.O single dose regimen

(**For ADRs, C/Is** and **dosage forms**, see page 82)

OR

Tinidazole 2gm PO stat

N.B.

- Advise sexual abstention until symptoms improve and partner(s) treated
- Avoid alcohol during treatment with oral metronidazole and for 24 hours thereafter, due to possible disulfiram-type reaction.
- Treatment failure (persistence or recurrence despite sexual abstention, or after intercourse only with a treated partner), metronidazole 500 mg P.O bid for 7 days.
- Repeated treatment failure: metronidazole 2.0 gm P.O. QD for 3 to 5 days.
- Metronidazole gel is not effective for the treatment of T-vaginalis.
- Consider metronidazole resistance if patient is persistently infested after multiple treatment courses.
- Tinidazole appears to be effective against metronidazole resistant T. Vaginalis: dose is 2 gm once P.O

Sex Partners

1. Routine examination for sexually transmitted disease is required.
2. Metronidazole 2 gm P.O, single dose for all partners.
3. Abstain from sexual contact until 7 days after therapy is initiated.

4) Vulvo-Vaginal Candidiasis

Vulvo vaginal candidiasis *is a common cause o*f pruritic vaginal discharge which is commonly caused by *Candida albicans.*

Clinical features

- The main manifestations include pruritis vulvae, whitish curd like vaginal discharge, vulval irritation, dyspareunia, and splash (external) dysuria.

Investigations

- KOH test, Culture

Treatment Objective

- Alleviate symptoms
- Indetify the underlying cause and manage accordingly including diabetes mellitus, eccessive use of board spectrum antibiotics, other causes that can jeopardize the immune status of the patient

Non pharmacologic

- Avoid frequent douching using detergents

Pharmacologic

First line

Nystatin, 100,000 IU per vaginum, QD for 14 days.

(For **ADRs and C/Is** and **dosage forms,** see page 88)

Alternative

Clotrimazole, 100mg bid to be inserted in the vagina for three days **OR**

200mg/day for 03 days. OR 100 mg/day for 6 days **OR** 1% cream-5 gm

10-14 days.

OR

Miconazole, 200 mg/day to be inserted in the vagina for three days **OR** 100mg/day for 7 days **OR** 2% cream 5 gm intra-vaginal for 7 days.

Chronic Vulvo-vaginal Candidiasis: -

First line

Ketoconazole, 400 mg /day OR 200 mg BID for 5-10 days. Then 100 mg / day for 6 months as prophylaxis.

(For **ADRs, C/I**s and **dosage forms**, see page 90)

Alternative

Fluconazole, 150 mg P.O. single dose, then 100 mg ketoconazole /day for 6 months prophylaxis. (For ADRs, C/Is and dosage forms, see page 89)

Sex Partners

Examination and treatment of the partner usually is not necessary. However, if the partner has penile candidiasis or there is recurrent infection, treatment with an imidazole cream (e.g, miconazole, clotrimazole) may be indicated.

Refer: If there is not significant improvement with the above indicated regimen, refer the patient for definitive work up.

4. Abortion

Abortion is defined as the initiation or expulsion of the fetus and other products of conception before the 28th week of pregnancy. It may be spontaneous (threatened, inevitable, incomplete, complete or missed) or induced.

Causes

- Infections e.g. malaria, HIV, UTI, bacterial vaginosis etc.
- Fetal abnormalities
- Incompetent cervix and other congenital anomalies of the uterus
- Chronic illness e.g. diabetes, thyroid disorders, HIV etc.
- Intentional interference with the pregnancy with medications or instrumentation
- Trauma

1) Threatened Abortion

This is bleeding from the uterus before 28weeks of gestation without cervical dilatation.

Clinical features

- This variety of abortion usually manifests with scanty to moderate painless vaginal bleeding without cervical dilatation and effacement. There may be mild discomfort. Usually the uterine size corresponds with the stated gestational age.

Investigations

- CBC
- Blood film for malaria and other hemoparasites
- VDRL
- FBS
- HIV test

Treatment Objectives

- Maintain a viable pregnancy to term if possible

Non pharmacologic

- Explain the condition to the patient
- Strict bed rest at home or hospital
- Abstain from sexual intercourse
- Report back if bleeding or pain increases

Pharmacologic

- None

2) Inevitable Abortion

Inevitable abortion is bleeding from the uterus before 28weeks of gestation leading to cervical dilatation with the membranes bulging or leakage of fluid.

Clinical features

- There is lower abdominal pain associated with heavy bleeding, cervical dilatation and effacement. There may also be painless loss of amniotic fluid.
- If the bleeding continues for more than one week, it can be considered as inevitable abortion, even if the cervix is closed.
- The uterine size is compatible with the gestational age.
- Depending on the amount of blood loss, there may be signs of shock (pallor, collapsed peripheral vessels, rising pulse with reducing volume, falling BP and cold clammy skin).

Investigations

- CBC
- Blood grouping and cross matching

Treatment Objectives

- Resuscitate patient
- Relieve pain
- Facilitate conditions that the process of abortion to be accomplished in aseptic condition within short period of time
- Evacuate the retained products of conception from the uterus.
- Identify cause of abortion if possible
- Prevent infection with antibiotic prophylaxis

Refer: After resuscitation the patient should be referred for definitive management.

3) Incomplete Abortion

In this clinical scenario part of the conceptus material is expelled and some is remaining in the uterine cavity or cervical canal.

Clinical features

- The patient may complain of the passage of large clots and/or the fetus and some products of conceptus material per vaginum.
- Depending on the extent of bleeding patient may manifest with shock (collapsed peripheral vessels, fast pulse, falling BP and cold clammy skin).
- Usually the uterine size is smaller than the stated gestational age.
- Cervix is dilated and part of the conception material may be in the cervical canal.

Investigations

- CBC

Treatment Objectives

- Resuscitate patient
- Evacuate the retained products of conception from the uterus
- Prevent infection with antibiotic prophylaxis
- Identify the cause of abortion, if possible
- Prevent risk of Rh isoimmunization

Non pharmacologic

- Digital curettage during the time of vaginal examination to decrease blood loss
- Arrange referral for surgical evacuation of the retained products of conception by manual vacuum aspiration (MVA) or metallic evacuation and curettage (E&C)
- Abstain from sexual intercourse for at least 2 weeks
- Counseling and psychological support of the patient
- Blood transfusion when needed

Refer: After resuscitation and administration of broad spectrum antibiotics, refer patient for definitive management.

4) Complete Abortion

Cessation or reduction of vaginal bleeding following heavy bleeding with passage of clots and/or the fetus and placenta.

Clinical features

- Usually the patient has no pain.
- The uterus is smaller than the gestational age.
- The cervix is closed and firm.

Investigations

- CBC
- Blood film if the patient is febrile.

Treatment Objectives

- Assess for and manage anaemia if present
- Investigate for the cause of abortion if possible

Non pharmacologic

- Counseling and psychological support of the mother

Pharmacologic

- Resuscitate patient if necessary
- Treat anaemia if present
- Follow up

5) Septic Abortion

This is a life threatening complication of abortion. Most often the patient gives history of interference with pregnancy under septic technique or incomplete abortion which stayed for some time without being evacuated. If not managed appropriately, this may lead to further complications such as septic shock, uterine damage, peritonitis, haemorrhage, disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC), acute renal failure, adult respiratory distress syndrome, tetanus or gas gangrene.

Clinical features

- Severe lower abdominal pain**,** fever**,** vomiting**,** headache**,** offensive and bloody vaginal discharge**,** tachycardia**,** sign of peritonitis.
- If conditions worsen, patient may manifest with septic shock.

Investigations

- CBC
- Blood film if the patient is febrile

Treatment Objectives

- Resuscitate patient
- Treat infection
- Evacuate uterus and prevent further infection or organ damage
- Provide counseling

Refer: After resuscitation and giving triple antibiotics, refer patient for specialist management.

6) Missed Abortion

This refers to fetal death in-utero before 28 weeks gestation which does not show any sign of expulsion.

Clinical features

- There is reversal of the symptoms of pregnancy with recurrent bloody vaginal discharge**.**
- The mother fails to perceive the fetal movements (if quickening has already occurred).
- The uterus is smaller than the stated gestational age. The fetal heart beat is absent.

Investigations

- CBC
- Pregnancy test
- Fasting Blood Sugar
- VDRL

Treatment

Objectives

- Prepare the patient for uterine evacuation
- Ensure safe uterine evacuation
- Ensure there is no DIC before attempting to evacuate the uterus
- Establish cause of fetal death if possible

Refer: Missed abortion can not be managed at health center and should be referred to a hospital.

IV. HORMONAL CONTRACEPTIVES

Contraceptives include different kinds of methods used to prevent the occurrence of pregnancy. The variety of contraceptive methods includes, natural methods, barrier methods, intrauterine contraceptive devices, hormonal and permanent surgical methods. Hormonal contraceptives are one of the most effective methods that are prescribed to a client based on informed choice.

1. Combined Oral Contraceptives (COC)

A group of contraceptive medications composed of synthetic estrogens & progesterone in different doses; 20 mcg, 30 mcg or 50 mcg of estrogen and 0.15 -1 mg of progesterone in each tablet. They act primarily by inhibiting ovulation, and also by making the cervical mucus less favorable to sperm penetration and rendering the endometrium more atrophic.

First line

Levonorgesterol +**ethnylestradiol** and **iron**, in starting from the first day of menses

ADRs: Gastrointestinal disturbance, loss of libido, weight gain etc.

C/Is: Pregnancy, cardiac illness, thrombo-embolic conditions, genital tract malignancies, Hepatic dysfunction, Migraine headaches.

D/Is: Care should be taken while prescribing anticonvulsants, hypnotics, antibiotics and antacids to women using COC, since these drugs may reduce the effectiveness of COC. Combined Oral Contraceptives (COC) may also reduce the effectiveness of drugs like anti-convulsants, anti-coagulants, anti-depressants, steroids, sedatives and hypoglycemic agents.

Dosage forms: levonorgesterol+ethnylestradiol and iron: Tablet, 0.15mg + 0.03mg; 0.25mg + 0.05mg; 0.5mg + 0.05mg; 0.3mg + 0.03mg

Alternative

Norethindrone + ethnylestradiol, 0.5mg + 0.035mg /day starting from the first day of menses

(For **ADRs, C/Is** and **D/Is,** see under Levonorgesterol +ethnylestradiol and iron, page 424)

Dosage forms: Norethindrone + ethnylestradiol: Tablet, 0.5mg + 0.035mg

OR

Norethindrone + mestranol, 1mg + 0.05mg /day starting from the first day of menses

(For **ADRs, C/Is** and **D/Is**, see under Levonorgesterol +ethnylestradiol and iron, page424)

Dosage forms: Norethindrone + mestranol: Tablet, 1mg + 0.05mg

2. Progesterone Only Contraceptives (POP)

This is indicated whenever there is contraindication for estrogen as in lactating mothers, Diabetics and Hypertensive patients. However, it is less effective compared with COC.

Orals

Lynestrenol, 0.5 mg/day

ADRs*:* Irregular vaginal bleeding, headache, mood changes, weight changes, Acne, functional ovarian cysts

C/Is: Pregnancy, Genital malignancies, cardiovascular diseases, hepatic disease

Dosage form: Tablet, 0.5mg,

Injectables

Medroxyprogesterone acetate, 150 mg deep IM injection within the first 5 days of the cycle to be repeated every three months.

ADRs*:* As indicated for the POPs. There is also a delay in return of fertility

Dosage forms*:* injection (aqueous suspension), 150 mg/ml in 1 ml vial

Implants

Levonorgesterel in six silastic capsules implanted in the left upper arm under local anesthesia, Effective up to five years.

ADRs: As indicated for the POPs.

Dosage forms*:* Levonorgesterel 36 mg/implant capsule of 6 implants Jadelle A two-rod subdermal levonorgestrel implant (Jadelle®) five years of use, Each rod is 0.25 cm in diameter, 4.3 cm long,

Dosage: Levonorgesterel 75 mg/ implant of two Implants

Implanon is a single-rod progestin implant used for contraception. The 40 mm by 2 mm semi-rigid rod is made of plastic (ethylene vinyl acetate) in which crystals of the progestin are suspended.

Dosage forms: Contraception is provided by slow release of 68 mg of the progestin etonogestrel

3. Emergency contraception (EC)

Contraception aimed at preventing pregnancy after unplanned sexual exposure in a woman who is not on regular contraception. EC cannot be used as a regular method of contraception.

First line

Levonorgestrel two 0.75 mg tablets to be taken 12 hours apart within 72 hours unplanned sexual exposure.

(For **ADRs, C/Is** and **Dosage forms*:*** see page 425)

OR

COC with 50 microgram of estrogen 2 tabs BID within 72hours of unplanned sexual exposure for 2doses. (For **ADRs, C/Is** and **Dosage forms*:*** see page 424)

OR

COC with 35 microgram of estrogen 4 tabs BID within 72 hours unplanned sexual exposure for two doses

ADRs*:* Nausea and vomiting, menstrual disturbance

C/Is*:* As in COC, POP

(For **Dosage forms*:*** see page 424)

Alternative

IUD: This would be effective if inserted within five days of unplanned exposure, after ruling out the existence of infection.

V. SEXUAL ASSAULT

Sexual assault is defined as any sexual act performed on another person without consent. Physician evaluating the victim of sexual assault should aim at providing adequate medical care and collect evidences. Rape is the most common reported sexual assault.

Clinical features

- History and physical examination

Investigations

- Identification of spermatozoa from specimen over the genitalia or high vaginal swab.
- Gram stain for gonorrhea
- Wet mount for trichomonas.
- The wet mount can also be examined for evidence of bacterial vaginosis and candidiasis.

- Serum testing for HIV infection, hepatitis, and syphilis
- Pregnancy testing should be done for women of childbearing age

Treatment

Objectives

- Medical or surgical treatment of acute injury.
- Screen for STI, HIV, Hepatitis virus B infection and pregnancy at initial visit ,repeat screening for HIV, HbsAg at three and six months.
- Prevention of STI.
- Prevention of Pregnancy
- Rehabilitation
- Medical recording should be meticulous and management approach should be multidisciplinary

Non pharmacologic

- Rehabilitation: Counseling and psychological support.
- Surgical repair of physically injured parts of the body

Pharmacologic

1. **Treatment of infection** such as gonococcal, trichomonas and chlamydial

   Ceftriaxone, 250 mg IM in single dose

   (For ADRs, C/Is and dosage forms, see page 86)

   PLUS

   Metronidazole, 2 gm orally in single dose,

   (For **ADRs, C/Is** and **dosage forms**, see page 82)

   PLUS

   Doxycycline, 100 mg P.O. BID for 7 days

   (For ADRs, C/Is and dosage forms, see page 125)

In Child Abuse

Ceftriaxone, 125-250 mg IM

(For **ADRs, C/Is** and **dosage forms**, see page 86)

OR

Erythromycin, 250mg P.O. TID seven days

(For **ADRs, C/Is** and **dosage forms;** see page 268)

2. **Prevention of Pregnancy:** Provide emergency contraception, within 72 hours after exposure

   Levonorgestrel two 0.75 mg tablets to be taken 12 hours apart

   Combined oral contraceptive pills with 50-mcg estrogens, two tabs 12 hours apart for two doses.

   (For **ADRs, C/Is** and **dosage forms** see page 425)

   Combined oral contraceptive pills with 30-mcg-estrogen, four tabs 12 hours apart for two doses**.** (For **ADRs, C/Is** and **dosage forms**, see page 424)

   IUD insertion up to 5 days following exposure

N.B. Screen for infection and pregnancy before inserting IUD

3. **Post Exposure Prophylaxis (PEP) to prevent HIV infection**

ANNEXES

ANNEX 1: NEONATAL RESUSCITATION

Most episodes of birth asphyxia can be anticipated based on high risk antepartum and intapartum factors. For effective resuscitation, it is important to anticipate the need for resuscitation and have preparation of equipment and personnel. Around 5-10% of normal births require some support to initiate breathing. Antepartum factors that call attention to prepare for resuscitation include:

- Maternal diabetes
- Pregnancy induced hypertension
- Maternal chronic illness
- Previous Rh-sensitization
- Polyhydramnios or oligohydramnios
- Maternal infection
- Poor obstetric history including difficult or operative delivery, abortion, still births, low birth weight babies, developmental defects etc.
- Multiple gestation and post-term gestation
- Maternal drug treatment like reserpine, Lithium carbonate, diazepam etc.
- Maternal under-nutrition (height < 145cm, weight < 40kg)
- Maternal anemia, Hgb < 8gm%
- Maternal age (<20 years or > 35 years)

The intrapartum factors include:

- Elective or emergency cesarian section
- Abnormal presentation
- Premature labor and precipitous labor
- Rupture of membrane more than 24 hours prior to delivery
- Foul smelling amniotic fluid
- Prolonged labor greater than 24 hours or prolonged 2nd stage of labor greater than 2 hours
- Fetal distress of whatever cause
- Use of general anesthesia
- Narcotics administered to the mother within 4 hours of delivery

- Meconium stained amniotic fluid
- Prolapsed cord
- Antepartum hemorrhage

Preparation for resuscitation

For a normal term deliveries, a trained person, such as a midwife or nurse, should be capable of at least providing Bag and Mask ventilation. A radiant warmer or simple room heater, preheated mattress, dry clothes should be ready for use. All resuscitation equipment should also be immediately available and in working order.

When asphyxia is anticipated, trained health workers capable of intubating the baby (pediatrician) should attend the delivery. If pediatrician is not available, an obstetrician or a general practitioner who is trained to intubate the newborn baby should attend the delivery. All equipment should be ready for use. Equipment and drugs that need to be ready include:

- Radiant warmer, sterile sheets
- Suction catheters
- Suction machine
- Infant resuscitation bag
- Appropriate size face-masks
- Laryngoscope with blade
- Endotracheal tube (2.5, 3.0, 3.5. and 4.0)
- Scissors, adhesive tape, gloves and stethoscope
- Syringes of different sizes
- Needles
- Alcohol and iodine
- Umbilical catheters of 5F to 8F
- Feeding tubes
- IV canula (24G) and 3-way connectors, if available

Other equipment/drugs may be needed based on the specific condition and situation of the newborns problems.

Initial steps of neonatal resuscitation

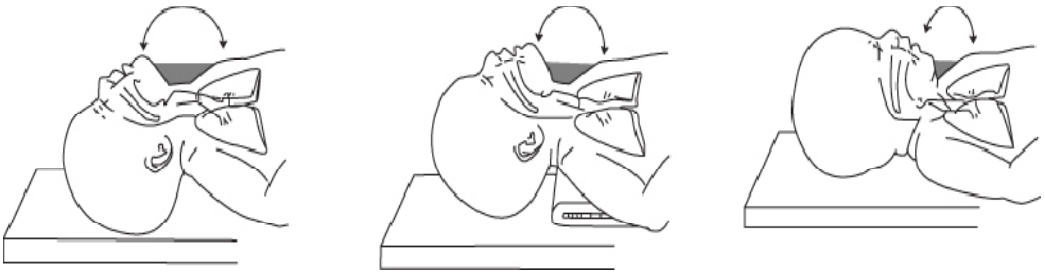
For most of the normal deliveries, all what is required is Essential Newborn Care (ENC); drying, warming, cord care, eye care and initiation of breast milk within the 1st one hour of life.

In every case of neonatal resuscitation, remember that a delay or ineffective resuscitation can lead to increased chance of brain damage and make resuscitation more difficult.

Procedures of Initial steps of resuscitation:

Open airway:

- Place on back in horizontal position with neck slightly extended (may use shoulder roll). Both hyperextension and under-extension of the neck can compromise the air entry.



Hyperextended **slightly extended** **Flexed**

- Suction mouth, then nose
- Start bag and mask ventilation

Bag and Mask ventilation

Indications

1. No spontaneous breathing at all
2. Gasping respiration
3. Recurrent apnea or irregular breathing

Contraindication to bag and mask ventilation

1. Diaphragmatic hernia
2. Baby born with thick meconium stained liquor

Cautions:

- Select the proper size mask, which should cover from the tip of the chin to the nose in an air tight manner
- Ensure neck is slightly extended and there are no secretions
- If bag and mask ventilation is given for > 2 minutes, insert and oro-gastric tube

- If HR>100bpm and respiratory efforts are good, stop ventilation and provide free flow oxygen. Continue monitoring HR, respiration and color.
- If HR is 60-100bpm and increasing, continue ventilation
- If HR is 60-100 and not increasing, continue ventilation and start chest compression.
- If HR < 60bpm, continue ventilation and start chest compression

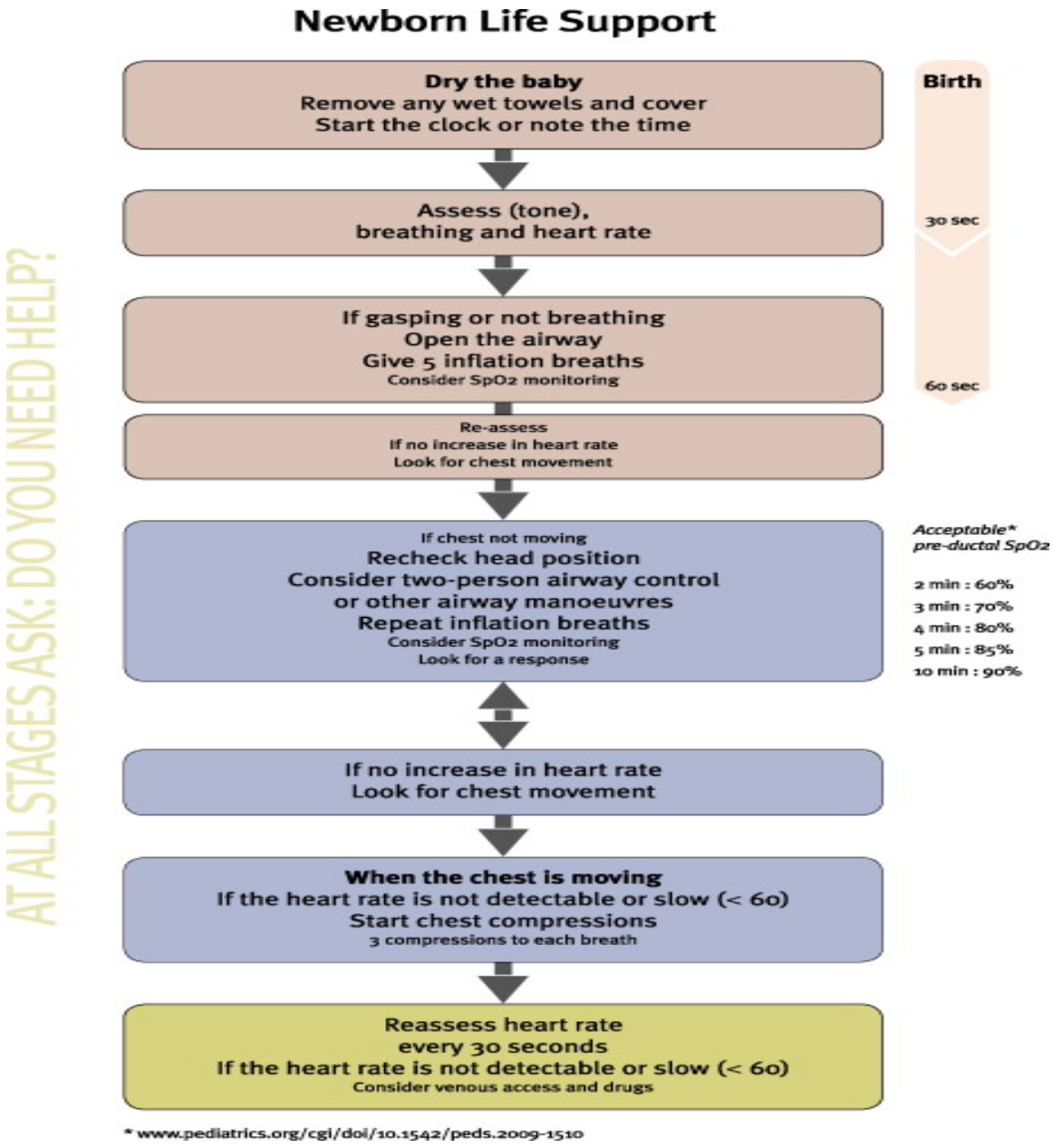

Newborn Life Support
Dry the baby
Remove any wet towels and cover
Start the clock or note the time
Birth
Assess (tone),
breathing and heart rate
30 sec
If gasping or not breathing
Open the airway
Give 5 inflation breaths
Consider SpO2 monitoring
60 sec
Re-assess
If no increase in heart rate
Look for chest movement
If chest not moving
Recheck head position
Consider two-person airway control
or other airway manoeuvres
Repeat inflation breaths
Consider SpO2 monitoring
Look for a response
Acceptable*
pre-ductal SpO2
2 min : 60%
3 min : 70%
4 min : 80%
5 min : 85%
10 min : 90%
If no increase in heart rate
Look for chest movement
When the chest is moving
If the heart rate is not detectable or slow (< 60)
Start chest compressions
3 compressions to each breath
Reassess heart rate
every 30 seconds
If the heart rate is not detectable or slow (< 60)
Consider venous access and drugs
AT ALL STAGES ASK: DO YOU NEED HELP?
* www.pediatrics.org/cgi/doi/10.1542/peds.2009-1510

Figure 1: Algorithm for neonatal resuscitation

Adrenaline

Indication:

- Heart rate < 80bpmafter 30 seconds of chest compression along with positive pressure ventilation with 100% oxygen
- If heart rate is zero

Dose: 0.1 – 0.3ml/kg of 1:10,000 solutions

Route: Intravenous or intra-tracheal. Give as rapid as possible. After 30 seconds of giving adrenaline check the heart rate. If the heart rate is still <100bpm, consider repeating adrenaline

ANNEX 2: RECOMMENDED IMMUNIZATION SCHEDULE

Table 1: Recommended schedule for immunization according to EPI program

Age	Vaccination
Birth	BCG OPV-0
6 weeks	OPV-1 DPT1-HBV1-Hib1 (Pentavalent)
10 weeks	OPV-2 DPT2-HBV2-Hib2 (Pentavalent)
14 weeks	OPV-3 DPT3-HBV3-Hib3 (Pentavalent)
9 months	Measles

Table 2: Recommended schedule of immunization for children attending clinic at later age but before 5 years

Age	Vaccination
First visit	BCG if Mantoux test is negative OPV-1 DPT1-HBV1-Hib1 (Pentavalent)
Second visit (after one month)	OPV2 DPT2-HBV2-Hib2 (Pentavalent)
Third visit (after one month)	OPV-3 DPT3-HBV3-Hib3 (Pentavalent) Measles

Table 3: Hepatitis B vaccine (Engrix B 10 microgram) is also available and three doses are recommended (at birth, at one month and at six months of age) Booster dose is given after 10 years.

Vaccine	Type of vaccine	Route of administration	Adverse reaction
BCG	Life attenuated	Intradermal	BCGioma
DPT-HBV-Hib (Pentavalent)	Toxoid (DT) Inactivated bacteria (P) Protein conjugated polysaccharide (Hib) Recombinant product (HBV)	IM	Fever, anaphylaxis, crying, & shock
OPV	Life attenuated virus	Oral	Paralysis
Measles	Life attenuated virus	Subcutaneous	Fever

ANNEX 3: FEEDING PROBLEMS

Feeding of normal baby:

Mother should be told to start feeding the baby with in one to two hours after delivery. First feed should be the breast milk and there is no need for any test feed with water or dextrose. First few feeds should be supervised and records of feeds should be documented.

Feeding of a preterm, small for date (SGA) and infants of diabetic mothers (IDM): Infants less than 1500 grams should receive all the fluids and calories intravenously for the first 24 hours. SGA and IDM babies should be started feeding by one hour of age, First few feeds may be given by NG tube and they should be fed at least two hourly if sucking is poor. Once sucking is well established and blood sugar is normal these babies should be given to the mother for supervised breast feeding.

Feeding of term asphyxiated infants:

Mildly asphyxiated infants should feed like any healthy baby but must be closely supervised for the first 12 hours. Babies with severe asphyxia should be started with 2/3 maintenance IV fluids and strict intake records should be maintained routinely.

Evidence for adequate nutrition

Weight gain should be 20 – 30 g/kg/day for premature infants and 10 g/kg/day for full term infants

Adequate growth requires:

100-120 kcal / kg/day in term infants

115-130 kcal /kg/day for preterm infants

150 kcal /kg/day for very low birth weight infants

ANNEX 4: FLUID AND ELECTROLYTE

Normal maintenance requirements (volume of fluid/kg/day)

Day 1	60 m1/kg/day
Day 2	80 m1/kg/day
Day 3	100 m1/kg/day
Day 4	120 m1/kg/day
Day 5	140 m1/kg/day
Day 6 & above	150 m1/kg/day

Additional allowance:

Increase insensible water loss:

a. Radiant warmer 20 m1 /kg / day
b. Photo therapy 20 m1 /kg / day
c. Increase body temperature 10-20 m1 /kg/ day

Increase loss water from other roots:

Example: neonatal entrocolitis , GI aspirates , diarrhea. The loss in the above conditions are variable, they should be replaced volume for volume.

Stomach contents should be replaced with half saline with KCL loss small intestinal contents is replaced with normal saline and KCL.

ANNEX 5: THE KANGAROO MOTHER CARE

Kangaroo Mother Care (KMC) is defined as early, prolonged and continuous skin to skin contact between a mother and her low birth weight infants (LBWI), both in hospital and after early discharge until at least the 40^{th} week of postnatal gestational age. KMC does not need sophisticated equipment, and for its simplicity it can be applied almost everywhere including peripheral hospitals. Kangaroo Mother Care also contributes to the humanization of neonatal care and the containment of cost, for which reason it may also be attractive for neonatal units in high-income countries.

Kangaroo care a program of skin-to-skin contact between mother (any family members) and a LBWI is part of the revolution in the care of premature infants. Since its first description in 1983 in Bogota, Colombia, KMC has drawn the attention of international agencies and the scientific community leading to a publication of more than 200 papers and abstracts.

The Multi center study including the neonatal unit of Addis Ababa, Ethiopia showed that LBWI in KMC had better growth, early discharge from hospital, lower cost, acceptable by both hospital staff and mothers when compared to the conventional method of care. KMC is not only feasible but also easily grasped by the hospital staff and accepted by the community. The feasibility of the KMC is also testified by the growing number of reported experiences and by its inclusion in national guidelines for perinatal care. The neonatal unit of Tikur Anbessa hospital also uses KMC as a routine care for all babies weighing less than 2000 grams since 1997.

The benefits of Kangaroo Mother Care: Many studies showed that Kangaroo Mother Care offers the preterm infants many physical and emotional benefits, which includes:

- A stable heart rate
- More regular breathing
- Improve dispersion of oxygen throughout the body
- Prevention of cold stress and also warming babies who are already in cold stress, Kangaroo transportation where transport incubators are not there to keep the warm chain
- Longer period of sleep (during which the brain matures)

- More rapid weight gain and earlier discharge from hospital
- Reduction of purposeless activity which simply burns calories at the expense of infants growth and health
- Decreased crying
- Opportunities to breast feed and enjoy all the healthful benefits of breast milk
- Earlier bonding

The KMC works so beautifully because of three factors affecting the infant:

1. It creates conditions similar to those with which the infant had become familiar in Utero, such as the proximity of the mother's heart beat sounds and her voice couples with the gentle rhythmic rocking of her breathing
2. It provides containment and allows for flexion and prevent heat loss and provides heat from the skin to skin contact
3. Protects the infant and offers him a reprieve from the stressful elements of NICU

When to Discharge from Kangaroo position:

The decision of discharging from Kangaroo position is made by the baby itself (at about the 40^{th} week (gestational age + postnatal age) and weight of about 2000 grams. The baby will be restless and the mother could not maintain the Kangaroo position any more, then this is the time to go out of the kangaroo "pouch"

ANNEX 6: WHO CLINICAL STAGING OF HIV/AIDS FOR

Children [Revised 2006]

(For the purpose of WHO staging system, children are defined as individuals aged < 15 years)

Clinical stage 1

- Asymptomatic
- Persistent generalized lymphadenopathy

Clinical stage 2

- Unexplained persistent hepatosplenomegaly
- Papular pruritic eruptions
- Extensive wart virus infections
- Extensive molluscum contagiosum
- Fungal nail infections
- Recurrent oral ulcerations
- Unexplained persistent parotid enlargement
- Lineal gingival erythema
- Herpes zoster
- Recurrent or chronic upper respiratory tract infections (Otitis media, otorrhoea, sinusitis or tonsillitis)

Clinical stage 3

- Unexplained[a] moderate malnutrition not adequately responding to standard therapy
- Unexplained persistent diarrhea (14 days or more)
- Unexplained persistent fever (above 37.5°C intermittent or constant, for longer than one month)
- Persistent oral candidiasis (after the first 6 – 8 weeks of life)
- Oral hairy leukoplakia

- Acute ulcerating gingivitis or periodontitis
- Lymph node tuberculosis
- Pulmonary tuberculosis
- Severe recurrent bacterial pneumonia
- Symptomatic lymphoid interstitial pneumonitis (LIP)
- Chronic HIV – associated lung disease including Bronchoectasis
- Unexplained anemia (<8g/dl), neutropenia (<0.5 X 10^9 per liter) and/or chronic thrombocytopenia (<50 X 10^9 per liter)

Clinical stage 4[b]

- Unexplained severe wasting, stunting or severe malnutrition not responding to standard therapy
- Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia
- Recurrent severe bacterial infections (such as empyema, pyomyositis, bone or joint infection or meningitis but excluding pneumonia)
- Chronic herpes simplex infection (orolabial or cutaneous of more than one month duration or visceral at any site)
- Extra pulmonary tuberculosis
- Kaposi sarcoma
- Esophageal candidiasis (or candidiasis of trachea, bronchi or lungs
- Central nervous system toxoplasmosis (after one month of life)
- HIV encephalopathy
- Cytomegalovirus infection: retinitis or cytomegalovirus infection affecting another organ, with onset at age older than one month.
- Disseminated endemic mycosis (extrapulmonary histoplasmosis, coccidiomycosis)
- Chronic cryptosporidiosis

- Chronic isosporiasis
- Disseminated non – tuberculous mycobacterial infection
- Cerebral or B cell non – Hodgkin lymphoma
- Progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy
- Symptomatic HIV – associated nephropathy or HIV – associated cardiomyopathy

a – unexplained refers to where the condition is not explained by other causes.

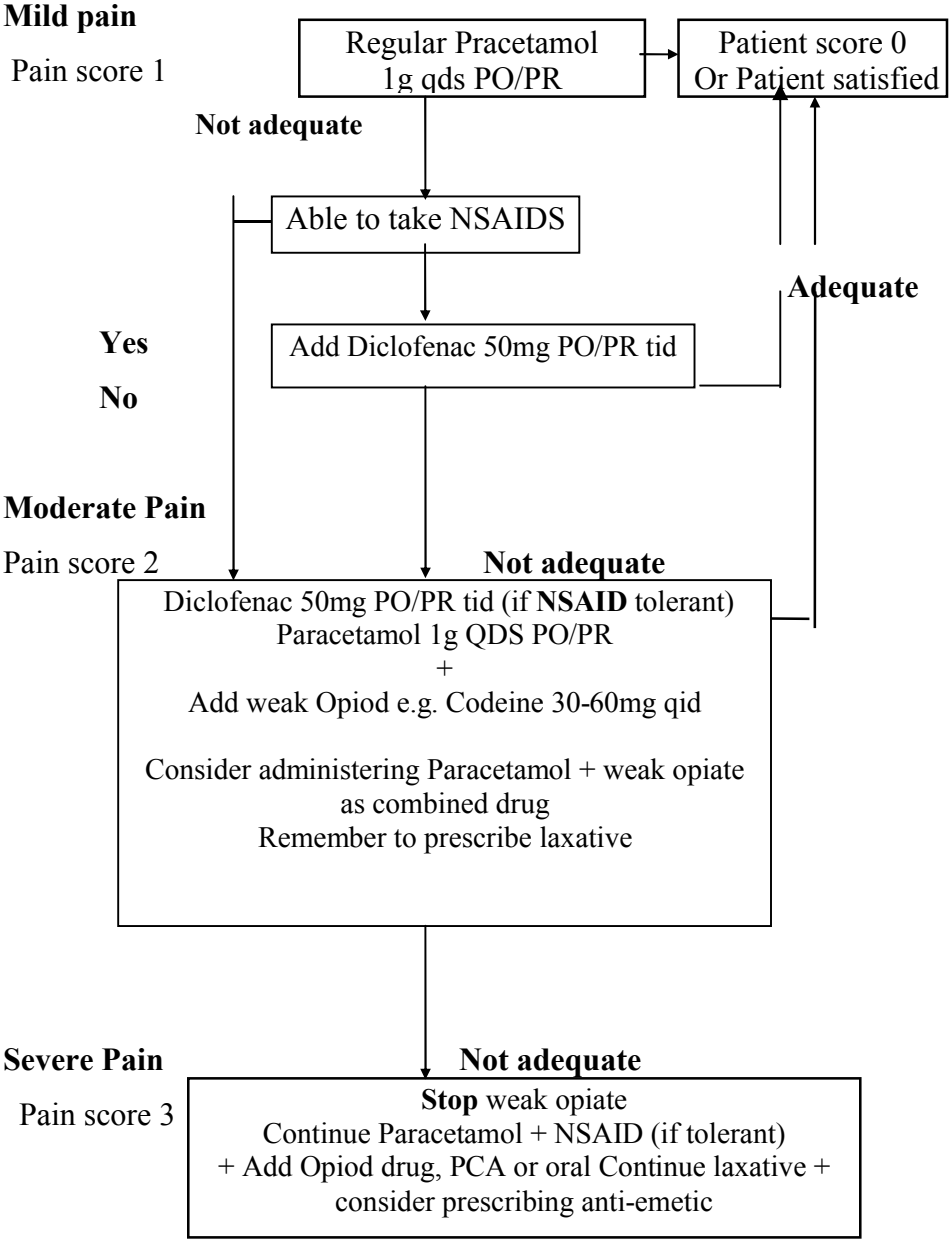
b – Some additional specific conditions can also be included in regional classifications (reactivation of American trypanosomiasis [Meningoencephalitis and/or Myocarditis] in the WHO region of the Americas, penicilliosis in Asia and HIV – associated rectovaginal fistula in Africa).

ANNEX 7: PERCENTAGE OF ADULT DOSE REQUIRED AT VARIOUS AGES AND BODY WEIGHT

Age	Mean weight For age (Kg)	Percentage of adult dose
Newborn (full term)	3.5	12.5
2 months	4.5	15
4 months	6.5	20
1 year	10	25
3 years	15	33.3
7 years	23	50
10 years	30	60
12 years	39	75
14 years	50	80
16 years	58	90
Adult	68	100

N.B. The percentage method is derived from the surface area formula for children. This table is to be used only for drugs with a high therapeutic index. The clinical response of the child, age- or disease-related changes in drug clearance and any adverse effects that might present should be given due consideration when calculating doses.

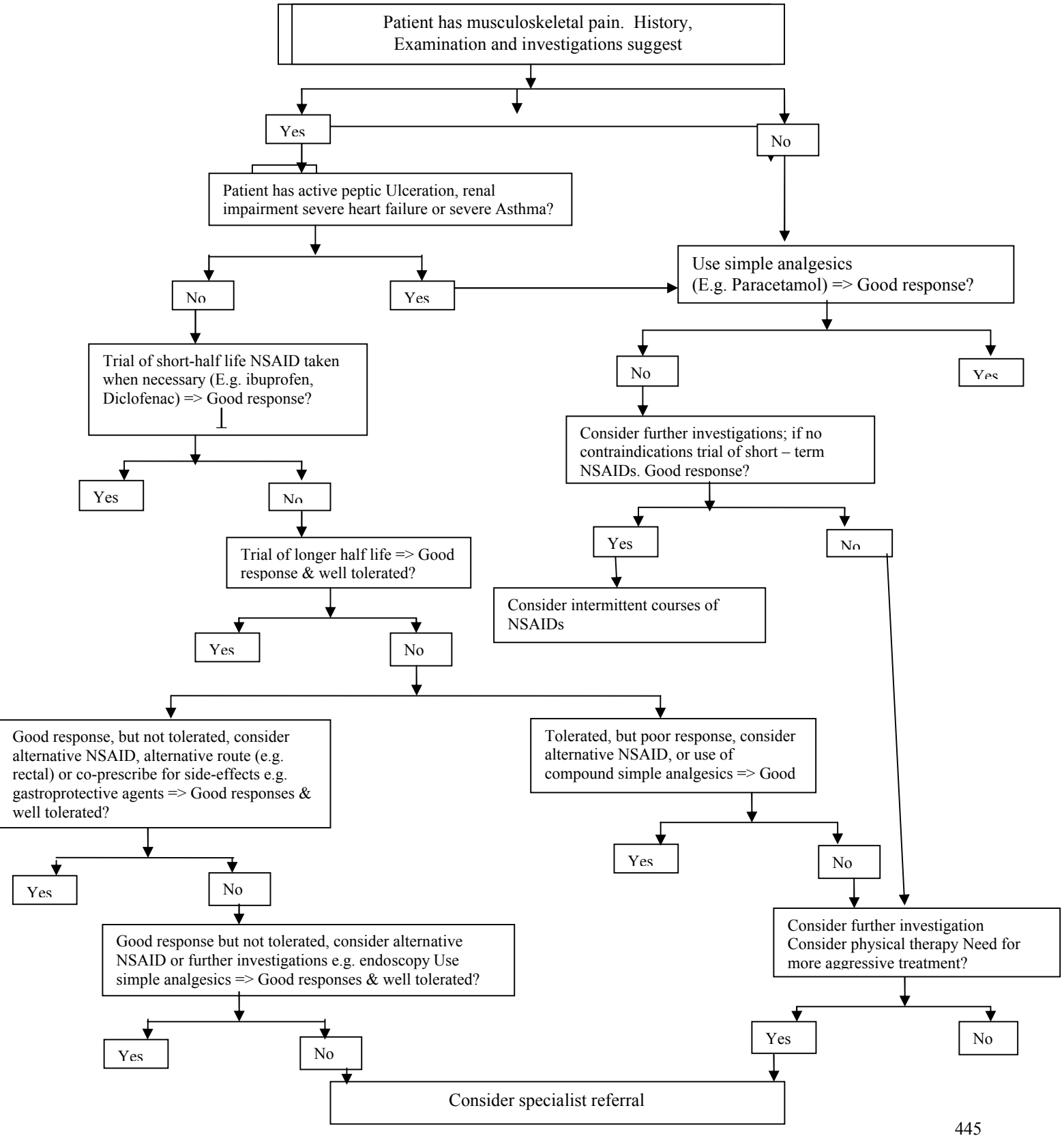
ANNEX 8: GUIDELINES FOR THE MANAGEMENT OF PAIN (INCLUDING POST-OPERATIVE PAIN)



Pain score should be assessed after asking the patient to take a deep breath, cough and move.

0	No pain	
1	Mild pain	- able to continue with whatever patient is doing
2	Moderate pain	- beginning to interfere with activities, less able to concentrate
3	Severe pain	- unable to think of anything else

ANNEX 9: GUIDELINES FOR USING NON-STEROIDAL ANTI-INFLAMMATORY DRUGS (NSAIDS)


Patient has musculoskeletal pain. History, Examination and investigations suggest
Yes
No
Patient has active peptic Ulceration, renal impairment severe heart failure or severe Asthma?
No
Yes
Use simple analgesics (E.g. Paracetamol) => Good response?
Trial of short-half life NSAID taken when necessary (E.g. ibuprofen, Diclofenac) => Good response?
No
Yes
Consider further investigations; if no contraindications trial of short – term NSAIDs. Good response?
Yes
No
Yes
No
Trial of longer half life => Good response & well tolerated?
Consider intermittent courses of NSAIDs
Yes
No
Good response, but not tolerated, consider alternative NSAID, alternative route (e.g. rectal) or co-prescribe for side-effects e.g. gastroprotective agents => Good responses & well tolerated?
Tolerated, but poor response, consider alternative NSAID, or use of compound simple analgesics => Good
Yes
No
Yes
No
Yes
No
Consider further investigation Consider physical therapy Need for more aggressive treatment?
Good response but not tolerated, consider alternative NSAID or further investigations e.g. endoscopy Use simple analgesics => Good responses & well tolerated?
Yes
No
Yes
No
Consider specialist referral

ANNEX 10: WHO RECOMMENDATIONS ON MULTIPLE DRUG THERAPY FOR LEPROSY

The basic WHO recommendations on multiple drug therapy for leprosy, using adult doses (Technical report series 675, 1982)

Table 1. Multibacillary leprosy (adult dosage)

Duration	A minimum of 2 years (or 24 monthly doses within a 36-month period) in all cases, but wherever possible until slit-skin smears are negative
Number of drugs used	three: Rifampcin, Dapsone and clofazimine.
Dosage: Rifampicin Dapsone Clofazimine	 600mg once - monthly, supervised 100mg daily, self-administered 300mg once - monthly, supervised and 50mg daily, self-administered.
Surveillance	minimum of 5 years after stopping treatment, with clinical, and bacteriological examination at least every 12 months

N.B. Ethionamide/prothionamide, in a daily self-administered dose of 250-375mg, may be used if the skin pigmentation or other side effects of clofazimine render this drug totally unacceptable.

Table 2. Paucibacillary leprosy (adult dosage)

Duration	6 months (or 6 monthly doses within a 9 month period).
Number of drugs used	Two: Rifampicin and Dapsone
Dosage: Rifampicin Dapsone	600mg once - monthly, upervised 100mg daily, self-adminstered.
Surveillance	Minimum of 2 years after stopping treatment with clinical examination at least every 12 months

Table 3. Multibacillary leprosy (3 drugs - Dapsone, Rifampicin Clofizimine)

Age groups	Dapsone daily dose, Unsupervised	Rifampicine Monthly dose, Supervised	Clofazimine Unsupervised dose	Clofazimine Monthly dose Supervised
Upto 5 years	25mg	150-300mg	100mg once weekly	100mg
6 -14 years	50-100mg	300-450mg	150mg once weekly	150-200mg
15 years and above (i.e use adult dose)	100mg	600mg	50mg daily	300mg

Table 4. Paucibacillary Leprosy (2 drugs-Dapsone and Rifampicin)

Age groups	Dapsone: daily dose, unsupervised	Rifampicin, monthly doses supervised
Upto 5 years	25mg	150-300mg
6-14 years	50-100mg	300-450mg
15 years and above i.e. use adult dose	100mg	600mg

ANNEX 11: THE GLASGOW COMA SCALE (GCS)

This gives a reliable objective way of recording the conscious state of a person. It can be used by medical and nursing staff for initial and continuous assessment. It has value in predicting ultimate outcome. 3 types of response are assessed and graded as follows.

Eye Opening:	
Spontaneously	4
To speech	3
To pain	2
Never	1
Best Verbal Response:	
Oriented	5
Confused	4
Inappropriate words	3
Incomprehensible words	2
None	1
Best Motor Response:	
Obeys command	6
Localizes pain	5
Withdrawal	4
Flexor response to pain	3
Extensor response to pain	2
None	1

An overall score is made by summing the score in the 3 areas assessed. Total 3 - 15
Severe injury GCS< 8; Moderate injury GCS 9-12; minor injury GCS 13-15

ANNEX 12: RED EYE

Table I. Signs of Red Eye

Signs	Referral Advisable If Present	Acute Glau-coma	Acute Irido-cyclitis	Keratitis	Bacterial Conjun-ctivitis	Viral Conjun-ctivitis	Allergic Conjun-ctivitis
Ciliary flush	Yes	1	2	3	0	0	0
Conjunctival Hyperemia	No	2	2	2	3	2	1
Corneal opacification	Yes	3	0	1 to 3	0	0 or 1	0
Corneal epithelial disruption	Yes	0	0	1 to 3	0	0 or 1	0
Pupillary Abnormality	Yes	Middilated, nonreactive	Small, may be irregular	Normal or small	0	0	0
Shallow anterior chamber angle	Yes	3	0	0	0	0	0
Elevated intraocular pressure	Yes	3	-2 to +1	0	0	0	0
Proptosis	Yes	3	0	0	0	0	0
Discharge	No	0	0	Sometimes	2 or 3	2	1
Preauricular lymph-node enlargement	No	0	0	0	0	1	0

N.B. The range of severity of the sign is indicated by -2 (subnormal) to 0 (absent) to 3 (severe).

Table II. Symptoms of Red Eye

Symptoms	Referral Advisable If Present	Acute Glau-coma	Acute Irido-cyclitis	Keratitis	Bacterial Conjun-ctivitis	Viral Conjun-ctivitis	Allergic Conjun-ctivitis
Blurred vision	Yes	3	1 to 2	3	0	0	0
Pain	Yes	2 to 3	2	2	0	0	0
Photophobia	Yes	1	3	3	0	0	0
Colored halos	Yes	2	0	0	0	0	0
Exudation	No	0	0	0 to 3	3	2	1
Itching	No	0	0	0	0	0	2 to 3

N.B. The range of severity of the sign is indicated by 0 (absent) to 3 (severe).

ANNEX 13: Body surface area

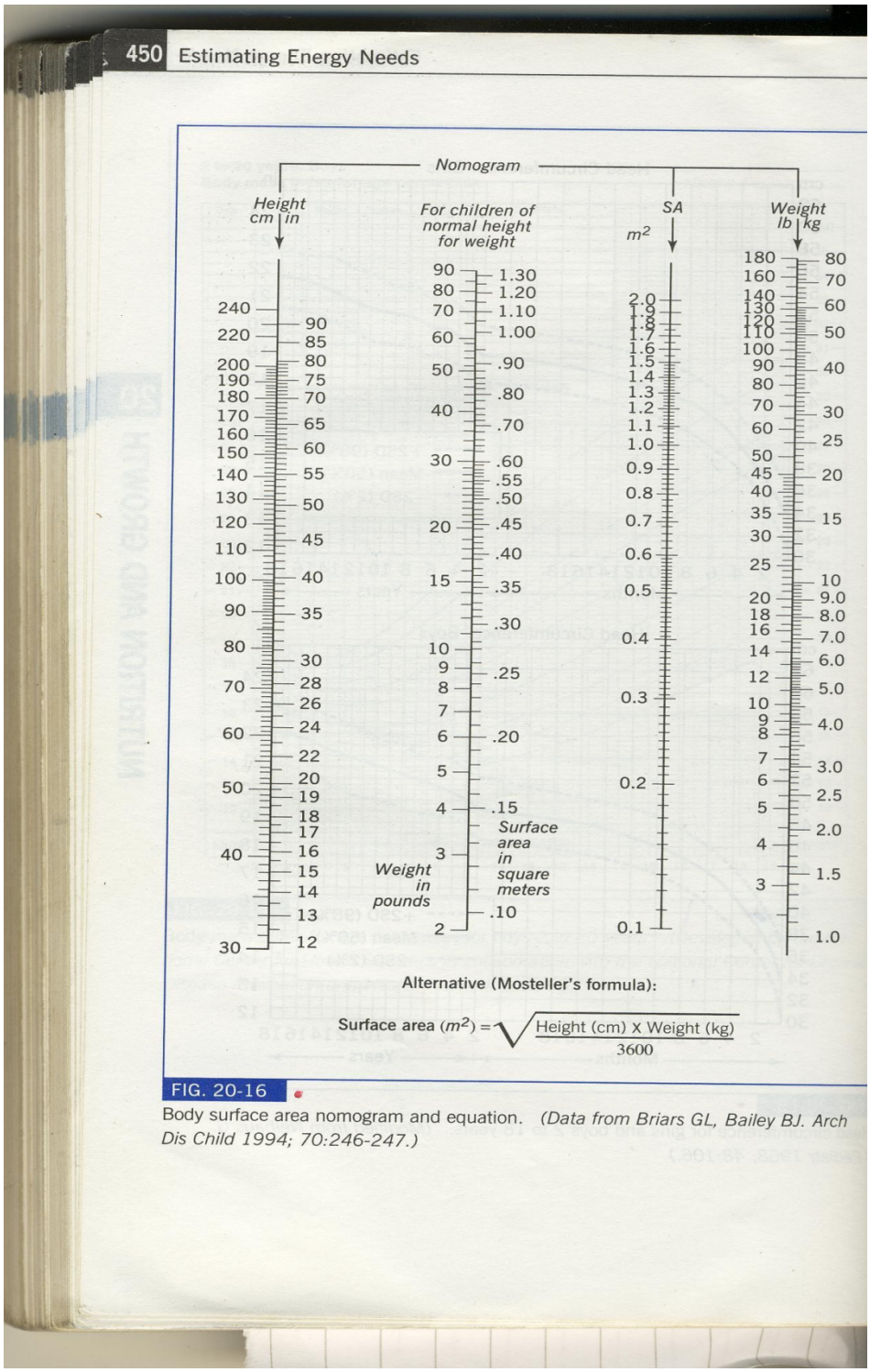

450 Estimating Energy Needs
Nomogram
Height cm | in
For children of normal height for weight
SA m²
Weight lb | kg
Weight in pounds
Surface area in square meters
Alternative (Mosteller's formula):
Surface area (m²) = √(Height (cm) X Weight (kg) / 3600)

FIG. 20-16

Body surface area nomogram and equation. *(Data from Briars GL, Bailey BJ. Arch Dis Child 1994; 70:246-247.)*

ANNEX 14

The five categories of Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for drug use in pregnancy

Category A: Controlled studies in women fail to demonstrate a risk to the fetus in the first trimester, and the possibility of fetal harm appears remote.

Category B: Animal studies do not indicate a risk to the fetus, and there are no controlled human studies or animal studies to show an adverse effect on the fetus, but well- controlled studies in pregnant women have failed to demonstrate a risk to the fetus.

Category C: Studies have shown the drug to have animal teratogenic or embryocidal effects, but there are no controlled studies in women or no studies are available in animals or women.

Category D: Positive evidence of human fetal risk exists, but benefits in certain situation (e.g, life threatening situations or serious diseases for which safer drugs can not be used or are ineffective) may make use of the drug acceptable despite its risks.

Category X: Studies in animals or humans have demonstrated fetal abnormalities, or there is evidence of fetal risk based on human experience, or both, and the risk clearly out weighs any possible benefit.

ANNEX 15: The Naranjo ADRs Assessment Algorithm

Questions	Yes	No	Don't know
Are there previous *conclusive* reports on this reaction?	+1	0	0
Did the adverse event occur after the suspected drug was administered?	+2	-1	0
Did the adverse reaction improve when the drug was discontinued or a *specific* antagonist was administered?	+1	0	0
Did the adverse reaction reappear when the drug was re-administered?	+2	-1	0
Are there alternative causes (other than the drug) that could have on their own caused the reaction?	-1	+2	0
Did the reaction reappear when a placebo was given?	-1	+1	0
Was the blood detected in the blood (or other fluids) in concentrations known to be toxic?	+1	0	0
Was the reaction more severe when the dose was increased or less severe when the dose was decreased?	+1	0	0
Did the patient have a similar reaction to the same or similar drugs in *any* previous exposure?	+1	0	0
Was the adverse event confirmed by any objective evidence?	+1	0	0

To assess the ADR, the above questionnaire should be answered and score is given.

Scoring for NARANJO's Algorithm

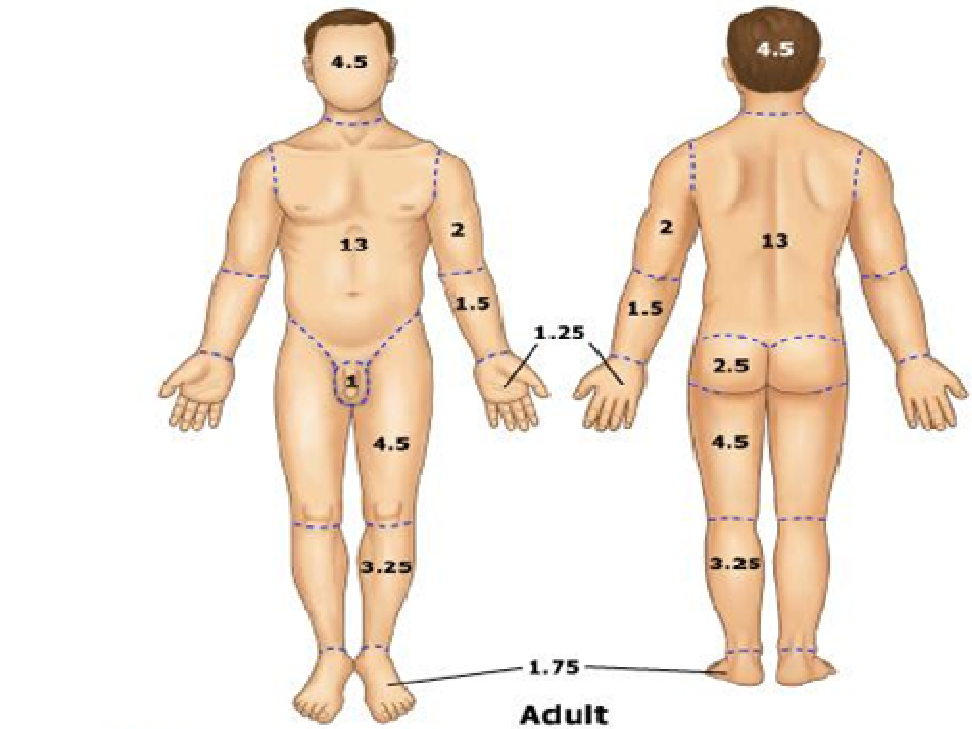
- > 9 = definite ADR
- 5-8 = probable ADR
- 1-4 = possible ADR
- 0 = doubtful ADR

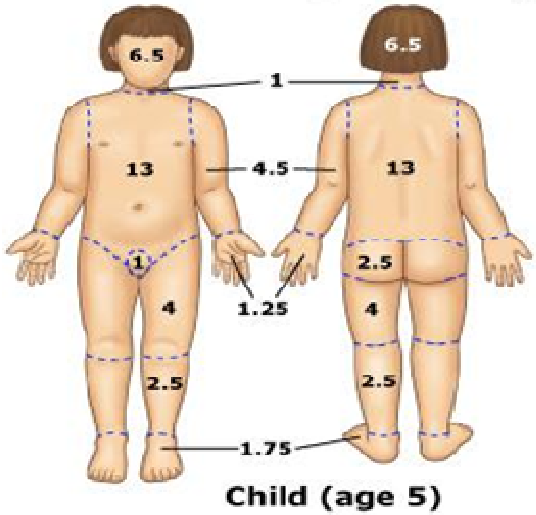
WHO ADRs Assessment Algorithm

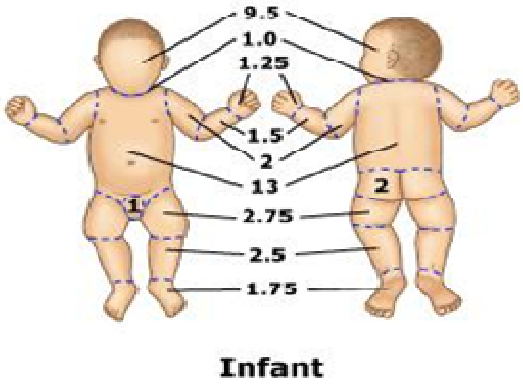
Term	Description
Certain	• A clinical reaction, including laboratory test abnormality, occurring in a plausible time relationship to medicine administration, and which • Cannot be explained by concurrent disease or other medicines or chemicals. • The response to withdrawal of the medicine (dechallenge) should be clinically plausible. • The reaction must be definitive pharmacologically or phenomenologically, (i.e. an objective and specific medical disorder or a recognized pharmacological phenomenon) • Using a satisfactory rechallenge procedure if necessary.

Probable/Likely	• A clinical reaction, including laboratory test abnormality, with • A reasonable time sequence to administration of the medicine, • Unlikely to be attributed to concurrent disease or other medicines or chemicals, and which • Follows a clinically reasonable response on withdrawal (dechallenge). • Rechallenge information is not required to fulfill this definition.
Possible	• A clinical reaction, including laboratory test abnormality, with • A reasonable time sequence to administration of the medicine, but which could also be explained by concurrent disease or other medicines or chemicals. • Information on medicine withdrawal may be lacking or unclear.
Unlikely	• A clinical reaction, including laboratory test abnormality, with • A temporal relationship to medicine administration which makes a causal relationship improbable, and • Other medicines, chemicals or underlying disease provide plausible explanations.
Conditional/ Unclassified	• A clinical reaction, including laboratory test abnormality,
Unassessable/ Unclassified	• More data is essential for a proper assessment or the additional data are under examination.

ANNEX 16- BODY SURFACE AREA







INDEXES

ANNEX 17: Standard Prescription form

PRESCRIPTION PAPER Code_____
Institution Name: _____Tel. No… ……
Patient's full Name: _____
Sex: ___ Age:___ Weight: _____ Card No. _____
Region: _____Town _____ Woreda_____Kebele _____
House No. ____ Tel. No: _____☐ Inpatient ☐ Outpatient
Diagnosis, if not ICD _____

Medicine Name, Strength, Dosage Form, Dose, Frequency, Duration, Quantity, How to use & other information	Price (dispensers use only)
℞	
Total Price	

Prescriber's Dispenser's

Full name _____ _____
Qualification _____ _____
Registration #_____ _____
Signature _____ _____
Date: _____ _____

Please Note the Following Information

Prescriptions:

- May valid only if it has the seal of the health institution.
- filled and blank are legal documents, treat them as fixed assets
- written and verbal information to the client complement one another

The prescriber:

- Medicine treatment is only one of the treatment options
- write the prescription correctly and legibly
- diagnosis and other parts of the prescription have to be complete
- abbreviations are NOT recommended
- please accept prescription verification call from the dispenser

The Dispenser:

- check legality of the prescription
- check completeness and accuracies before dispensing
- check for whom the medicine is being dispensed: actual client or care taker
- if in doubt about the contents of the prescription; verify with the prescriber
- containers used for packaging must be appropriate for the product
- labels of drugs should be clear, legible and indelible
- Medicines should be dispensed with appropriate information and counseling
- keep filled prescriptions at least for 3 years.

INDEX

INDEX BY DISEASE AND MEDICINE

A

Abortion, 419
Acetylsalicylic acid, 173
Aciclovir, 160, 161, 286, 311, 312, 336, 352, 355
Acne vulgaris, 265
Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome (AIDS), 71
Activated charcoal, 216, 217
Acute Bronchitis, 186
Acute Cardiogenic Pulmonary Edema, 39
Acute Dacryocystitis, 316
Acute Infectious Dacryoadenitis, 317
Acute kidney injury, 162
Acute Otitis Media, 344
Acute Post Streptococcal Glomerulonephritis, 223
Acute Rheumatic Fever, 224
Acute Rhinitis, 355
Acute RhinoSinusitis, 356
Acute Tonsillitis, 366
Acute urticaria, 294
adrenal insufficiency, 211
Adrenaline, 191, 201, 206, 433
Albendazole, 96
Allergic Conjunctivitis, 322
Allergic contact dermatitis, 279
Allergic Rhinitis, 358
Allopurinol, 59
Amebiasis, 81
Amebic Liver Abscess, 83
Amikacin, 149, 151
Aminophylline, 191, 226
Amitriptyline, 161, 214, 215
Amlodipine, 46
Amoxicillin, 156, 187, 198, 258, 259, 345, 406
Amoxicillin / Clavulanate, 151, 198, 203, 205, 317, 318, 338, 349, 351, 354, 355, 357, 361, 363, 364, 365, 367
amphotericin, 88
Ampicillin, 32, 188, 333, 345, 367, 381, 383, 384, 407, 411
Anaphylaxis, 200
Anemia, 95, 389
Anemia in Pregnancy, 389
Animal Bites, 201
Anthrax, 83
Artemether + Lumefantrine, 116, 118, 123
Artesunate, 121, 122, 403
Aspiration Pneumonia and Lung Abscess, 198
Aspirin, 54, 109, 336, 337
Atenolol, 46
Atopic Dermatitis, 276, 319
Atopic Keratoconjunctivitis, 319
Atovaquone, 125
Atrophic Rhinitis and Ozeana, 359
Atropine, 336
Azelaic Acid, 266
Azithromycin, 189, 198, 257, 341

B

Bacillary dysentery, 84
Bacterial and Viral Diffuse Otitis Externa, 346
Bacterial Conjunctivitis, 323
Bacterial folliculitis, 267
Bacterial vaginosis, 413, 415
Balanoposthitis, 269
Beclomethasone, 193, 195, 226, 359
Benzathine penicillin, 50, 311, 409
Benzyl Benzoate, 293
Benzyl penicillin, 131, 259
Bethamethasone, 386
Bisacodyl, 28, 32, 61
Bismuth subgallate, 64
Bismuth Subgallate + Bismuth Oxide + Peru Balsam, 64
Blepharitis, 326
Bronchial Asthma, 189, 224
Brucellosis, 86
Burns, 329

C

calamine, 161
Candidal Intertrigo, 269
Candidal paronychia, 270
Candidiasis, 87, 268
Capreomycin, 151
captopril, 46, 47
carbamazepine, 117, 125, 142, 175, 189, 283, 337
Carbon monoxide, 217
Carbuncle, 271
Cardiac Diseases in Pregnancy, 390
Carvedilol, 46
Cascara, 61
Cataract, 328

Cefixime, 355, 361
Ceframed, 349
Ceftriaxone, 86, 157, 253, 259, 308, 407, 410, 411, 428
Cefuroxime, 32, 203, 406, 407
Cellulitis, 272
Cephalexin, 268, 273, 283, 285, 288
Cetirizine, 295
Chancroid, 309
Chemical Burns, 329
chlamydial, 301, 314, 415, 428
Chloramphenicol, 156, 157, 158, 273, 308, 317, 324, 325, 336, 346, 353, 363
Chloroquine, 117
Chlorpheniramine, 279, 282, 294
Chlorpromazine, 375
Cholera, 91
Chronic kidney disease, 47
Chronic Myelogenous Leukemia, xi
Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease (COPD), 194
Chronic Otitis Media, 348
Chronic Rhinosinusitis, 360
Chronic urticaria, 294
Cimetidine, 62, 167, 296, 386
Ciprofloxacin, 32, 33, 85, 92, 156, 157, 164, 165, 301, 305, 308, 311, 314, 315, 324, 346, 354, 363
Clarithromycin, 151, 198, 257
Clindamycin, 266, 414
Clofazimine, 105, 106, 107, 151, 152, 447, 448
Clonazepam, 175
Clotrimazole, 89, 269, 270, 274, 291, 305, 418
Cloxacillin, 268, 272, 279, 285, 288, 316, 318, 333, 413
cobalamin, 69
Codeine phosphate, 187
Combined Oral Contraceptives, 424, 425
conjunctivitis, 321, 323, 324, 325, 326, 335
constipation, 60, 64
Contact dermatitis, 279
contraceptives, 176, 415, 424
COPD, xi
Cotrimoxazole, 164, 165, 203, 239
Cromolyn Sodium, 320
Croup (Acute Laryngo-Tracheo-Bronchitis), 226
Cryptococcal Infections, 93
Crystalline Penicillin, 273
Cushing syndrome, 42
Cutaneous Leishmaniasis, 100
Cycloserine, 151
cyclosporine, 189

D

dacryoadenitis, 317
Dapsone, 105, 106
deep vein thrombosis, or DVT, 69
Dermatophytoses, 273
Dexamethasone, 228, 321, 328, 336, 387
Dexamethasone + Tobramicin, 321
Dexamethasone+Gentamicin, 321
Dexchlorpheniramine maleate, 359
Dextromethorphan, 186
dextrose, 123, 209, 212, 217, 404, 436
Dextrose, xi
diabetes mellitus, 267, 270, 392, 395
Diabetes Mellitus Complicating Pregnancy, 392
Diabetic Ketoacidosis (DKA), xii
diarrheal disease, 84, 91, 228
Diazepam, 142, 217, 380
Diclofenac, 59, 167, 169, 173, 321
Didanosine, 75
Diethylcarbamazine, 98, 99
Diethylcarbamazine citrate, xii
Digoxin, 42, 90, 117, 189, 392
Diloxanide Furoate, 82
Diphenylhydramine, 282, 294
Doxycycline, 92, 125, 127, 158, 198, 203, 266, 301, 305, 308, 311, 314, 315, 328, 341, 412, 416, 428
Drowning, 212
Dyspepsia and Peptic Ulcer Disease, 61

E

eczema, 266, 277, 280, 286, 289
Efavirenz, 75
Enalapril, 46, 47
endocarditis, 87, 235
Ephedrine + Theophylline, 193, 194
Epilepsy, 174
Epinephrine, 228
Epistaxis, 361
Ergometrine, 379, 381
Erysipelas, 282
Erythromycin, 32, 132, 257, 266, 268, 273, 283, 285, 288, 301, 339, 340, 341, 383, 409, 416, 428
Ethambutol, 139, 140, 141, 144, 145, 150
Ethionamide, 151, 447

F

Felodipine, 46
Ferrous fumarate, 69
Ferrous gluconate, 68
Ferrous sulphate, 68, 390

Filariasis, 97
Fluconazole, 89, 90, 271, 275, 276, 291, 419
Flurbiprofen, 321
Folic acid, 69, 247, 390
Foreign Bodies in the Ear, 350
Foreign Bodies in the Nose, 365
FOREIGN BODY ASPIRATION, 233
Furosemide, 391
Furuncle, 284
furunclosis, 285
Fusidic acid, 210, 287

G

Genital Candidiasis, 271
Genital Herpes, 309
Genital Ulcer Diseases (Gud), 309
Gentamicin, 317, 324, 325, 354, 381, 384, 407, 411
Gentian violet, 270
gestational trophoblastic, 374
Giardiasis, 94
Glaucoma, 330
Glibenclamide, 54
Glucose, xiii
Glycerin, 61
Gonorrhea, 415
Gout, 57
Granuloma inguinale (Donovanosis), 309
Griseofulvin, 275, 276
Guaifenesin, 187

H

Heart Failure, 40, 49, 235
Hemorrhoids, 63
heparin, 29, 187, 217
Hepatitis, 65
Herpes Simplex, 285
Herpes zoster, 160, 354
HIV/ AIDS IN CHILDREN, 236
Hormonal contraceptives, 424
Hydrochlorothiazide, 46
Hydrocortisone, 29, 64, 192, 201, 326, 328, 332, 335, 336, 351, 364
Hydrogen peroxide, 287, 414
hypertension, 42, 43, 370, 371, 372, 387, 392, 395
hypoglycemia, 210, 213, 394, 395, 402

I

Ibuprofen, 28, 58, 154, 167, 169, 173, 258
Imipenem/cilastatin, 151
imipramine, 215
Immune thrombocytopenic Purpura, xii
Impetigo, 286
indinavir, 90
Indomethacin, 59, 167, 169
inflammation, 171, 196, 219, 224, 257, 270, 272, 278, 316, 322, 324, 326, 337, 412, 415
Initiation, 147
Insulin, 394, 395
Internal Hordeolum, 333
intestinal parasitic infestations, 95
Iodine, 289
Irritant Contact Dermatitis, 280
Isoniazid, 138, 139, 140, 141, 142, 144, 145, 148, 150, 155, 217, 264
Itraconazole, 271, 275, 276, 291
IUD, 415, 427, 428
Ivermectin, 96, 99, 127, 294

K

Kanamycin, 150
Ketoconazole, 90, 255, 274, 275, 276, 291, 419

L

Lactulose, 28
Lamivudine, 75
Leishmaniasis, 100
Levocabastine, 320
Levofloxacin, 151
Levonorgesterel, 424, 425, 426
levonorgesterol+ethnylestradiol, 425
Levonorgestrel, 426, 428
Lidocaine, 377
Lidocaine + aluminium acetate + zinc oxide + hydrocortisone acetate, 64
Linctus, 187
Linezolid, 151
Liquid paraffin, 61, 278, 281
Lodoxamide, 320
lopinavir/r, 90
Loratadine, 201, 295, 358
lung abscess, 198, 199
Lymphogranulomaveneurum (LGV), 309
Lynestrenol, 425

M

Magnesium Sulphate, 60
malaria, 131, 247, 389, 396, 397, 402
Malathion, 290
malnutrition, 95, 228, 240, 242, 282
measles, 247, 264, 341, 343

Mebendazole, 96
Medroxyprogesterone, 425
Mefloquine, 124
meningitis, 131, 158, 171, 252, 262, 284, 338
Metformin, 53
methotrexate, 85, 187
Methyldopa, 46, 373
Metoclopromide, 152, 376
Metoprolol, 46, 47
Metrifonate, 133
metronidazole, 32
Metronidazole, 32, 82, 95, 203, 303, 305, 308, 381, 411, 412, 414, 417, 418, 428
miconazole, 89, 305, 419
Miconazole, 255, 269, 270, 274, 276, 291, 419
Miconazole oral gel, 88
Migraine, 172, 424
Misoprostol, 380
Molluscum contagiosum, 288, 334
Mometasone, 281
Moxifloxacin, 151
Mucopurulent cervicitis, 415
mumps, 317, 318
Mupirocin, 287

N

Naphazoline + Antazoline, 320
Naphazoline + Phenylephrine, 320
Nausea and vomiting, 374, 375, 426
nelfinavir, 189
Neomycin, 327, 328, 332, 335, 336
Neomycin sulphate + Polymixin B + Dexamethasone, 327, 328, 332, 335, 336
Nevirapine, 75
Niclosamide, 96
Nifedipine, 46
Nifidipine, 46, 47, 374, 386
Non-Nucleoside Reverse Transcriptase Inhibitors (NNRTI), 74
Norfloxacin, 164
Normal saline, xiii
NPH, 56, 57
Nucleoside Reverse Transcriptase Inhibitors (NRTIs), 74
Nystatin, 88, 255, 418

O

Ofloxacin, 151
Olopatadine, 320
Omeprazole, 62, 167
Oncocerciasis, 126
Ophthalmic Zoster (Herpes Zoster Ophthalmicus=HZO), 335
Oral candidiasis, 271
Oral thrush, 271
Orbital cellulitis, 337
Osteoarthritis, 166
Osteomyelitis, 86, 168, 255
Oxamniquine, 133
Oxymethazoline, 320
Oxytetracycline+Polymixin B+Hydrocortisone, 336
Oxytocin, 380, 381

P

Pain during Labour and Delivery, 376
P-aminosalicylic acid, 151
Paracetamol, 109, 161, 173, 206, 210, 258, 286, 336, 337, 346, 367, 368
Paromomycin, 83
PEDICULOSIS CORPORIS AND CAPITIS, 289
Pelvic Inflammatory Diseases, 409
Penicillin, 273, 282, 325
perleche, 268
Permethrin, 290, 293
Pertusis, 256
Pertusis (Whooping Cough), 256
pesticides, 214
Pethidine, 377, 380
Phenobarbitone, 110, 175, 214, 283
Phenytoin, 153, 175, 213
Piperazine, 96
PITYRIASIS VERSICOLOR, 290
Pneumocystis Carinni (P. Jiroveci) Pneumonia, 195
pneumonia, 96, 195, 196, 198, 235, 245, 246, 257, 258, 259, 262, 341
Pneumonia, xiii
Pneumonia (Aspiration) and Lung Abscess, 198
Poisoning, 214
Post-Partum Haemorrhage (PPH), 378
Potassium chloride, 41
Pralidoxim, 218
Praziquantel, 96, 133
prednisolone, 113, 114
Prednisolone, 112, 113, 145, 146, 157, 192, 226, 352
Prednisone, 145, 281, 296
Premature rupture of membrane, xiii
Premature Rupture of Membranes (PROM), 382
preseptal cellulitis, 337, 338, 339
Preterm Labour, 385
Primaquine, 118, 125
probenecid, 187
Procaine penicillin, 131, 272, 273, 282
Progesterone Only Contraceptives, 425

Proguanil, 125
Prolonged Labour, 388
Prolonged Pregnancy, 387
Promethazine, 127, 376
Propranolol, 46, 392
Protease inhibitors, 142
Protease Inhibitors, 74
Protionamide, 151
Psoriasis, 292
Psychiatric Disorders, 181
Puerperal Mastitis, 412
Pyogenic Osteomyelitis, 168
Pyrantel, 96
Pyrazinamide, 139, 140, 141, 143, 144, 145, 150, 264
Pyridoxine hydrochloride, 376

Q

quinidine, 89
Quinine, 117, 118, 123

R

Rabies, 127, 129
Ranitidine, 63, 167, 296
Regular Insulin, 56
relapsing fever, 131, 158
Retinoic Acid, 289
rheumatic fever, 235
rheumatic heart disease, 390
Rheumatoid Arthritis, xiii
Rickets, 259
Rifampicin, 89, 105, 106, 107, 138, 139, 140, 141, 142, 144, 145, 150, 264, 447, 448, 449

S

Salbutamol, 191, 193, 195, 201, 226
Salicylic acid, 291, 297
Scabies, 292
Schistosomiasis, 132
Schizophrenia, 182
Seborrhoeic blepharitis, 326
Seizure and Epilepsy, 174
Seizures (Neonatal), 261
Selenium sulfide, 291
Sepsis, 413
SEPSIS (Neonatal), 261
Septic arthritis, 170
Shock, 218
Silver nitrate, 289
Silver Nitrate + Potassium Nitrate, 362
Silver sulfadiazine, 209
Snake Bites, 204
sodium bicarbonate, 121, 122, 217
Sodium PAS, 151
Spectinomycin, 301, 305, 308, 315
Spironolactone, 42, 153
squamous cells, 382
Staphylococcal blepharitis, 327
Streptomycin, 139, 140, 141, 143, 144, 145, 146, 150
Stroke, 219
Sudden Cardiac Arrest, 219
sulfadiazine, 209
Sulfamethoxazole+trimethoprim, 85, 92, 157, 188, 338
Sulphur, 293
Syphilis, 309, 397, 409
Syphilis in Pregnancy, 408

T

TDF+ 3TC + EFV, 399
Tenofovir, 75
T**erbinafine**, 271
Terizidone, 151
Tetanus, 134, 203
Tetracycline, 92, 132, 158, 188, 266, 324, 325, 327, 328, 332, 340
Theophylline, 193
Thiabendazole, 96
Thioacetazone, 151
Tinea capitis, 275
Tinidazole, 82, 95, 418
Tobramicin, 321
Toxoplasmosis, 135
trachoma, 339, 340, 341
Trachoma, 339
Tramadol, 206, 210, 368
Tretinoin, 265, 289
Triamcinolone acetonide, 281
Trichocomonal vaginitis, 416
Trimethoprim-sulphamethoxazole, 164, 165
Tuberculosis, 136, 145, 146, 263, 264
typhoid fever, 131
TYPHOID FEVER, 156
typhus, 131, 132
Typhus, 158
TYPHUS, 158

U

ulcerative blepharitis, 327
Upper Gastrointestinal Bleeding, 222
UPPER UTI: PYELONEPHRITIS, 406
Urethral discharge, 301, 303

Urinary tract infection, 405
Urticaria, 294
UTI in pregnancy, 406

V

Vaginal Discharge, 303
Valproic acid, 175
vancomycin, 36
Vancomycin, 31
Varicella, 159, 335
Venous Thromboembolic Disease, 69
Verapamil, 46
Vernal Keratoconjunctivitis, 322
VERRUCA VULGARIS, 296
Viral Infectious, 318
Vitamin A, 233, 247, 341, 342
Vitamin A deficiency, 341
Vitamin B12, 69
Vulvo vaginal candidiasis, 418

W

warfarin, 62, 82, 86, 125, 142, 187, 188, 363

X

Xylocaine, 377
Xylomethazoline, 356, 357, 358

Z

Zidovudine, 75
zinc pyrithione, 291